UC-NRLF
$B 258 181

THE KING'S ENGLISH

AND HOW TO WRITE IT.

BY JOHN BYGOTT

AND

A. J. LAWFORD JONES

1/6
NETT

LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA.

Class 897
B993

THE KING'S ENGLISH

AND

HOW TO WRITE IT

SELECTED LIST OF

JARROLDS' EDUCATIONAL WORKS.

FOR STUDENTS, PUPIL TEACHERS, AND EXAMINATION CANDIDATES.

THE KING'S ENGLISH AND HOW TO WRITE IT. By John Bygott and A. J. Lawford Jones. 1/6 nett. [TENTH EDITION.

POINTS IN PUNCTUATION. By John Bygott and A. J. Lawford Jones. 1/- nett.

FOR PUPIL TEACHERS.

SCHOOL METHOD. By F. J. Gladman, B.A., B.Sc. (Lond.). Crown 8vo, 2/6.

SCHOOL WORK. By F. J. Gladman, B.A., B.Sc. (Lond.). Crown 8vo. Two Volumes, 4/- each ; complete in One Volume, 7/6.

THE PUPIL TEACHERS' GEOGRAPHY. By J. H. Yoxall. 3/6.

OBJECT LESSONS FROM FIELD, FOREST, AND GARDEN; or a FIRST BOTANY BOOK, for the Teachers of Little Students—Vol. I., Standards I. and II., 2/6. Vol. II., Standards III., IV., and V., 3/6. Vol. III., Standards VI. and VII., 3/6. By Edward Snelgrove, B.A.

OBJECT LESSONS IN NATURAL HISTORY. By Edward Snelgrove, B A. With many Illustrations suitable for blackboard reproductions. 3/6.

A HANDBOOK OF ALGEBRA. By Herbert Wills. 264 pages, Crown 8vo, cloth, 3/6.

HANDY BOOK OF OBJECT LESSONS. From a Teacher's Note Book. By J. Walker. In Two Series. Crown 8vo, 2/6 each.

APPROPRIATE AND VARIED OCCUPATIONS FOR INFANTS. Crown 8vo, 3/-. 114 Lessons. 146 pages, 215 Illustrations.

NOTES OF LESSONS. Crown 8vo. First Series, 2/6; Second Series, 3/6. The Two Series in One Volume, 5/6.

NOTES OF LESSONS ON ENGLISH GRAMMAR. Crown 8vo, 2/6.

PRACTICAL HELPS FOR INFANTS' TEACHERS. Crown 8vo, 3/-.

TEACHING OF AND TESTING IN MENTAL ARITHMETIC. Crown 8vo, 2/6.

MATHEMATICS MADE EASY. Simple Continuation School Lectures. By Rev. J. J. Raven, D.D., F.S.A. 2/-.

READING BOOKS.

The HEROIC READERS. Drawn up in strict accordance with the latest instructions of the Education Department. For Boys and Girls. With Coloured Frontispieces.

Book I.,	128 pp.,	strongly bound,	8d.
Book II.,	144 pp.,	,, ,,	10d.
Book III.,	224 pp.,	,, ,,	1s. 2d.
Book IV.,	240 pp.,	,, ,,	1s. 4d.
Book V.,	272 pp.,	,, ,,	1s. 6d.
Book VI.,	272 pp.,	,, ,,	1s. 6d.

The books are printed in clear type, are profusely illustrated, and are such as will be attractive to scholars, and establish in their minds pleasant associations with the act of reading.

THE TEMPERANCE SCIENCE READING BOOK. By J. Topham. Crown 8vo, 245 pages, many Illustrations, strongly bound, 1/6.

London: Jarrold & Sons, 10 & 11, Warwick Lane, E.C.

AND OF ALL BOOKSELLERS.

THE KING'S ENGLISH

AND

HOW TO WRITE IT.

A PRACTICAL TEXT-BOOK OF COMPOSITION.

BY
JOHN BYGOTT,
MASTER AT THE SECONDARY SCHOOL, LUTON,
AND
A. J. LAWFORD JONES, OF H.M. CIVIL SERVICE,
Authors of "Points in Punctuation," etc.

SANS PEUR ET
SANS REPROCHE
L & N

LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY
OF
CALIFORNIA

TWELFTH EDITION.
REVISED AND RE-WRITTEN.

LONDON
JARROLD & SONS, 10 & 11, WARWICK LANE, E.C.

(*All Rights Reserved*)

GENERAL

"The smoothest verse and the exactest sense,
Displease us if ill English give offence;
In short, without fine language, what you write
Can never yield us profit and delight."

Dryden.

LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY
OF
CALIFORNIA

PREFACE TO THE NEW (TENTH) EDITION.

For this edition the book has been carefully revised and in some chapters practically re-written; in several sections new matter has been included and additional exercises have been provided. In making these changes we have been much indebted to the criticisms of teachers who have used the work, and who, in several cases, have urged that more exercises would be advisable. We give tests bearing upon every chapter, and in the Appendix have reproduced a series of recent English papers set at the Matriculation Examination of the University of London. By means of cross-references, the latter questions have been classified as supplementary exercises upon various chapters, but it was thought better to give the papers as originally set, so that they may be worked *in toto* if desired.

We hope the work will be found tolerably complete by those who require help for examinations where English Composition (in various forms) is a test, and where the "English" papers are of a type similar to those now set at the "London Matric." We also trust that it may serve as a class-book where no particular examination is in view.

We have tried to make it something more than a "cram book," and where it was necessary to give facts and information, have endeavoured to reduce these to the minimum. Rules and facts concerning what might be termed the mechanical details of composition necessarily predominate in Chapters like II.—V., but, as far as possible, we have tried to make them suggestive rather than dogmatic. In Chapters such as VI., VII., bearing primarily upon the "acquisition of matter," whilst seeking to lead to that "fulness of mind" necessary in all who would write, we have sought to develop the reasoning faculty and to cultivate the imagination. With this end in view, constant stress is laid upon the importance of reading good literature—for inspiration no less than information.

As mentioned in the Preface to the First Edition, one of us (A. J. L. J.) is primarily responsible for the section on Précis Writing, the other (J. B.) for the general plan and for the remainder of the book.

197494

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

http://www.archive.org/details/kingsenglishhowt00bygorich

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

CHAPTER I.

PAGE

§ 1. Introductory. § 2. Diction. § 3. Reading as an aid to writing. § 4. Manner and matter 9

CHAPTER II.

STYLE.

§ 5. Style. § 6—12. Essentials of a good style. § 13—19. Errors in taste to be avoided 13

CHAPTER III.

GRAMMAR: SOME GRAMMATICAL ERRORS AND DEFECTS TO BE AVOIDED.

§ 20—25. Grammatical errors and defects to be avoided (followed by twelve exercises based on Chapters II. and III.) ... 20

CHAPTER IV.

AUXILIARIES OF STYLE.

§ 26. Introductory. § 27—28. Figures of speech. § 29. Emphasis. § 30—31. Synonyms. § 32. Idioms. § 33. Exercises on Idioms. § 34. Cautions and hints as to use of "Auxiliaries of Style." Exercises on Chapter IV. ... 35

CHAPTER V.

ORTHOGRAPHY AND PUNCTUATION.

§ 35. How to correct bad spelling. § 36. Modern English spelling a chaos. § 37—39. General hints as to punctuation. § 40. The full stop. § 41. The comma. § 42. The semicolon. § 43. Other punctuation marks. 46. Punctuation exercises 49

CHAPTER VI.

MATTER—THE REQUISITE KNOWLEDGE AND HOW TO ACQUIRE IT.

§ 47—48. Methods of acquiring information. § 49. Range of the essay-writer's knowledge. § 50. Something more than reading is necessary. § 51. Learn to observe facts and to investigate truths. § 52. Learn to think. § 53. Cultivation of the Imagination 76

CHAPTER VII.

READING: HINTS FOR A COURSE OF READING.

PAGE

§ 55—56 Introductory. § 57. Necessity for discrimination in reading. § 58. Reading of poetry—the use of it. § 59. How to read. § 60. Note-taking during reading. § 61. The analysis of a novel. § 62. The analysis of an essay. § 63. Plan for notes upon a poem. § 64. Methods of note-taking. § 65. Suggested course of reading in standard literature. § 66. Reference books 84

CHAPTER VIII.

ESSAY WRITING.

§ 67. Practical hints for writing an essay. § 68. Remarks on essay titles. § 69. Two hundred essay titles for practice. § 70. Brief notes for outline essays. § 71. Outline essays. § 72. Model essays. NOTE on the Paragraph, etc. ... 110

CHAPTER IX.

PARAPHRASING.

§ 73. Introductory. § 74—75. Hints for Paraphrasing. § 76. Extracts for practice. § 77. Model Solutions. § 78. Notes on the passages to be paraphrased 134

CHAPTER X.

INDEXING AND PRÉCIS WRITING.

§ 79. Introductory. § 80. General hints for working a paper in Indexing and Précis Writing. § 81. Index. § 82. Précis. § 83. Model solutions. § 84. Exercises. § 85. Notes ... 155

APPENDIX.

The London University Matriculation Syllabus in English (New Regulations).

(*a*) Hints for Preparation 218
(*b*) Examination Papers 227
(*c*) Examination Exercises 292
INDEX 295

NOTE.—The official papers given in Chapter X. are reprinted by special permission of the Controller of H. M. Stationery Office, and our thanks are also due to the various examining bodies for permission to reproduce the examination papers.

THE KING'S ENGLISH

AND HOW TO WRITE IT

CHAPTER I.

"The noblest literary gift of a well-educated man is the power of wielding language well."—*Thring.*

§ 1. In primeval times, as the first anthropoid ape cracked the first nut, he doubtless thought, "Whence shall I get my next meal?" How was he to express this query so that it could be understood by his fellows? History is silent, but if he succeeded in making himself intelligible, language was born. But we are not concerned with the genesis of language; our province is to consider how to write one language —English.

§ 2. *Diction.* To all who would write well and accurately, a consideration of *Diction* is essential; that is to say, we must be careful

(*a*) how we select our words,
(*b*) how we weave them into sentences,
(*c*) how we arrange and combine such sentences.

Really, it is essential that, having found something to say, we should observe certain broad principles in the manner and method of our *saying.* "*Saying!*" the very word, reflected by back-tracing to the Latin. As architects of language we must ever bear diction in mind, but this entails a broader outlook, a wider conception, than when we are engaged in the more mechanical details of laying the bricks of our word structure—details of grammar, details of punctuation, details of orthography.

As in different ages there have been different styles of architecture in stonework, so the writers of different epochs have differed. As architects adapt special styles to the needs of particular buildings, so must the designer of a word-edifice mould his material to fit the type of subject; a cathedral must not be designed upon the same lines as a theatre, neither must the diction of a poet be lavished upon a prosaic subject. Again, modes of expression, method of construction, order of sentences, choice of words, may be used fittingly and naturally in formal prose, but would be mere hobnails and fustian in metrical verse.

However, though the diction of poetry is generally wealthier in metaphor and more ornate than that of prose, there have been great prose writers with high poetic or imaginative gifts, whose work—metaphorical, pulsating with nerve and soul—if prose in form, is largely poetical in spirit. As examples take Carlyle and Ruskin.

As a coiner of words we allow the poet greater freedom than his brother in prose, and we also permit him to take more liberty with the functions of words; with him an adjective often does duty for an adverb and a noun may be used with verbal force. In many respects, method of expression, choice of words, is simpler in poetry than in prose. There is more directness, more brevity in sentence construction; there are fewer multisyllabic words from the Latin or Greek.

Good diction is really based on the usage of our best writers, and with respect to the selection and right use of words, we must carefully note the qualities of *purity* and *propriety*. By *purity* of diction we mean the use of words which are generally understood to belong to current English and to contemporary literature, which are not archaic, which are not so newly-coined as to be unsanctioned by usage. *Propriety* is the choice of words which give the correct and intended meaning; this quality is best attained by noting the usage of good writers and by reference to a trustworthy dictionary when uncertainty exists. Something much akin to, and in some respects springing from, propriety, is *precision* of meaning, which is secured by selecting from apparent synonyms (see § 31) that word which gives the exact shade of meaning intended. It is well to remember that there are shades of meaning just as there are shades of colour; you could not succeed as an artist if you mixed your colours in haphazard fashion, neither can you succeed as a writer if you choose your words in a haphazard manner.

§ 3. *Reading as an aid to writing.* We have said that correct and elegant diction is in no small degree a reflection from the usage of good writers, so this presupposes the necessity for judicious and careful reading of what is best in literature. The dilettante or time-killer would probably scout the idea that he should read anything in the nature of the classics. Mention Shakspeare, Addison, or Carlyle, and he "knows" them. Possibly he does—as names, but if he wishes to improve his English, this knowledge must go a little further, and he must really *read.*

"To read"* means something more than to carry a book about, and wear a look as intelligent as an Egyptian mummy, it means something more than to run your eyes along the lines and up and down the pages, it means something more than to turn over the leaves at the rate of so many the half-hour, it means something more than to repeat the words like a Buddhist praying-machine. To read "Hamlet" or "Waverley" is literally to live the story anew, and to play in fancy the part of every man or woman therein brought before you by the author. To read our great poets is to cast off the dead leaves of this matter-of-fact world, to re-clothe our nerveless moods in the Spring-like garb of a fresh clime—a world of boundless enthusiasm, a world of dancing blood and lofty ideals, a world of spirits who scale the Olympian heights, who, light as Ariel, play with our fancy, who 'lumine our way with rare and curious lights, who lead us as a little child through paths where the foot of poet and fairy has tripped to many a bright and blithesome tune, a world where men are as kings and kings are as gods. If the sweet "blue flower" of our imagination can lead us into such enchanted dreamland, if it can raise us above the cares and troubles of this workaday world, if it can cast upon us some reflection of the fire which has kindled the being of those great minds who have trodden the mystic groves of literature, then, we say, there is some hope for us as readers.

Like our dreams, our books people another world with the living creatures of imagination, and the more fully, the more vividly, they can do this, the nearer do they approach to the divine standard of real literature.

---

* See § 59: "How to read."

§ 4. *Manner and matter.* Composition is usually understood to mean the expression of thoughts so that they can be easily comprehended by others. It may be divided into (*a*) the manner of expressing those thoughts, (*b*) their substance —in short, into style and matter. These points are treated more fully in (*a*) Chapter II., (*b*) Chapters VI. and VII.

LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY
OF
CALIFORNIA

CHAPTER II.

STYLE.

§ 5. Underlying *style* there is a continuous question of "How?"—how to represent our thoughts clearly and unmistakably, and at the same time to produce the most fitting and the most graceful effect. We choose our words for what they say and for what they imply, and it is a happy combination of such colouring which gives the best effect in light and shadow. Of course, there must be accuracy of conception and statement, but, in the main, style is reflection of the writer's mood and of his personality. Everyone has his own way of looking at things, a way which is bound to tinge the offspring of his mind and pen. Thus, we can argue safely and truthfully, that style considered in the highest sense of the word may be *cultivated*, may be trained and drawn out, but can hardly be *made to order*, nor can it be wholly assimilated by means of rules—like the accidence of a new language. Taste—artistic and literary—seems to take a place in writing similar to good manners in society, and it is by contact with the works of those who possess this attribute that we can do much to smooth our own rough edges. Other things being equal, which style would you prefer—one colourless and insipid, or one calculated to rouse the imagination, to create images, to beget suggestions? The answer is proved without proving.

§ 6 Some of the more elementary, and in some sense the more mechanical, *essentials of a good style*, are clearness, precision, brevity, simplicity, vigour, rhythm, the avoidance of errors in taste and in grammar.

§ 7. *Clearness.* Your reader's attention should be riveted to his work from the outset, and you should never oblige him to make a second perusal in order to grasp the meaning. Clearness of language will generally follow clearness of thought, and to any writer is a pearl of great price.

§ 8. *Precision.* Come to the subject at once. Take a straight cut to your journey's end; avoid all unnecessary by-paths and side-walks, however tempting they may seem. If writing about Shakspeare's influence upon contemporary literature, do not wander from your subject to hazard hazy speculations with reference to Bacon and ciphers.

§ 9. *Brevity* is generally preferable to length. Bacon affects brevity and condensation to such an extent as to produce in places a curt "snip-snap" style which makes many of his essays read like classified note-book jottings.

(*a*) Do not use a dozen words when six will suffice. Say "The whole army now marched eastwards," instead of "Each division of this huge force now made the east its objective."

(*b*) When you can express the meaning of a phrase by a word, do so—"crowd," "army," and "sea-trip," are better than "large number of persons," "military forces," and "journey by water."

(*c*) "My raised hand, descending upon his organ of sight, produced there an abrasion of the cuticle, some discoloration and local inflammation," really means "I gave him a black eye."

(*d*) Do not, however, sacrifice clearness to brevity.

§ 10. *Simplicity*, like many virtues, too frequently hides its light under a bushel. "The Pilgrim's Progress" and "Robinson Crusoe" owe much of their charm to the simple, yet vigorous English used.

(*a*) Do not attempt to write "above people's heads," or go to the opposite extreme of appearing childish. Above all, avoid the prattling style so common in first person narratives which many magazine editors would have us believe are popular short stories.

(*b*) Shun "fine writing" and literary patchwork. Do not make use of such padding as (1) "counterfeit presentment," (2) "conflagration of multitudinous destructibility," (3) "the English language, in its triumphant progress of universality, permeates the four corners of the globe. It is heard 'midst Canadian snows, 'neath the Southern Cross, in Equatorial fever swamps," etc., etc. Leave such things to the penny-a-liner, whose primary object is to make money, not to write English. We hope he achieves the former half of his mission; we know he fails in the latter.

(*c*) There is a saying that "every hobby may be ridden to death," and even simplicity can be carried to excess by haphazard word-building upon the plan suggested by Mr. Barnes, the Dorsetshire poet. He would have us say "taste-lore," "year-dole," "folk-dom," "sky-line," instead of "æsthetics," "annuity," "democracy," "horizon." In the early days of the language such a system might have had its advantages in preserving a vocabulary of greater Teutonic purity. Nowadays, however, it would be very cumbersome and would give rise to differences in dialect, as some people would use the new compounds, whilst others would adhere to the familiar borrowings from Latin or Greek.

(*d*) Bear in mind the importance of *coherence* and *continuity*. Sentences should follow one another like the links of a chain, each addition tending towards a complete and connected result. Note how obvious is this simile of a chain in the following extracts:—

> "As we increase the range of what we see, we increase the richness of what we can imagine." (RUSKIN.)
>
> "A man's nature runs either to herbs or weeds; therefore, let him seasonably water the one and destroy the other."
> (BACON.)

§ 11. *Crispness of style* is conducive to *vigour*.

(*a*) A dry style tends to weary the reader, even if the subject be entertaining. Dryness generally results from using long words, or from writing artificially. Artificiality may be seen in the attempt to disguise poor matter under a ponderous, flamboyant mass of words. Much of Dr. Johnson's ephemeral work may be cited as an instance of this; indeed it has been said that Johnson makes his little fishes talk like whales.

(*b*) There should be variety both in the length and the structure of sentences; there should be variety in the choice of words; and remember that sameness in lines of thought, similarity in mental outlook upon different subjects, will be fatal to variety of style. Still, grace of language, like gracefulness in walking, must not be sought too consciously, or the result will be automatic "woodenness." (See § 29.)

(*c*) Take every advantage of synonyms and idioms, and remember that an apt and telling quotation is often a bright jewel in a dull setting of verbiage. (See §§ 30 and 32.)

§ **12.** *Rhythm* must not be neglected. It will greatly increase the effect of your composition.

X (*a*) What you write should have a rhythmical flow, that is, there should be a succession of sentences and phrases pleasant to the ear. In this respect, compare the beauty of R. L. Stevenson's language with the crude attempts of the penny novelist.

(*b*) *Euphony* and *rhythm* may be attained by:

(1) Avoidance of harsh sounding words.

(2) Avoidance of clumsy combinations and constructions, and of sequences of long words.

(3) Avoidance of "jingle" caused by frequent occurrence of the same or similar sounds.

(*c*) Also, care should be taken that the general flow of the composition be not harsh or clumsy, and not a little good will result from careful reading of authors whose works are noted for their rhythm, as the "mental ear" will be cultivated.

(*d*) In the hand of a master craftsman, the short, sharp sentence is very effective, but the novice may easily produce an irritating clatter. *Macaulay* uses this device in some of his most graphic descriptive passages.

(*e*) It is a good plan to read your composition aloud, and still better if you can do so in the presence of a competent critic. This will help you to avoid loosely constructed and ill-balanced sentences.

§ 13. *Some errors in taste to be avoided* are slang, colloquialisms, archaisms, foreign and pedantic expressions, hackneyed sayings, tautology and redundancy.

§ 14. *Slang.* Of course there are degrees of slang. Much of what was originally slang has become grafted on to the language in the form of idiom. "Donkey" was slang at the beginning of the 19th century, so were "mob," "sham," "humbug," at an earlier date. There are many expressions perilously akin to slang which might be allowable in ordinary conversation, but which would be quite out of place in written matter, *e.g.*, "I did it on my own," "It is a jolly shame," "To best anyone is not my intention." Indeed, it is a moot point whether they are in the best of taste when used in ordinary conversation, though this depends largely to whom you are speaking and the manner in which you are speaking. What would be allowable by an intimate friend would be strongly objected to by a stranger. Do not confuse slang with what have become idiomatic expressions, and in this connection read §§ 32-3.

§ 15. *Colloquialisms.* Write "would not," "do not," instead of "wouldn't," "don't," etc. The latter may be appropriate in a familiar letter, but are out of place in an essay. It is a somewhat remarkable paradox that from the earliest times almost every civilised nation has possessed two fine shades of difference in its language—the written and the spoken. In treating 20th century English, we are concerned with the former, not with the latter.

§ 16. *Archaisms.* Because Spenser, Shakspeare, and Milton used a certain word or expression, it does not follow that you can do the same. Since their time many words have changed in meaning; others have fallen into disuse. Again, much of what is permissible in poetry could not be tolerated in prose, *e.g.*

(1) "His *glistring* armour made
A little *glooming* light, much like a shade." (SPENSER.)

(2) "But he'll remember *with advantages*
What feats he did that day." (SHAKSPEARE.)

(3) " . . . . others on the grass
Couched, and, now filled with pasture, gazing sat,
Or *bedward* ruminating." (MILTON.)

(4) "Does the P. and O. bear you to *meward?*" (KIPLING.)

(N.B.—The italics are ours.)

§ 17. *Foreign and pedantic expressions.*

(*a*) Dip deeply into the "well of English undefiled," and remember that the Saxon element is the backbone of our speech, which however contains several thousand words of Latin origin; many are indispensable, but if a simple word of three letters will express your meaning, use it in preference to one of eight. Of all European languages, English contains the richest stock of alternate words and phrases. (See remarks on "Synonyms," § 30.)

(*b*) It is the height of pedantry to use such terms as "comme il faut," "de nouveau," "lactic acid" (meaning "sour milk"), and a would-be lady novelist recently asked us whether the introduction of French into her storyettes would improve them. "Such," she added, "as 'Honi soit qui mal y pense,' and 'Notre D——'"

(*c*) Avoid quoting specimens of dialect, Scottish or otherwise; leave this to the kailyard novelist.

(*d*) *Americanisms* should not be introduced into formal composition, *e.g.* "to fix" in the sense of "to establish," "I calculate," "I guess," "cute," "slick through it."

The following would grate upon the sensibilities of anyone possessing a taste for idiomatic and graceful English:

> "I calculate I can fix the matter, for I guess I'm cute enough to go slick through it without being had."

(*e*) If it is necessary to employ a foreign or technical term, see that you spell it correctly, *e.g.* "chic," "anglophobe," "turbine," "Marconigram," "radium," "séance."

§ 18. *Hackneyed expressions* and *too* popular quotations are not advisable. Combinations like "the dyspeptic sage of Chelsea" (Carlyle), "the Eternal City" (Rome), "the wizard of the North" (Scott), possess an air of tawdriness and pedantry if used to excess. The oft-repeated lines

> "Our little systems have their day,"
>
> "In the spring a young man's fancy," etc.,

though they might impress the audience at a village penny reading, fall flat when introduced into an essay.

§ 19. *Tautology* is a very common fault. It consists in repeating a word when it could be understood or a synonym employed, and in using superfluous words, *e.g.* "He is better versed in theology than any *living* man." (Here "living" is unnecessary, because a man must be living to be versed in a science.) The defect is obvious in "The captain gave orders to board the frigate and the captain was the first man aboard her."

"I myself did it" is both tautological and egotistical, but is occasionally admissible for emphasis.

The following verses are examples of what would constitute serious tautology in prose, although the rhyme tends to counteract this tendency:

> "The young King Saul was very tall,
> And never king was taller;
> But though King Saul was very tall,
> Far better kings were smaller." (ANON.)
>
> "Great fleas have little fleas
> Upon their backs to bite 'em;
> And little fleas have lesser fleas,
> And so *ad infinitum*."
> (LOWELL: "Biglow Papers.")

A guarded use of repetition, however, sometimes lends emphasis to a statement. (See § 29, *d.*)

Again, the same idea is often repeated in different words, causing what is known as "*Redundancy*," *e.g.* "He bisects the line into two equal parts." ("To bisect" means to divide into two equal parts, hence the sentence should end with the word "line.") "One and only Shakspeare," "Ways and means," "Act and deed," "Will and testament," are idiomatic, but redundant. Chaucer uses such pairs as "pray and beseech," "mirth and jollity," which are identical in meaning, and Hooker (16th century) writes "sense and meaning."

CHAPTER III.

GRAMMAR: SOME GRAMMATICAL ERRORS AND DEFECTS TO BE AVOIDED.

§ 20. THERE should be strict conformity with the recognised rules of grammar. To write ungrammatically is like attempting to build a house by throwing down bricks in a haphazard and purposeless manner. The result will be a chaos without use or ornament. Grammatical defects and even errors were common to nearly all the great writers of the Elizabethan period, and, be it whispered, they are not unknown among popular present day authors. Hallam maintains that Hobbes (middle 17th century) is our first uniformly correct writer in this respect.

§ 21. *The Noun.*

(*a*) Be careful how you handle the possessive plural, which is formed by

(1) Adding "'s" to the plural if this does not end in 's,' as "Women's Rights," "The Children's Home."

(2) Merely adding the apostrophe (') if the plural ends in 's,' *e.g.* "The Playgoers' Club," "The Boys' Brigade," "The Girls' Gymnasium."

Note that—

(1) The possessive with "'s" is not commonly used in the case of inanimates. Say "The top of the house," "The edge of the wood," etc., though "A day's work," "A year's salary," are allowable.

(2) After a sibilant (hissing sound, equivalent to s, z, etc.) the apostrophe alone is often used for the possessive singular, as "for conscience' sake," "Euripides' writings." But for the sake of legibility many authorities prefer "'s," *e.g.* as "St. James's Church," "Davy Jones's Locker."

(*b*) Some plural forms give trouble, and in particular we may mention

(1) The plural of compound nouns, which generally take the *s* inflexion at the end of the compound, as "forget-me-nots," "conning-towers." But note "men-of-war," "courts-martial," "hangers-on," "commanders-in-chief."

(2) "*Alms*," "*eaves*," "*riches*," which were originally singular, are now regarded as plural, and so require a plural verb. On the other hand, certain nouns which have the appearance of plurals possess a singular force, *e.g.*, "*innings*," "*means*," "*news*," "*tidings*."

§ 22. *The Verb.*

(*a*) A finite verb should agree with its subject in number and in person, *e.g.*

> "The 'Forty Thieves' was acted in London and in the provinces" is correct. "*Was*" is used because "Forty Thieves," being the name of a play, is singular, but, in referring to a number of criminals, you would write, "The forty thieves were arrested."

(*b*) A plural verb must be employed when the components of a double subject are joined by "and," even though they are singular when considered separately, *e.g.*

> "Englishman and German *are* striving for commercial supremacy."
> "Industry and intelligence rarely *fail* to open the door of success."

NOTE.—(1) Some grammarians admit a singular verb when the compound subject, whilst seeming to form a single conception, may, with equal sense, indicate two separate ideas, *e.g.* "To the natives of India the name and personality of Gladstone *was* something sacred." Personally, however, we consider that this is treading upon thin ice.

(2) A singular verb may be correctly used with two nouns joined by "and," and unmistakably forming one idea, also with several words used as the title of a book, play, etc.

> "Bread and water, combined wish the treadmill, is not an attractive outlook for one always accustomed to luxury."
> "'Antony and Cleopatra' is a fine play."
> "'The Idylls of the King' is one of Tennyson's finest works."

(3) In long sentences avoid a common error of making the predicate agree with the nearest noun—unless this is the subject.

> "If it were possible to get near when one of these eruptions *take place*, we should see a grand sight," should read *takes place*, the subject being *one* (not *eruptions*).

(4) A noun of multitude should take a singular verb when collective action is implied, but a plural verb when the action is individual *e.g.*

> "The jury was unanimous in this verdict."
> "The jury (=the jurymen) were having tea."

(*c*) If a disjunctive word or phrase ("or," "nor," "with," "as well as") separate two singular nominatives, a singular verb should be used, *e.g.*

> "Englishman as well as German *is* striving for commercial supremacy."
> "Neither industry nor intelligence *is* able to open the door of success to a knave."

(*d*) There should be correct *sequence of tenses*. Do not begin a complex sentence in one tense and end it in another. (See note on *Sequence of Tenses*, *p*. 27).

(*e*) If a participle be used, the context should make clear what is implied. "Whilst riding across the moor I saw several ships" is explicit, because it implies that the speaker saw the ships whilst *he* was riding. But "I saw several ships, riding across the moor" is weak if a comma be inserted after "*ships*," and absurd if it be omitted.

(*f*) Sometimes uncertainty exists as to the correct use of "shall" and "will." We all recall the classical example of the Frenchman who, upon falling into deep water, is said to have remarked, "I will be drowned and nobody shall save me." Without examining the truth of this statement we may state broadly that

> "*Will*" in the 1st person signifies intention or determination, as "I *will* do it whatever be the cost." But in the 2nd and 3rd persons simple futurity is implied.
> "*Shall*" in the 1st person indicates simple futurity, and in the 2nd and 3rd persons compulsion.

Compare the meaning of

"I shall go."
"You shall go."
"He shall go."

(*g*) As a rule avoid "*split infinitives*" (*i.e.* when "to" is separated from the verb). Better say "to fight bravely," "to love ardently," than "to bravely fight," "to ardently love," though "to really hazard the success of the enterprise" seems unassailable.

(*h*) Nowadays much less heed is paid to the use of the subjunctive than formerly, but "If Fate decree, the Tribune falls," "If he hesitate all is lost," sound more scholarly and elegant than would be the case if "*decrees*" and "*hesitates*" were substituted. Note, however, that "If the ruse is successful that patrol will be captured" is as good as "If the ruse *be* successful," etc.

We notice neglect of the subjunctive and confusion of ideas in the words of a fiery-tempered Irish member, who exclaimed to an argumentative opponent, "If I *was* to swear that black was white, and white black, you'd say it wasn't!"

(*i*) Note that two negatives used with a verb give an affirmative meaning, *e.g.*

(2) "You may deny that you were not the cause" has the logical sense of "You may urge that you *were* the cause." Delete the "*not*," and the denial of *being* the cause is obvious.

§ 23. *The Pronoun.*

(*a*) Relative pronouns agree with the antecedent in gender, number, and person, though not necessarily in case. Say "the man *whom* I saw," not "the man *which*," etc. "*Which*" is neuter, whereas "man," the antecedent, is masculine.

(*b*) "*Who*" is used with antecedents denoting persons (*i.e.* when the antecedent is not of neuter gender). "*Which*" is used when the antecedent does not denote a person. Compare the respective uses in

"Sir Richard Granville, who was one of the most versatile Elizabethan heroes, commanded the 'Revenge,' which is a name familiar to all students of history."

"*That*" may be used with an antecedent of *any* gender. We may say "They are people that I like," and "These are books that I have read."

Note "*What*" (with the sense of "that which," or "the thing which"), *e.g.*

"G. A. Sala tells us that when a boy he was allowed to study what he pleased."

(See note regarding *who*, *which*, *that*, on *p.* 28.)

(*d*) "*Who*" (nom.) instead of "*whom*" (obj.) is sometimes incorrectly used as the indirect or direct object of a transitive verb. "Who did you give it to?" "Who did you see?" should be respectively, "To whom did you give it?" "Whom did you see?"

(*e*) Do not use the objective instead of the nominative case after the verb "*to be.*"

A classical example is from the "Jackdaw of Rheims"—"Regardless of grammar they all cried, 'That's *him.*'" But Halliwell was correct when he wrote:

> "Old King Cole
> Was a merry old soul,
> And a merry old soul was *he.*"

(*f*) In composition "*one*" is frequently preferable to "*I*," "*people*" to "*you*," and the editorial "*we*" to the singular first personal pronoun. Sink personality as much as possible.

§ 24. *Adjectives and Adverbs.*

(*a*) Adjectives are often incorrectly used as adverbs, *e.g.* "She sings sweet" should be "She sings sweetly." The *sweetness* refers to the act of singing, not to the singer, *i.e.* the verb is modified, and so an adverb is required. "The battle raged fierce from morn till eve" should read "The battle raged fiercely," etc.

(*b*) Hazy notions frequently exist as to the employment of "*each*" and "*either.*" "*Each*" means everyone of several persons or things, "*either*" one of two, *e.g.* compare

> "Each gave the boy 6d." (He received more than one sixpence.)
> "Either will give the boy 6d." (He will receive only one sixpence.)

(*c*) Do not confuse "*either*" and "*any.*" The former presumes selection from two persons or things, the latter from more than two. It is incorrect to say "My favourite poets are Shelley, Browning, and Matthew Arnold; I will read selections from *either* of them." "Any" should be substituted for "either."

(*d*) Avoid errors with respect to the degrees of comparison. Use the *comparative* when only two, and the *superlative* when more than two things are compared, *e.g.*

"My watch is not so handsome as yours, but it is the *stronger*" (not "*strongest*"). It would be correct, however, to say, "The watches of Henry and William are more handsome than mine, but this is the strongest"; and the troops who styled Marshal Ney the "Bravest of the Brave," were both grammatical and complimentary.

(*e*) Note that an adverb should be placed as close as possible to the word which it modifies. It should, as a rule, immediately precede or follow.

§ 25. *Prepositions.*

(*a*) Prepositions should precede the words governed by them. Say "Into which pond did you fall?" not "Which pond did you fall into?"

(*b*) Repeat the preposition after an intervening conjunction, *e.g.*

> "Method is indispensable, both in private life and in business."
>
> "Historical fiction was the forte both of Scott and of Dumas."

(*c*) Common prepositional errors are seen in the use of

"Compare *to*,"	instead of	"compare *with*."
"Inseparable *to*,"	,,	"inseparable *from*."
"Refrain *to*,"	,,	"refrain *from*."
"Think *to*,"	,,	"think *of*."
(*i.e.* "What do you think to it?"—a "Provincialism.")		
"Dissatisfied *at*,"	instead of	"dissatisfied *with*."
"Different *to*,"	,,	"different *from*."

But note that

We agree *with* a person if his views coincide with our own, but we agree *to* a proposal made by him.

We confide *in* our doctor, but confide our children *to* their schoolmaster's care.

We part *from* a friend when he goes abroad, but we part *with* a thing when we sell it.

ADDENDA TO GRAMMATICAL NOTES.

(*A*) Reported or Indirect Speech.

This is the antithesis of *Direct* or *First Person Speech* (sometimes known as *Oratio Recta*), which gives speech in its original form. Compare

(*a*) *Direct Speech*. "I do not think of finishing our game," said the captain, "until darkness drives us indoors."

(*b*) *Indirect Speech*. The captain said he did not think of finishing their game until darkness drove them indoors.

The transformation from one style to another is merely a matter of common sense and ability to grasp the meaning of a passage. Remember what is the appropriate tense and what the correct person, and adjust other words accordingly.

Note (1) that if we use

(*a*) In *Oratio Recta*		(*b*) *Oratio Obliqua* requires	
(1) Present	tenses	(1) Past	tenses respectively.
(2) Perfect		(2) Pluperfect	
(3) Future		(3) Future Perfect	

(2) In *Oratio Obliqua* 1st and 2nd person *Pronouns* and *Possessive Adjectives* of O.R. give place to corresponding words in the 3rd person.

(3) The words *here*, *now*, *this*, *these*, of O.R. become *there*, *then*, *that*, *those*, in O.O.

The above rules are meant to apply when the matter put in *Oratio Obliqua* is dependent on a leading verb (in the 3rd person and past tense) of *saying*, *thinking*, etc.

Note that forms such as the following may occur in O.O.

> "I told him one thing was lacking to make him a scientist of front rank, and that until he cultivated more originality his work would always resemble leaves without figs."

The direct form would be:

> I said to him, "One thing is lacking to make you a scientist of front rank, and until you cultivate more originality your work will always resemble leaves without figs."

(*B*) The RHETORICAL, as distinct from the *grammatical* (see *p.* 52), classification of sentences should be noted.

(*a*) Sentences are styled *periodic* when the device of *suspense* (see *p.* 41) is employed, and, if not used to excess, enchain the reader's attention, besides giving a certain neatness of finish to the construction.

(*b*) *Loose sentences* are those in which qualifying and explanatory elements are added as they occur to the writer, and, being more like conversation, tend to counteract possible stiffness.

Note that the term "*loose*" is not used in any disparaging sense, and in this connection is in no way akin to clumsy.

(*c*) *Balanced sentences* are a broad and more extended application of the figure *parallelism* (see *p.* 38).

They imply likeness of construction, similarity, or antithesis of thought, and afford a sharp relief to the ordinary humdrum construction.

(*C*) By SEQUENCE OF TENSES we mean the principle according to which the tense of a subordinate clause is influenced by that of the principal clause.

Generally speaking, (*a*) when the principal clause is *present*, *perfect*, or *future*, a *present* tense is used in the subordinate clause; (*b*) when the principal clause is *past* or *pluperfect*, the subordinate clause takes a *past* tense.

Note that this applies to the *subjunctive* as well as to the *indicative* mood.

> The captain thought we might "stand at ease."
> I fear that he may understand.

Note that when the *historic present* (*i.e.* description of past events as though *now* happening) is used, it should be kept to a scheme or paragraph of its own.

In correcting the essays of beginners, we time after time notice an idle mixture of historic present and the past tense in the same paragraph and often in the same sentence.

(*D*) USES OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS (see also *p.* 23).

(1) "*Who*" and "*which*" have an attributive or enlarging effect, and omission of the clause introduced by them need not impair the sense of the principal sentence. The sense of "*that*," however, is restrictive, and the

clause introduced by it could not be omitted without changing the sense of what remains.

(2) *That* cannot stand for a clause or sentence. It could not be substituted for *which* in

> "I am told he likes books, which I am very pleased to hear."

(3) *That* has closer connection with a preceding noun than *who* or *which*, and so has been called the *defining* or *restrictive relative.* Compare

> There is a public park near us, which (*i.e. which fact*) is a great boon.
>
> Near us there is a public park that is a great boon (*i.e. the park* is a great boon).

(4) The use of the relative may be avoided by employing

(*a*) The infinitive.
(*b*) Participles.
(*c*) An "if" clause.
(*d*) "*And*" in lieu of the attributive relatives *who* or *which.*
(*e*) The device of ellipsis.

[Construct sentences in illustration.]

EXERCISES ON CHAPTER III.

(*See also remarks on "Style" in Chapter II.*)

Correct or *justify* the following, giving your reasons for so doing.

NOTE.—*Many of these sentences have been given in actual examination papers; others are taken from Standard Authors, who, being but human, are liable to make occasional slips of the pen.*

I.

1. A reward has been offered to the first man who shall invent a way to improve the machinery used in this mill.
2. The safety and prosperity of any island nation is bound up in its navy.
3. The Romans loved liberty as well as us.
4. Treat the poor dog such as you would be treated yourself.
5. I should reproach him for his cowardice.
6. The captain took the good things which the gods provided with thankful good humour.
7. How much is twice two? Twice two are four.
8. I greatly prefer hearing you than speaking myself.
9. "Everyone of this grotesque family were the creatures of national genius." (*D'Israeli*)
10. "Our Mutual Friend." (Title of one of Dickens' novels.)

II.

1. Nothing can hinder her treatise from being one of the most considerable books which has appeared for the last half century.
2. Whom do you think the cleverest of the two?
3. It was done in the interest of the public.
4. No man is hardly so savage in whom the receiving of kindnesses does not beget a kindly sense.
5. A statute inflicting the punishment of death may be, and ought to be, repealed if it be in any degree expedient.
6. Unfortunately both he and she seemed to have lost their senses.
7. Your Englishman is just as serious in his sports as in any act of his life.
8. "He hath died to redeem such a rebel as me." (*Wesley.*)
9. "And many a holy text around she strews
   That teach the rustic moralist to die." (*Gray:* "Elegy.")
10. "He was so good and well behaved and affectionate, I myself liked him very much." (*Walt Whitman.*)

III.

1. Each party has patted Hodge on the back and they tell him he is a fine fellow.
2. To aim at public and private good are so far from being inconsistent that they mutually promote each other.

3. Everyone present except he guessed the reason.
4. In their policy we found trusts evidently severely denounced.
5. The novels Dumas wrote are different to Scott's in many respects.
6. Californians can can fruit better than Englishmen can.
7. He is engaged at £100 a year.
8. "Whose honesty they all durst swear for." (*Butler:* "Hudibras.")
9. "This England never did, nor never shall
   Lie at the proud foot of a conqueror."
   (*Shakspeare:* "King John.")
10. "The corpse of half her senate manure the fields of Thessaly."
    (*Addison:* "Cato.")

IV.

1. Our greatest general and admiral is buried in St. Paul's.
2. With selfish people, the frequency of imposture together with the inadequacy of present arrangements, serve as an excuse for not giving at all.
3. The length any reader chooses to go in his study is their own affair.
4. Homer was not only the maker of a nation but of a language.
5. "One of the combatants was unhurt, the other sustained a wound in the arm of no importance." (From *Punch.*)
6. He looked me full in the face.
7. "His tears runs down his beard like winter's drops."
   (*Shakspeare:* "Tempest.")
8. "Revelation was never intended for such as he." (*Campbell.*)
9. The government is weak; they are divided.
10. "Lie heavy on him earth, for he
    Laid many a heavy load on thee."
    (*Dr. Evans:* "Epitaph on Vanbrugh.")

V.

1. Nothing but dreary dykes, muddy and straight, guarded by the ghosts of suicidal pollards, occur to break the monotony of the landscape.
2. My friend and myself walked to the foot of the mountain.
3. An unwritten law of war says that combatants must wear an uniform.
4. Business is only attended to there in the morning.
5. The guinea places were better filled than the half-guinea, and not a jot better.
6. "Paradise Lost" and "Paradise Regained" is the conception of a giant mind.
7. Meanwhile the great rhetorical fabric gradually arose. He revised, erased, strengthened, emphasised with indefatigable industry.
8. Carlyle has taught us that silence is golden in 30 volumes.
9. Combine the useful to the ornamental.
10. "Weep I cannot, but my heart bleeds."
    (*Shakspeare:* "Winter's Tale.")

VI.

1. I have always said that there was literary ability in that man.
2. For a week he never took off his clothes and lay down in them.
3. The number of persons employed in a single Manchester factory are greater than all the inhabitants of our village.
4. There have been three famous orators in my time, either of whom I should have been glad to hear.
5. He was shot by a servant under notice to leave, with whom he was finding fault very fortunately without effect.
6. Here is a man you sent for to mend the window.
7. Your pack of cards are cleaner than mine.
8. "Let us make brick and burn them." (*Gen.* xi.)
9. "The ''s' cannot be a contraction of '*his*,' for it is put to female nouns." (*Johnson.*)
10. "With outstretched hoe I slew him at the door
    And taught him never to come there no more." (*Cowper.*)

VII.

1. I asked him what he thought was the most beneficent legislation of the Victorian age, and he answered "The Factory Laws."
2. This statement is untrue ; the very converse of it is true.
3. They need not necessarily go abroad to see fine scenery.
4. Neither of the three will succeed.
5. When asked to name his price in shillings he said he would accept no less than ten.
6. He called me a liar, but I retorted the charge and proved him to be one instead.
7. They fell down into a disused quarry.
8. "It is easy finding reasons why other people should be patient." (*George Eliot.*)
9. "We do that in our zeal our calmer moments would be afraid to answer." (*Scott:* "Woodstock.")
10. "It was founded mainly on the entire monopoly of the whole trade with the colonies." (*Alison.*)

VIII.

1. Shakspeare's characters are remarkably diversified and human, which renders him eminently readable.
2. In many civilised countries a rise in rent and wages has been found to go hand in hand.
3. I saw it with these very eyes.
4. For some time there existed a mutual silence.
5. "The green trees whispered mild and low." (*Longfellow.*)
6. "It is almost incredible what some writers relate of Appollonius. (*Goldsmith:* "Roman History.")
7. "If policy can prevail upon force." (*Addison:* "Travels.")
8. "If the king gives us leave, you or I may as lawfully preach as them that do." (*Hobbes:* "Civil Wars.")

9. "Gradual sinks the breeze
 Into a perfect calm." (*Thomson:* "Spring.")
10. "Art thou proud yet?—Aye, that I am not thee."
 (*Shakspeare:* "Timon of Athens.")

IX.

1. They sate them down upon the yellow sand.
2. He is the one man above all others to do it.
3. The people of Canada and Australia are a portion of the British Empire.
4. This people has a rightful claim on all who care for the progress of the race.
5. "A man whose inclinations led him to be corrupt and had great abilities." (*Swift:* "Gulliver.")
6. "So many learned men have spent their whole life to agree the sacred with the profane history." (*Temple:* "Essays.")
7. "Luxury was then carried to a higher pitch it had before, or has ever since obtained." (*Clarendon.*)
8. "Grant matter was eternal." (*Young:* "Night Thoughts.")
9. "It will be seen who has done their duty in this world and who has not." (*Sterne:* "Sentimental Journey.")
10. "In the order as they be in his preface." (*Middleton.*)

X.

1. He belongs to one caste and the hewers of wood and drawers of water to another.
2. The country was divided into counties and the counties placed under magistrates.
3. You will never succeed without you take more pains.
4. "Full fathom five thy father lies,
 Of his bones are coral made." (*Shakspeare:* "Tempest.")
5. "He dropped his knife in his retreat against the wall, which his rapid antagonist kicked under the table."
 (*Thackeray:* "The Virginians.")
6. "The insect youth are on the wing
 Eager to taste the honied spring." (*Gray:* "Ode on Spring.")
7. "He would have spoke." (*Milton.*)
8. "Leave Nell and I to toil and work." (*Dickens.*)
9. "The boy stood on the burning deck
 Whence all but he had fled." (*Mrs. Hemans.*)
10. "In worlds whose course is equable and pure."
 (*Wordsworth:* "Laodamia.")

XI.

1. "I am not like other men, to envy the talents I cannot reach."
 (*Swift:* "Tale of a Tub.")
2. "For ever in this humble cell
 Let thee and I my fair one dwell." (*Prior.*)

3. "Securing to yourselves a succession of worthy men as may adorn this place." (*Atterbury:* "Sermons")
4. "What are become of all monuments of grandeur mentioned in the Bible?" (*Burnet:* "Theory of the Earth.")
5. The Thames is derived from the Latin "Thamesis."
6. Let us sing the processional hymn, omitting the fifth and sixth verse.
7. He has written a history of English literature not extending beyond one volume.
8. "Our army swore terribly in Flanders," cried my Uncle Toby, "but nothing to this." (*Sterne:* "Tristram Shandy.")
9. "Shakespeare is above all writers the poet of Nature, the poet that holds up to his readers a faithful mirror of manners and life." (*Johnson.*)
10. Nothing but wailings was heard.

XII.

1. "The tongue is like a race-horse, which runs the faster the lesser weight it carries." (*Addison:* "Spectator.")
2. "Among whom, hardly one in five thousand are in the Pretender's interest." (*Swift:* "Conduct of the Allies.")
3. "Two men ignorant of one another's language." (*Blair:* "Lectures.")
4. "It is neither to be found in art nor nature." (*Cowley.*)
5. "Sure! some disaster has befel." (*Gay:* "Fables.")
6. "I am always doing these kind of things." (*Ruskin:* "Letters on Art and Literature"; privately printed, 1894.)
7. "Shall there be a God to swear by and none to pray to?" (*Hooker.*)
8. "Let the schoolmaster be abroad if he will, he can do nothing in this age." (*Brougham:* "Speeches.")
9. "People that make puns are like wanton boys that put coppers on the railroad tracks." (*O. W. Holmes:* "Autocrat.")
10. "This was the most unkindest cut of all." (*Shakspeare:* "Julius Cæsar.")

CHAPTER IV.

AUXILIARIES OF STYLE.

§ 26. We have urged the necessity of a bright, crisp style. In order to attain this, you must bring into play all the legitimate artifices of the stylist—such as figures of speech, devices to secure emphasis, idiomatic expressions, and well chosen synonyms where tautology would otherwise result. In this connection, however, do not go to extremes. Change and recreation in moderation are essential to health and life, but just as all change and recreation would produce a useless drone, so undue employment of figures of speech, etc., would result in a shallow, artificial style.

§ 27. *Figures of Speech* may be defined as departure from ordinary, straightforward methods of statement for the purpose of emphasis, or to lend variety to the style. The principal are given below—

(1) *Allegory:* Disguising an idea in another dress so as to point a moral, etc. (Spenser's "Fairie Queene" and Bunyan's "Pilgrim's Progress" are allegories on a large scale.) Examples—

> "Thou hast brought a vine out of Egypt." (OLD TEST.)
>
> "Mercy and Justice clasped hands when this sentence was commuted."

(2) *Antithesis*, or contrast of dissimilar facts, things, etc., is much used by Macaulay, ***e.g.***

> (*a*) "The Puritans hated bear-baiting, not because it gave pain to the bear, but because it gave pleasure to the spectators."
>
> (*b*) "Grenville was as liberal of words as he was sparing of guineas."
>
> (*c*) "He (Charles II.) was crowned in his youth with the Covenant in his hand; he died at last with the Host sticking in his throat; and, during most of the intermediate years was occupied in persecuting both Covenanters and Catholics."

Also note Carlyle's fine figure:

> "For Kings and for Beggars, for the justly doomed and the unjustly, it is a hard thing to die."

(3) *Apostrophe* consists in addressing the absent as though present, or in addressing inanimate objects as persons, *e.g.*

> When describing Cromwell's character in 3rd person narrative you suddenly break into 2nd person and say, "Ah! Cromwell! would that you were alive to-day."

(*a*) Carlyle frequently uses this figure, *e.g.*

> "To this conclusion, then, hast thou come, O hapless Louis! The Son of Sixty Kings is to die on the scaffold by form of Law."

(*b*) Note that Apostrophe is frequently used in poetry:

> "I am monarch of all I survey,
> My right there is none to dispute;
> From the centre all round to the sea
> I am lord of the fowl and the brute.
> O solitude! Where are thy charms
> That sages have seen in thy face?
> Better dwell in the midst of alarms
> Than reign in this horrible place."
> (COWPER: "Selkirk.")

(4) *Climax* may be compared with a ladder. It is an ascent in the scale of intensity, *e.g.*

> "Because he lost his fortune, he lost his friends, his home, his health, in fact, he lost all which makes life worth living."

Note that *Anti-climax* (or "*bathos*") is the opposite of climax—a descent in scale of intensity, *e.g.*

(*a*) "They were all drowned, his wife, his child, his dog."

(*b*) "We are told that Lord Bute paid attention to antiquities and works of art, that he dabbled in certain sciences, and that his spelling was incorrect."

(5) *Epigram* is a pointed saying which usually conveys a striking thought in few words. It is often real sequence, but apparent contradiction, *e.g.*

> "The reward of a thing well done is to have done it."
> (EMERSON.)
>
> "The child is father of the man." (WORDSWORTH.)
>
> "Failure is to form habits." (JOHN OLIVER HOBBES.)
>
> "One good mother is worth a hundred schoolmasters."
> (GEO. HERBERT.)

(6) *Euphemism* is the clothing of an objectionable idea, insinuation, etc., in unobjectionable words, *e.g.*

> "Departure from the truth" instead of "lie."
> "Shewing the white feather" instead of "cowardice."

(7) *Hyperbole* is exaggerated or high flown language used to give additional effect, *e.g.*

> "When Lincoln fell, the Goddess Liberty hid her head, and Freedom wept in every corner of the civilised world."
>
> "The hungry rent the very heavens with their cries of distress."
>
> "Myself am Hell!" (Satan's exclamation in "Paradise Lost.")
>
> "The wind, from whatever quarter it blew, carried to England tidings of battles won, fortresses taken, provinces added to the Empire." (MACAULAY.)
>
> "Blow winds, and crack your cheeks! rage! blow!"
> (SHAKSPEARE: "King Lear.")

(8) *Irony* is used to excite ridicule. It consists in making some statement when the opposite is meant, *e.g.*

> "He verily illustrates precept by example. He says, '*Honesty is the best policy*,' and immediately picks his neighbour's pocket."
>
> "See the brave men running from a toothless lion."
>
> "We are all liable to make mistakes, even the youngest of us."
>
> "'*Pall Mall Gazette*—why *Pall Mall Gazette?*' asked Wagg. 'Because the editor was born at Dublin, the sub-editor at Cork, because the proprietor lives at Paternoster Row, and the paper is published in Catherine Street, Strand.'"
> (THACKERAY: "Pendennis.")

Spoken irony is often more effective than written. Its effect generally lies in the tone of voice or in the emphasis upon certain words.

(9) *Interrogation* is the asking of a question. We can often effectively begin a paragraph or even an essay by this means, *e.g.* if writing upon "courage," you may begin with "What is Courage?" Note Bacon's fine opening of his essay upon Truth—"'What is Truth?' said jesting Pilate, and would not stay for an answer."

(10) *Litotes* is making a statement by denying its contrary, *e.g.*

> A happy example is St. Paul's. "I am citizen of no mean city."
>
> "A sound business man is no day-dreamer."

(11) *Parallel* is placing people or things alongside one another for the purpose of comparison, *e.g.*

> (*a*) "Dumas possessed genius, was brilliant and careless; Zola had talent, was solid and laborious."
>
> (*b*) "Magna Charta is a charter to restrain power and to destroy monopoly. The East India Charter is a charter to establish monopoly and to create power." (BURKE: "Speech on Fox's East India Bill.")

(12) *Personification* consists in addressing or speaking of inanimate things or abstract conceptions as though they were persons, *e.g.*

> "Ah! Liberty! Liberty! what deeds are wrought in thy name!" (MADAME ROLAND.)
>
> "Earth felt the wound." (MILTON.)
>
> "I am the daughter of earth and water."
> (SHELLEY: "Cloud.")
>
> "The gilded car of day
> His glowing axle doth allay
> In the steep Atlantic stream."
> (MILTON: "Comus.")

Compare with "Apostrophe," which is a kind of "Personification."

(13) *Onomatopœia* is the use of words reproducing as nearly as possible actual sounds, *e.g.*

> "Whir" of a pheasant.
> "Bang" of a gun.
> "Wash" of a screw-steamer.
> "Ping-pong" (from sound made by the balls used in the game).
> "Pom-pom" (a machine-gun; from sound made when fired).
> "Swish" and "frou-frou" of a skirt.

(14) *Simile* is an explicit statement of some point of resemblance existing between things wholly different in other respects, *e.g.*

> "The force of his impetuosity is as the rush of falling waters."
>
> "As she passed it seemed like the ceasing of exquisite music." (LONGFELLOW.)

(15) *Metaphor* (one of the most extensively used figures of speech), is implied simile with the words "*like*" and "*as*" omitted, *e.g.*

(*a*) "We feel that the sands of life are running through the hour-glass of time." (To denote increasing age.)

(*b*) "The Angel of Death has been abroad throughout the land. You may almost hear the beating of his wings." (BRIGHT.)

(*c*) "Ignorance is the curse of God; knowledge the wing wherewith we fly to Heaven." (SHAKSPEARE: "Henry VI.")

(*d*) "The friends thou hast, and their adoption tried,
Grapple them to thy soul with hoops of steel."
(SHAKSPEARE: "Hamlet.")

(*e*) "History is a mighty drama, enacted upon the theatre of time, with suns for lamps and eternity for a background."
(CARLYLE.)

Note the difference between

"He fought like a lion" (Simile).
"He was a lion in the fight" (Metaphor).

(16) *Metonymy* (literally "change of name") is a species of metaphor. It occurs in substituting

(*a*) A metaphorical for the real name, *e.g.*

"Sick man of the East" (Sultan of Turkey).
"Land of the Rising Sun" (Japan).

(*b*) A part for the whole

"crown" when *King or Queen* is meant.
"sword" ,, *war* ,,
"bread" ,, *food* ,,
"Give us this day our daily bread." (LORD'S PRAYER.)

(*c*) Proper name for common

"Miltons (*i.e.* great poets) are scarce."

"Some mute inglorious Milton here may rest,
Some Cromwell, guiltless of his country's blood."
(GRAY: "Elegy.")

(*d*) Concrete for abstract.

"He lives by the pen" (*i.e.* by literary work).
"By the sweat of one's brow" (*i.e.* by hard toil).
"Beating swords into plowshares" (*i.e.* transformation from war to peace).

§ 28. The signification of words used figuratively often is more extended than their ordinary meaning. The figurative form is generally known as the "*secondary*" as distinguished from the "*primary*" meaning, *e.g.* compare the use of "dwell" and "run" in the following pairs of sentences:

(*a*) "The old ranger dwells on the outskirts of the forest" (*primary*).
"He frequently dwells upon the matter" (*secondary*).

(*b*) "Representatives of every club run in this race" (*primary*).
"The lease has still ten years to run" (*secondary*).

(See also § 32 on "Idioms.")

§ 29. *Emphasis*, as understood in composition, may be said to mean the adoption of devices to bring certain statements into prominence or to lay greater stress upon their meaning. It must not be confused with the same term employed in that portion of grammar dealing with "Phonetics."

Note that

(1) An interrogation gives emphasis if placed before the verb, *e.g.*

> "Are there men base enough to desert the cause?" is more effective than "I do not think there are men base enough to desert the cause."

(2) The article "*a*" lends emphasis to a statement if repeated before a succession of adjectives, etc., *e.g.*

> "This is a strange spectacle and a sacred." (LYTTON.)

(3) Forcible abruptness may be secured by the omission of conjunctions, *e.g.*

> "This man of many parts conquered the Soudanese, gave them peace, prosperity, railways, a paternal Government—all in the space of a few months."

(4) Other devices for the sake of emphasis are—

(*a*) Appositional enlargement of the subject, *e.g.*

> "He enjoys, he a private soldier, enjoys the general's confidence."

(*b*) An inversion in the natural order of words, *e.g.*

> "Venture to wake him I dare not" (instead of "I dare not venture to wake him").

"Write any more I cannot."

"Silver and gold have I none, but such as I have give I thee." (*Acts* iii. 6.)

(c) The principle of *suspense*, by which the reader's attention is drawn towards the end of a sentence, when the main fact is made known, *e.g.*

(1) "Trembling in every limb, wounded and faint from loss of blood, he was impelled to this deed by a high sense of duty."

(2) "Deep in the shadowy sadness of a vale,
Far sunken from the healthy breath of morn,
Far from the fiery moon and eve's one star—
Sat grey-hair'd Saturn, quiet as a stone."
(KEATS: "Hyperion.")

(d) *Repetition*, which, if not abused, is an excellent vehicle for conveying emphasis, *e.g.*

"I have not seen him for many and many a day."

Macaulay's rendering of Burke's impeachment of Hastings is very fine:—

"I impeach Warren Hastings of high crimes and misdemeanours. I impeach him in the name of the Commons' House of Parliament, whose trust he has betrayed. I impeach him in the name of the English nation whose ancient honour he has sullied. I impeach him in the name of the people of India, whose rights he has trodden under foot, and whose country he has turned into a desert. Lastly, in the name of human nature itself, in the name of both sexes, in the name of every age, in the name of every rank, I impeach the common enemy and oppressor of all."

Note also the following passages—

(1) "I love everything that's old. Old friends, old times, old manners, old books, old wine."
(GOLDSMITH: "She Stoops to Conquer.")

(2) "The Act of Navigation attended the colonies from their infancy, grew with their growth, and strengthened with their strength." (BURKE: "Speech on American Taxation.")

But ordinary mortals must exercise due circumspection in attempting to traverse the paths which have been trodden by genius.

§ 30. *Synonyms.* Warning has been given against tautology and redundancy, yet it frequently happens that we require to repeat the same or a kindred idea, and to do so literally would produce weakness. So we seek a synonym (*i.e.* another word of practically the same meaning), and in this respect our language is fortunately very rich. Sometimes one word will be of Anglo-Saxon and the synonym of Latin origin—readers of "Ivanhoe" will remember Wamba's speech to Gurth upon the subject of the churlish swine and the lordly pork. In such a case, use the Saxon word by choice, and if necessary the Latin as a secondary string. *Note th: pairs.*

(1) *English.*	(2) *Latin.*
anger	ire
bloom	flower
boyish	puerile
feeling	sentiment
kingdom	realm
manly	virile
watery	aqueous

The meaning of each "doublet" is literally the same as its fellow.

§ 31. "*False Synonyms.*" However, be very careful how you deal with synonyms.* There usually exists some slight difference of meaning, though it is often very difficult to see this at first glance, *e.g.*

(1) *antiquatea:* old.
obsolete: out of use, not necessarily old.

e.g. Antiquated dress; obsolete postage stamps.

(2) *escape:* to get away after capture.
elude: to avoid capture.

e.g. "After his escape he eluded the pursuers."

(3) *acquire:* to gain possession.
attain: to reach.

"When Pickwick appeared, Dickens acquired wealth and attained a place in the front rank of novelists."

(4) *invent:* to evolve something which did not previously exist.
discover: to find out something which did exist.

---

* N.B.—Roget's "Thesaurus" is a storehouse of synonyms.

"Davey invented the miners' safety lamp." "Columbus discovered America."

(5) *silent:* not to speak, though possibly a great speaker.
taciturn: not in the habit of saying much.

§ 32. *Idioms.* Learn to write idiomatically, and you will possess a good antidote against dulness. Idiom must not be confused with slang; the latter is mere barbarism, whereas idiom has become grafted on to the language. Watch for idioms when reading, and enter them in a notebook, endeavouring to arrive at their original literal significance. Combinations of words often change their meaning in the most surprising manner, and in course of time indicate something quite different from their original signification.

(*a*) "*To carry coals to Newcastle*" obviously refers to the introduction of anything where it is not required, Newcastle being the centre of a great coalfield. The phrase "Taking corn into Egypt" has a similar meaning.

(*b*) "*Almighty dollar.*" This not infrequently used expression was coined by *Washington Irving.* In his "Creole Village," he says: "The almighty dollar, that great object of universal devotion throughout our land, seems to have no genuine devotees in these peculiar villages."

(*c*) "*To break a butterfly upon the wheel*" (=to use much energy to accomplish a small design). The reference is to the wheel by means of which the bones of criminals were formerly broken. It would be obviously absurd to use this to destroy a fragile insect which could be crushed by a flick of the hand.

> "Satire or sense, alas ! Can Sporus feel,
> Who breaks a butterfly upon a wheel."
> (POPE : "Epistle to Dr. Arbuthnot.")

(*d*) "*Playing to the gallery*" has the sense of seeking for popular applause or pandering to the whims of the multitude. The simile of a theatre is apparent, it being clear that most violent disapproval of a bad play is likely to proceed from the so-called "gods" of the gallery. *Kipling*, in "The Light that Failed," says: "The instant we begin to think about success and the effect of our work—to play with one eye on the gallery—we lose power of touch and everything else."

LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY

(*e*) "*To take anyone down a peg*" (=to lower their pride or sense of dignity) doubtless owes its origin to a metaphoric association with the lowering of a ship's colours. Formerly these were raised or lowered by means of pegs—the higher the colours the greater the honour, and *vice versa.*

> "Trepanned your party with intrigue,
> And took your grandees down a peg."
> (BUTLER: "Hudibras.")

§ 33. It will not be difficult to consider the following idioms in a similar manner, and *the reader should do so as an exercise.*

He makes his mark.
To put the best foot foremost.
Cut off with a shilling.
To drive a hard bargain.
Do not burn the candle at both ends.
Feathering his nest.
He is having his fling, or cutting a dash.
To pay the debt of Nature.
Play second fiddle.
Do not ride roughshod over me.
To play ducks and drakes with a fortune.
He is half seas over.
He leads a loose life.
You keep your nose to the grindstone.
To bark at the moon.
In apple-pie order.
Not to beat about the bush.
To save one's bacon.
It fell like a bolt from the blue.
I have a bone to pick with you.
To put the cart before the horse.
To ring the changes.
Playing with edged tools.
To lower their flag.
To cudgel your brains.
He is a fly upon the coach wheel.
Do not be a lotos-eater.
Lose not a tide.
Your work suggests leaves without figs.
Lay him by the heels.
He knows on which side his bread is buttered.
He has kicked over the traces.
Keep your powder dry.
To cast pearls before swine.

Begging the question.
She is a mere "blue stocking."
Catching a Tartar.
A feather in his cap
These are halcyon days.
You have Hobson's choice.
A Triton among the minnows.
To keep the wolf from the door.
Across the walnuts and the wine.
To give ruffles to a man who wants a shirt.
As plain as a pikestaff.
In a Pickwickian sense.
The cowl does not always make the monk.
Flowing with milk and honey.
He does not need a broker.
Despite Mrs. Grundy.
All is not gold that glisters.
To paint the lily.
A case of diamond cut diamond.
At daggers drawn.
A cock-and-bull story.
To grasp the skirts of chance.
Building castles in the air.
To have two strings to our bow.
A beggarly pittance.

In some cases it is difficult to see how the expression originated, especially when the border line between idiom and slang is very narrow.

Note—(1) How did "hard by" come to mean "near to."

> "*Hard*" may possibly be used in the sense of hard matter, *i.e.* when the molecules are pressed close together (compare lead and sand). It would thus mean "close," "near." Note David Malet's phrase, "Hard by a sheltered wood."

(2) "Near" in the sense of "miserly."

(3) "A chestnut," *i.e.* an antique story.

(4) "I beg your pardon!" in lieu of the plain paraphrase, "You're a liar!"

§ 34. *Cautions and hints* as to use of "Auxiliaries of Style."

(*a*) One of the grossest violations of the canons of literary good taste is the use of *mixed metaphor*, *e.g.* "Men who started on a wrong tack, and instead of grappling with the facts, lost themselves in a maze of misty speculation," contains three metaphorical references of a totally dissimilar nature. Every schoolboy (used in a Macaulaian sense) should be familiar with the stock example generally attributed to Sir Boyle Roche: "I smell a rat, I see him brewing in the air, but I will yet hope to nip him in the bud." Note also the absurdity of such things as "He was *conspicuous* by his *absence*."

(*b*) Do not mix *metaphor* with *literal statement*, *e.g.*

> "He was a very thunderbolt of war,
> And was lieutenant to the Earl of Mar."

The first line is metaphorical, insinuating that he would strike his foes as relentlessly as a thunderbolt would crush whatever lay in its path. The second line merely states an actual fact as regards his military rank.

(*c*) Do not use *poetic metaphor* for a *prosaic subject*. The following is a ludicrous example: "The policeman on his bicycle dashed after the thief like a whirlwind, or as a thunderbolt launched from Jove's armoury against one who had excited the fiery ire of that immortal deity."

(*d*) Too much *hyperbole* makes pompous nonsense, and constantly repeated *antithesis* tends towards artificiality. In fact, the excessive use of figures of speech gives one the impression that the matter is too far-fetched, and that the writer is merely striving after effect. It is the kind of thing we see in the "shrieking" articles of journals whose sole aim and motto seems to be "to agitate." Hence, anyone trying to write good English may well exercise due care in this respect.

(*e*) The principle of *suspense* should never be carried to excess, or the reader is apt to become wearied, and possibly may lose the thread of the discourse.

(*f*) Find your own similes and metaphors. They are duly inscribed in Nature's book, and are waiting for you in her storehouse if you will only use your seeing and thinking faculties. You can get them from the stars, the woods, the streams, from noble pictures and architecture, from music. They await you at every moment of your life, and sometimes in what you might think to be the most prosaic situations.

EXERCISES ON CHAPTER IV.

A. (on §§ 30-1)

Write sentences to show the difference between :—

1. ought and aught, nought.
2. each other and one another.
3. beside and besides.
4. abandon, desert, leave, forsake.
5. antique, antiquated, obsolete, old, archaic.
6. discover, invent, find out, evolve.
7. respect, esteem, regard, deference.
8. courage, fortitude, bravery.
9. wish, desire.
10. hearty, cordial.
11. love, affection.
12. scandal, slander.
13. officious, interfering.
14. rude, impertinent.
15. defend, protect, shield.
16. speech, language, dialect, patois.
17. dissimulation, deceit.
18. precise, exact.
19. aphorism, proverb.
20. parody, satire.

B. Point out the Figures of Speech in the following extracts :—

1. "Thy word is a lamp unto my feet and a light unto my path."
   (*Psalm* cxix.)
2. "How they tinkle, tinkle, tinkle,
   In the icy air of night." (*Poe's* : "The Bells.")
3. "Knowledge is proud that he has learned so much,
   Wisdom is humble that he knows no more." (*Cowper.*)
4. "Life is a leaf of paper white,
   Whereon each of us may write
   His word or two, and then comes night." (*Lowell.*)
5. "Like warp and woof all destinies are woven fast,
   Linked in sympathy like the keys of an organ vast."
   (*Whittier.*)
6. "Am I my brother's keeper?"
7. "They were swifter than eagles; they were stronger than lions."
8. "Ye winds of memory, sweep the silent lyre." (*O. W. Holmes.*)
9. "What has the grey-haired prisoner done?
   Has murder stained his hands with gore?
   Not so; his crime is a fouler one—
   God made the old man poor." (*Whittier.*)
10. "I am thinking, if Aunt knew so little of sin,
    What a wonder Aunt Tabitha's aunt must have been;
    And her great aunt,—it scares me." (*O. W. Holmes.*)
11. "Ring out the thousand wars of old,
    Ring in the thousand years of peace." (*Tennyson.*)

12. "Better a death when work is done, than earth's most favoured birth;
Better a child in God's great love, than the king of all the earth." (*Macdonald.*)
13. "A sonnet is a moment's monument." (*Rossetti.*)
14. "Vigour from toil, from trouble patience grows." (*Beattie.*)
15. "Mysterious night! When our first parent knew
Thee from report divine, and heard thy name,
Did he not tremble for this lovely frame,
This glorious canopy of light and blue?" (*White.*)
16. "And in the smoke the pennons flew,
As in the storm the white sea-mew." (*Scott.*)
17. "Ye are the salt of the earth!"
18. "He was a learned man among lords, and a lord among learned men." (*Johnson.*)
19. "Go, teach Eternal Wisdom how to rule,
Then drop into thyself and be a fool." (*Pope.*)
20. "Let slip the dogs of war."
21. "The curfew tolls the knell of parting day."
22. "This precious stone set in the silver sea."
23. "How far that little candle throws its beams!
So shines a good deed in a naughty world." (*Shakspeare.*)
24. "Spare moments are the gold-dust of time."
25. "The more busy we are, the more leisure we have." (*Hazlitt.*)
26. "All flesh is grass."
27. "Aloft on sky and mountain wall
Are God's great pictures hung." (*Whittier.*)
28. "Thoughts that breathe and words that burn." (*Gray.*)
29. "Thou hast taught me, silent river,
Many a lesson, deep and long." (*Longfellow.*)
30. "Waves mountain high."
31. "The mountains shall drop down new wine, and the hills shall flow with milk." (*Joel* iii.)
32. "O dear! O dear! what shall I do?
I've lost my wife and seed corn too."
33. "The old year lies a-dying." (*Tennyson.*)
34. "Green be the turf above thee,
Friend of my better days;
None knew thee but to love thee,
None named thee but to praise."
35. "Britain's commerce whitens every sea."
36. "Sceptre and crown
Must tumble down,
And in the dust be equal made
With the poor crooked scythe and spade."
37. "Those gracious words revive my drooping thoughts,
And give my tongue-tied sorrows leave to speak."
38. "The meteor-flag of England
Shall yet more glorious burn."
39. "He nailed his colours to the mast."
40 "He lost his wife, his daughter, his sons, and his watch—all at one fell sweep."

CHAPTER V.

ORTHOGRAPHY AND PUNCTUATION.

Orthography.

§ 35. *How to correct bad spelling.* Do not think of attempting to write English if you cannot spell correctly. It is like trying to run before you can walk. The following methods may help to supply any deficiency.

(*a*) Take forty or fifty lines of some standard author (say *Macaulay*, *Carlyle*, *Addison*, or *Gibbon*), read the passage carefully, and enter in a notebook all words which you think you cannot spell. Copy such words five or six times, get a friend to dictate them, correct any misspelling, and then have the whole piece dictated. When correcting, note errors of punctuation and capitalisation, as well as slips in spelling. The words you misspell should be entered in a special notebook and revised from time to time.

(*b*) Procure a good spelling vocabulary, such as Chambers', or Morell's (Cassell), and in addition to the exercise mentioned under (*a*), have one or two columns dictated daily.

Persistence in this plan for a few months will make you an excellent speller; but the two causes which are chiefly responsible for the wretched spelling of young England are rapid, and therefore thoughtless and useless, reading, or no reading at all.

§ 36. *Modern English spelling a chaos.* The seeming chaos of modern English spelling arises from the inconsistent use of our consonantal and vowel symbols, *e.g.*

(*a*) A single letter stands for many sounds, as in "all," "father," "mate," "mat," where "*a*" is sounded differently each time.

(*b*) The same sound is represented by different letters, ***e.g.*** in "cede," "seed," "c" and "s" represent the same sound.

(*c*) There are many silent letters, as in "psalm," "debt," "gnat," "know," etc.

Note that

(1) One explanation may be found in the fact that while the spelling has altered little during the past three centuries, the pronunciation has changed considerably, and what was once phonetic spelling is not so now. Formerly there was no definite consistency in spelling, and an original anomaly may have remained such, *e.g.* words derived from other languages sometimes wrongly follow the spelling of the supposed primitive form. "*Scent*," < Fr. "*sentir*," < Latin, "*sentire*," was erroneously thought to come from "*scire*" instead of "*sentire*."

(2) *However, if a purely arbitrary phonetic system were adopted*, it probably would spoil the life history of many of our words, especially those derived from non-Teutonic languages. "*Sugar*" would look odd as "*shugr*," and would seem to have no connection with the French "*sucre*." "*City*" might be spelt "*sity*," but its connection with the Latin "*civis*" would be less apparent.

(3) *Much could be done to reform the spelling of words* such as

(*a*) "*Live*," where elision of the mute *ĕ* would not obscure its connection with the Old English "*libban*."

(*b*) Past participles, such as "*pushed*," "*rushed*, "*cooked*," where the final *-ed* is pronounced as ***-t***, which could be advantageously substituted for it.

(*c*) "*Island*," where defective etymology has influenced the spelling. "*Island*" is really derived from the Old English "īg-*land*," where "*īg*" means "surrounded by water." The word has no historical connection with "*isle*," < Old French "*isle*" (now corrupted to "*île*") < Latin "*insula*." (N.B. < is used to indicate "derived from.")

Punctuation.

§ 37. During the course of our teaching experience we once had occasion to ask the meaning of punctuation. One boy's answer, if vague, was decidedly ingenious—"Please, sir, it is to make sense." No doubt the absence of punctuation would transform into nonsense much of what is intended to be a clear statement, but we maintain that matter should make sense apart from any punctuation marks. *Dr. Johnson* says: "Punctuation marks are fools' marks." While not fully endorsing the learned Doctor's assertion, we must say that the writer who makes undue use of stops strikes us as being very uncertain in the manipulation of his mother-tongue. As *Lord Kames* remarked, "Punctuation may remove an ambiguity, but will never produce that peculiar beauty which is perceived when the sense comes out clearly and distinctly by means of a happy arrangement." Punctuation is generally held to be the correct use of certain marks which indicate the relation of different parts of a sentence and thus make the meaning clearer.

§ 38. Ancient manuscripts were not punctuated, and about 364 B.C., a mark of separation was placed after each word. Our system dates from 1515, its originator being Manuzio, an Italian printer. In English the first stop used was the *period*, which was irregularly placed to indicate any break in the writing. Caxton used only an oblique line to denote the division of discourse.

§ 39. *When and how to punctuate.* It is not easy to lay down hard and fast rules for punctuation. Few people punctuate in exactly the same manner, and a careful study of standard authors will shew that where one uses a full stop another prefers a semicolon, while a third places more faith in a comma than a semicolon.* It is largely a matter of individuality. The fewer stops you employ the better, for it is poor English which requires a string of commas to make it intelligible. Let your principal stops be the full stop and comma, with a judicious use of the semicolon and of the other stops where they are absolutely necessary (*i.e.* you could not dispense with the note of interrogation in asking questions). Note the following

General Rules for Punctuation—

(1) Frame your sentences so as to require as few stops as possible.

(2) Do not use a semicolon when you can employ a full stop.

(3) Do not insert commas if you can make a sensible reading without them.

---

* See § 62 (3), (*b*).

(4) Be wary with respect to the colon and exclamation mark, and remember that many a dash and bracket is used when not absolutely necessary.

§ 40. *Full stop.* (1) This is the most important punctuation mark, its function being to indicate the close of a sentence. Remember that a sentence is supposed to be a complete thought expressed in words, and should be as short as possible compatible with clearness of meaning. It should not contain a superabundance either of words or of ideas, hence the more full stops and the fewer "complex" sentences you use the better.* Writing containing plenty of full stops is infinitely more forcible than when we have a string of "*ands*" and "*buts*" joining sentence to sentence in almost interminable monotony. The earlier 17th century prose writers are great sinners in this respect. Compare the cumbersome periods of *Milton's* prose with *Ruskin's* well-balanced (though frequently long) sentences. Both are pregnant with great thoughts, but the clumsy dress of the former tends to disguise true worth and frequently scares away the uninitiated would-be reader. (2) In connection with the full stop we may also say that *paragraphs* should not be too long. No hard and fast rule can be laid down, but dissimilar ideas or heads of subjects should not be given in the same paragraph. Notice the paragraphing of standard authors and base your own methods thereon.

§ 41. *The comma* marks a distinct pause in the sense. It is used

---

* *Note* that from a *grammatical* point of view there are three kinds of sentences—

(*a*) *Simple*, consisting of a single subject and predicate and making a complete assertion, as "the ant works."

(*b*) *Compound*, when two simple sentences (termed "co-ordinate clauses") are joined by a conjunction, as "the ant labours and the drone plays."

(*c*) *Complex*, consisting of a complete simple sentence joined to one or more auxiliary (or "subordinate") sentences which perform the functions of a noun, adjective or adverb, but which, taken apart from the principal sentence, do not give a complete meaning, *e.g.*

(1) Our captain fears that we shall lose the match. (*Noun.*)

(2) This man despises the rival who is younger than himself. (*Adjectival.*)

(3) His best qualities manifest themselves when he is defeated. (*Adverbial.*)

[See p. 27 for *rhetorical* classification of sentences.]

(1) To separate two short co-ordinate clauses, and to separate subordinate clauses from the principal sentence or from each other, *e.g.*

> "Though fond of many acquaintances, I desire an intimacy only with a few." (GOLDSMITH.)
>
> "We take a sight at a condition in life, and say we have studied it." (STEVENSON.)
>
> "What is the secret mesmerism which friendship possesses, and under the operation of which a person ordinarily sluggish, or cold, or timid, becomes wise, active and resolute in another's behalf?" (THACKERAY.)
>
> "All men may enjoy, though few can achieve." (RUSKIN.)

(2) When the same parts of speech are repeated—

> "Sleep on, thou fair child, for thy long, rough journey is at hand." (CARLYLE.)
>
> "Anything that is brutal, cruel, heathenish, that makes life hopeless for the most of mankind . . . . if received, ought to produce insanity in every well-regulated mind."
> (O. W. HOLMES.)

(3) In an enumeration after pairs of words joined by a conjunction.

> "Whether a whig or tory, a lap-dog or a gallant, an opera or a puppet show be the object of it, the passion while it reigns engrosses the whole woman." (ADDISON.)
>
> "Harry the king, Bedford and Exeter,
> Warwick and Talbot, Salisbury and Gloucester."
> (SHAKSPEARE: "Henry V.")

(4) After the nom. of address, or between nouns or pronouns in apposition, *e.g.*

> "Ruskin, the crystal-penned prose poet."
>
> "Kitchener, a man of many parts, soldier, diplomat, administrator, and peace-maker."
>
> "So work the honey-bees,
> Creatures that by a rule in Nature teach
> The art of order to a peopled Kingdom."
> (SHAKSPEARE: "Henry V.")

But no comma is required in

> "The river Thames," "The Hotel Cecil," "The mail-steamer 'City of London,'" etc.

(5) To introduce first person discourse or a quotation.

§ 42. *The semicolon* is stronger than the comma. It is mainly employed to separate long co-ordinate clauses from shorter ones, *e.g.*

> "His college is still proud of his name; his portrait still hangs in the hall; and strangers are still told that his favourite walk was under the elms which fringe the meadow on the banks of the Cherwell." (MACAULAY on "Addison.")
>
> "It was that memorable day in the first summer of the late war, when our navy engaged the Dutch; a day wherein the two most mighty and best appointed fleets which any age had ever seen, disputed the command of the greater half of the globe." (DRYDEN.)
>
> "All nature is but art unknown to thee;
> All chance, direction, which thou cans't not see;
> All discord, harmony—not understood." (POPE.)
>
> "To err is human; to forgive, divine."
>
> "Straws float upon the surface; but pearls lie at the bottom."

Many writers use the semicolon to separate principal sentences when a full-stop would be preferable. It is also frequently seen where a comma would appear more natural.

§ 43. *Other punctuation marks.*

(1) *The colon* introduces some remark explanatory of, or intimately connected with a preceding one, *e.g.*

> "Many are called: few are chosen."
>
> "O haughty and tyrannous man: injustice breeds injustice; curses and falsehoods do verily return always home, wide as they may wander." (CARLYLE.)
>
> "The silence was more profound than that of midnight: and to me the silence of a summer morning is more touching than all other silence." (DE QUINCEY.)
>
> "Know then this truth (enough for man to know):
> Virtue alone is happiness below." (POPE.)
>
> Note the election yell, "Vote for peace at any price: sail in with the flowing tide," and the inimitable reply, "No! vote for peace with honour: dam the flowing tide."

(2) *Inverted commas* indicate quotations or first person discourse, *e.g.*

> "Rash man!" said the tribune with great solemnity, "scoff not at the visions which heaven makes a parable to the chosen." (LYTTON: "Rienzi.")

> "I pity the man who can travel from Dan to Beersheba, and cry, "'Tis all barren.'" (STERNE.)

(3) *The exclamation mark* expresses some emotion, chiefly command or surprise, *e.g.*

> "And I awoke in struggles, and cried aloud 'I will sleep no more!'" (DE QUINCEY.)
>
> "Happy age! meal of ease and mirth; when wine and night lit the lamp of wit!" (LYTTON.)
>
> "Et tu, Brute!"
>
> "England, with all thy faults, I love thee still, my country!" (COWPER.)

It is probably the most abused stop, especially when used by gushing girls or penny novelists.

(4) *Brackets* indicate parenthetical statements and side speeches, *e.g.*

> "Instead of the fictitious, half-believed personages of the stage (the phantoms of old comedy), we recognize ourselves." (LAMB.)

(5) *The dash* is used

(*a*) To mark a break in a sentence.

> "All was gold of antique date and of great variety—French, Spanish, and German money." (POE.)

(*b*) In 1st person narrative to indicate hesitation, or unwillingness to proceed, *e.g.*

> "I—I am afraid I cannot help you; 'tis I who require *your* aid."
>
> "Can you give me news of—of Irene?"

(6) *The double dash* has a use similar to that of *brackets*, *e.g.*

> "It was a noble sport—a sight such as could only be seen in England—some hundreds of young men subjecting themselves voluntarily to that intense exertion for the mere pleasure of toil." (KINGSLEY.)
>
> "For nothing in the shape of a man—no, not even a milkman—was suffered without special licence to pass that gate." (DICKENS.)

(7) *A note of interrogation* is used in asking questions, *e.g.*

> "How should a man know this story if he had not read it?" (FIELDING.)
>
> "I suppose, sir, you are his apothecary?" (SWIFT.)

(8) *The apostrophe* is employed

(*a*) To indicate the possessive case, as

"The people's cause." "Man's span of life."

(*b*) To denote the omission of a letter or letters (especially in poetry), *e.g.*

"'Tis well." "T'other" = "The other."
"Don't hesitate." "You'll succeed."
"Up Guards and at 'em."

(9) *The hyphen* joins the components of a compound word, *e.g.*

"Clean-shaven," "sea-bird," "would-be."

Carlyle is very fond of this mark in his somewhat uncouth compounds, *e.g.* "quick-whirling," "down-rushing," etc. As regards imitating Carlyle in this or any other form of punctuation, take Mr. Punch's advice to those about to marry—and don't.

(10) *The diæresis* shews that two consecutive vowels must be sounded separately, or a final vowel sounded, *e.g.* "Noël," "aërated," "Brontë."
Foreign words do not require it, as "sesame," "extempore," "simile."

(11) *The cedilla* denotes a soft *c*. *C* before *a* is hard, and in "façade" it is necessary to mark the irregularity of pronunciation.

(12) *The asterisk* (*) calls attention to a footnote.

§ 44. *Capitalisation* is very important, and like punctuation is largely a matter of common-sense.

Note that capital letters should be used

(*a*) After a full-stop to commence a fresh sentence, and for the first word in a quotation.

(*b*) In the case of proper names, including titles of books, plays, etc.

(*c*) For metaphorical references to abstract subjects, *e.g.* in personifications of "Truth," "Justice," etc.

§ 45. *Note.*

(1) We have given only the more important general uses of each stop. In the case of the comma or semicolon it

would be possible to tabulate many more pedantic uses which might be found once in fifty pages of standard English. If the learner will bear in mind what we said previously about punctuation being largely a matter of individuality and common-sense, he will experience no difficulty. Most of the illustrative examples have been taken from standard authors, not that these are great authorities upon punctuation, but because we believe such striking sentences as those culled from Carlyle, Pope, etc., will make more impression than patchwork examples.

(2) In your reading, ask yourself why each stop is used, and try to note where the punctuation can be improved. Even standard authors are great sinners in the matter of faulty punctuation, and modern ones by no means the least so.

§ 46. *Punctuation exercises.*

(1) Have dictation from any standard author, and then insert stops without help. It does not follow that you are wrong if you do not agree with the original in every particular.

(2) Below are printed several lengthy extracts from standard authors (*a*) without punctuation, capitals, etc., (*b*) as they appear in the original work. Copy out the first, carefully punctuating as you proceed, and then compare with the second rendering.

EXERCISES (A).

(These extracts will serve the double purpose of exercises in punctuation and in composition. To work through them upon the lines indicated in § 46 (2) will strengthen anyone's command over language and his ability to mould words into sentences.)

I.

history is the action and reaction of these two—nature and thought two boys pushing each other on the curbstone of the pavement everything is pusher or pushed and matter and mind are in perpetual tilt and balance so whilst the man is weak the earth takes up to him he plants his brain and affections by-and-by he will take up the earth and have his gardens and vineyards in the beautiful order and productiveness of his thought every solid in the universe is ready to become fluid on the approach of the mind and the power to flux it is the measure of the mind if the wall remain adamant it accuses the want of thought to a subtler force it will stream into new forms expressive of the character of the mind what is the city in which we sit here but an aggregate of incongruous materials which have obeyed the will of some man the granite was reluctant but his hands were stronger and it came iron was deep in the ground and well combined with stone but could not hide from his fires wood lime stuffs fruits gums were dispersed over the earth and sea in vain here they are within reach of every mans day labour what he wants of them the whole world is the flux of matter over the wires of thought to the poles or points where it would build the races of men rise out of the ground preoccupied with a thought which rules them and divided into parties ready armed and angry to fight for this metaphysical abstraction the quality of the thought differences the egyptian and the roman the austrian and the american the men who come on the stage at one period are all found to be related to each other certain ideas are in the air we are all impressionable for we are made of them all impressionable but some more than others and these first express them this explains the curious contemporaneousness of inventions and discoveries the truth is in the air and the most impressionable brain will announce it first but all will announce it a few minutes later so women as most susceptible are the best index of the coming hour so the great man that is the man most imbued with the spirit of the time is the impressionable man of a fibre irritable and delicate like iodine to light he feels the infinitesimal attractions his mind is righter than others because he yields to a current so feeble as can be felt only by a needle delicately poised

(*Emerson:* Essay on "Fate," from the "Conduct of Life.")

II.

what are the eternal objects of poetry among all nations and at all times they are actions human actions possessing an inherent interest in themselves and which are to be communicated in an interesting manner by the art of the poet vainly will the latter imagine that he has everything in his own power that he can make an intrinsically inferior action equally delightful with a more excellent one by his treatment of it he may indeed compel us to admire his skill but his work will possess within itself an incurable defect

the poet then has in the first place to select an excellent action and what actions are the most excellent those certainly which most powerfully appeal to the great primary human affections to those elementary feelings which subsist permanently in the race and which are independent of time these feelings are permanent and the same that which interests them is permanent and the same also the modernness or antiquity of an action therefore has nothing to do with its fitness for poetical representation this depends upon its inherent qualities to the elementary part of our nature to our passions that which is great and passionate is eternally interesting and interesting solely in proportion to its greatness and to its passion a great human action of a thousand years ago is more interesting to it than a smaller human action of today even though upon the representation of this last the most consummate skill may have been expended and though it has the advantage of appealing by its modern language familiar manners and contemporary allusions to all our transient feelings and interests these however have no right to demand of a poetical work that it shall satisfy them their claims are to be directed elsewhere poetical works belong to the domain of our permanent passions let them interest these and the voice of all subordinate claims upon them is at once silenced

(*Matthew Arnold:* Preface to First Edition of his collected poems.)

III.

it was a day belonging to a brief and pathetic season of farewell summer resurrection which under one name or another is known almost everywhere in north america it is called the indian summer in north germany and midland germany it is called the old wives summer and more rarely the girls summer it is that last brief resurrection of summer in its most brilliant memorials a resurrection that has no root in the past nor steady hold upon the future like the lambent and fitful gleams from an expiring lamp mimicking what is called the lightning before death in sick patients when close upon their end there is the feeling of a conflict that has been going on between the lingering powers of summer and the strengthening powers of winter not unlike that which moves by antagonist forces in some deadly inflammation hurrying forwards through fierce struggles into the final repose of mortification for a time the equilibrium has been maintained between the hostile forces but at last the antagonism is overthrown the victory is accomplished for the powers that fight on the side of death simultaneously with the conflict the pain of conflict has departed and thenceforward the gentle process of collapsing life no longer fretted by counter movements slips away with holy peace into the noiseless deeps of the infinite so sweet so ghostly in its soft golden smiles silent as a dream and quiet as the dying trance of a saint faded through all its stages this departing day along the whole length of which i bade farewell for many a year to wales and farewell to summer

(*De Quincey:* "Confessions of an English Opium-eater.")

IV.

the high court of parliament was to sit according to forms handed down from the days of the plantagenets on an englishman accused of exercising tyranny over the lord of the holy city of benares and over the ladies of the princely house of oude

the place was worthy of such a trial it was the great hall of william rufus the hall which had resounded with acclamations at the inauguration of thirty kings the hall which had witnessed the just sentence of bacon and the just absolution of somers the hall where the eloquence of strafford had for a moment awed and melted a victorious party inflamed with just resentment the hall where charles had confronted the high court of justice with the placid courage which has half redeemed his fame neither military nor civil pomp was wanting the avenues were lined with grenadiers the streets were kept clear by cavalry the peers robed in gold and ermine were marshalled by the heralds under garter king at arms the judges in their vestments of state attended to give advice on points of law near a hundred and seventy lords three fourths of the upper house as the upper house then was walked in solemn order from their usual place of assembling to the tribunal the junior baron present led the way george eliott lord heathfield recently ennobled for his memorable defence of gibraltar against the fleets and armies of france and spain the long procession was closed by the duke of norfolk earl marshal of the realm by the great dignitaries and by the brothers and sons of the king last of all came the prince of wales conspicuous by his fine person and noble bearing the grey old walls were hung with scarlet the long galleries were crowded by an audience such as has rarely excited the fears or the emulation of an orator there were gathered together from all parts of a great free enlightened and prosperous empire grace and female loveliness wit and learning the representatives of every science and of every art there were seated round the queen the fair haired young daughters of the house of brunswick there the ambassadors of great kings and commonwealths gazed with admiration on a spectacle which no other country in the world could present there siddons in the prime of her majestic beauty looked with emotion on a scene surpassing all the imitations of the stage there the historian of the roman empire thought of the days when cicero pleaded the cause of sicily against verres and when before a senate which still retained some show of freedom tacitus thundered against the oppressor of africa there were seen side by side the greatest painter and the greatest scholar of the age the spectacle had allured reynolds from that easel which has preserved to us the thoughtful foreheads of so many writers and statesmen and the sweet smiles of so many noble matrons it had induced parr to suspend his labours in that dark and profound mind from which he had extracted a vast treasure of erudition a treasure too often buried in the earth too often paraded with injudicious and inelegant ostentation but still precious massive and splendid there appeared the voluptuous charms of her to whom the heir of the throne had in secret plighted his faith there too was she the beautiful mother of a beautiful race the saint cecilia whose delicate features lighted up by love and music art has rescued from the common decay there were the members of that brilliant society which quoted criticised and exchanged repartees under the rich peacock hangings of mrs montague and there the ladies whose lips more persuasive than those of fox himself had carried the westminster election against palace and treasury shone round georgiana duchess of devonshire

the sergeants made proclamation hastings advanced to the bar and bent his knee the culprit was indeed not unworthy of that great presence he had ruled an extensive and populous country and made laws and treaties had sent forth armies had set up and pulled down princes and in his high place he had so borne himself that all had feared him that most had loved him and that hatred itself could deny him no title to glory except virtue he looked like a great man and not like a bad man a person small and emaciated yet deriving dignity from a carriage which while it indicated deference to the court indicated also habitual self possession and self respect a high and intellectual forehead a brow pensive but not gloomy a mouth of inflexible decision a face pale and worn but serene on which was written as legibly as under the picture in the council chamber at calcutta, *mens æqua in arduis* such was the aspect with which the great proconsul presented himself to his judges

(*Macaulay:* "Essay on Warren Hastings")

V.

we live in and form part of a system of things of immense diversity and perplexity which we call nature and it is a matter of the deepest interest to all of us that we should form just conceptions of the constitution of that system and of its past history with relation to this universe man is in extent little more than a mathematical point in duration but a fleeting shadow he is a mere reed shaken in the winds of force but as pascal long ago remarked although a mere reed he is a thinking reed and in virtue of that wonderful capacity of thought he has the power of framing for himself a symbolic conception of the universe which although doubtless highly imperfect and inadequate as a picture of the great whole is yet sufficient to serve him as a chart for the guidance of his practical affairs it has taken long ages of toilsome and often fruitless labour to enable man to look steadily at the shifting scenes of the phantasmagoria of nature to notice what is fixed among her fluctuations and what is regular among her apparent irregularities and it is only comparatively lately within the last few centuries that the conception of a universal order and of a definite course of things which we term the course of nature has emerged

but once originated the conception of the constancy of the order of nature has become the dominant idea of modern thought to any person who is familiar with the facts upon which that conception is based and is competent to estimate their significance it has ceased to be conceivable that chance should have any place in the universe or that events should depend upon any but the natural sequence of cause and effect we have come to look upon the present as the child of the past and as the parent of the future and as we have excluded chance from a place in the universe so we ignore even as a possibility the notion of any interference with the order of nature whatever may be mens speculative doctrines it is quite certain that every intelligent person guides his life and risks his fortune upon the belief that the order of nature is constant and that the chain of natural causation is never broken

in fact no belief which we entertain has so complete a logical basis as that to which i have just referred it tacitly underlies every process of reasoning it is the foundation of every act of the will it is based upon the broadest induction and it is verified by the most constant regular and universal of deductive processes but we must recollect that any human belief however broad its basis however defensible it may seem is after all only a probable belief and that our widest and safest generalisations are simply statements of the highest degree of probability though we are quite clear about the constancy of the order of nature at the present time and in the present state of things it by no means necessarily follows that we are justified in expanding this generalisation into the infinite past and in denying absolutely that there may have been a time when nature did not follow a fixed order when the relations of cause and effect were not definite and when extra natural agencies interfered with the general course of nature cautious men will allow that a universe so different from that which we know may have existed just as a very candid thinker may admit that a world in which two and two do not make four and in which two straight lines do inclose a space may exist but the same caution which forces the admission of such possibilities demands a great deal of evidence before it recognises them to be anything more substantial and when it is asserted that so many thousand years ago events occurred in a manner utterly foreign to and inconsistent with the existing laws of nature men who without being particularly cautious are simply honest thinkers unwilling to deceive themselves or delude others ask for trustworthy evidence of the fact

did things so happen or did they not this is a historical question and one the answer to which must be sought in the same way as the solution of any other historical problem (*Huxley:* "Lectures on Evolution.")

VI.

how useless and even pitiful is the continued complaint of moralists and divines to whom none lend an ear whilst they endeavour age after age to check youth and pleasure and turn the current of life and nature backward on its course for how many ages in this old rome as in every other city since terence gossiped of the city life has this frail faulty humanity for a few hours sunned itself on warm afternoons in sheltered walks and streets and comforted itself into life and pleasure amid all its cares and toils and sins out of this shifting phantasmagoria comes the sound of music always pathetic and sometimes gay amid the roofs and belfries peers the foliage of the public walks the stage upon which in every city life may be studied and taken to heart not far from these walks is in every city the mimic stage the glass in which in every age and climate human life has seen itself reflected and has delighted beyond all other pleasures in pitying its own sorrows in learning its own story in watching its own fantastic developments in foreshadowing its own fate in smiling sadly for an hour over the still more fleeting representation of its own fleeting joys

for ever without any change the stream flows on spite of moralist and divine the same as when phaedria and thais loved each other in old rome we look back on these countless ages of city life cooped in narrow streets and alleys and paved walks breathing itself in fountained courts and shaded arcades where youth and manhood and old age have sought their daily sustenance not only of bread but of happiness and have with difficulty and toil enough found the one and caught fleeting glimpses of the other between the dark thunder clouds and under the weird wintry sky of many a life within such a little space how much life is crowded what high hopes how much pain from those high windows behind the flower pots young girls have looked out upon life which their instinct told them was made for pleasure but which year after year convinced them was somehow or other given over to pain how can we read this endless story of humanity with any thought of blame how can we watch this restless quivering human life this ceaseless effort of a finite creature to attain to those things which are agreeable to its created nature alike in all countries under all climates and skies and whatever change of garb or semblance the long course of years may bring with any other thought than that of tolerance and pity tolerance of every sort of city existence pity for every kind of toil and evil year after year repeated in every one of earths cities full of human life and handicraft and thought and love and pleasure as in the streets of that old jerusalem over which the saviour wept

(*J. H. Shorthouse:* "John Inglesant," chap. xxv.)

VII.

observe the accommodation of the most common artificer or day labourer in a civilised and thriving country and you will perceive that the number of people of whose industry a part though but a small part has been employed in procuring him this accommodation exceeds all computation the woollen coat for example which covers the day labourer as coarse and rough as it may appear is the produce of the joint labour of a great multitude of workmen the shepherd the sorter of the wool the woolcomber or carder the dyer the scribbler the spinner the weaver the fuller the dresser with many others must all join their different arts in order to complete even this homely production how many merchants and carriers besides must have been employed in transporting the materials from some of those workmen to others who often live in a very distant part of the country how much commerce and navigation in particular how many shipbuilders sailors sailmakers ropemakers must have been employed in order to bring together the different drugs made use of by the dyer which often come from the remotest corners of the world what a variety of labour too is necessary in order to produce the tools of the meanest of those workmen to say nothing of such complicated machines as the ship of the sailor the mill of the fuller or even the loom of the weaver let us consider only what a variety of labour is requisite in order to form that very simple machine the shears with which the shepherd clips the wool the miner the builder of the furnace for smelting the ore the feller of the timber the burner of the charcoal to be made use of in the smelting house the brickmaker the bricklayer the workmen who attend the furnace the millwright the forger the smith must all of them join their different arts to produce them were we to examine in the same manner all the different parts of his dress and household furniture the coarse linen shirt which he wears next to his skin the shoes which cover his feet the bed which he lies on and all the different parts which compose it the kitchen grate at which he prepares his victuals the coals which he makes use of for that purpose dug from the bowels of the earth and brought to him perhaps by a long sea and a long land carriage all the other utensils of his kitchen all the furniture of his table the knives and forks the earthen or pewter plates upon which he serves up and divides his victuals the different hands employed in preparing his bread and his beer the glass window which lets in the heat and the light and keeps out the wind and the rain with all the knowledge and art requisite for preparing that beautiful and happy invention without which these northern parts of the world could scarce have afforded a very comfortable habitation together with the tools of all the different workmen employed in producing those different conveniences if we examine I say all these things and consider what a variety of labour is employed about each of them we shall be sensible that without the assistance and co-operation of many thousands the very meanest person in a civilised country could not be provided even according to what we very falsely imagine the easy and simple manner in which he is commonly accommodated compared indeed with the more extravagant luxury of the great his accommodation must no doubt appear extremely simple and easy and yet it may be true perhaps that the accommodation of an european prince does not always so much exceed that of an industrious and frugal peasant as the accommodation of the latter exceeds that of many an african king the absolute master of the lives and liberties of ten thousand naked savages

(*Adam Smith:* "Wealth of Nations.")

VIII.

life is indeed a strange gift and its privileges are most mysterious no wonder when it is first granted to us that our gratitude our admiration and our delight should prevent us from reflecting on our own nothingness or from thinking it will ever be recalled our first and strongest impressions are borrowed from the mighty scene that is opened to us and we unconsciously transfer its durability as well as its splendour to ourselves . . . to see the golden sun the azure sky the outstretched ocean to walk upon the green earth and be lord of a thousand creatures to look down yawning precipices or over distant sunny vales to see the world spread out under ones feet on a map to bring the stars near to view the smallest insects through a microscope to read history and consider the revolutions of empire and the successions of generations to hear of the glory of tyre of sidon of babylon and of susa and to say all these were before me and are now nothing to say i exist in such a point of time and in such a point of space to be a spectator and a part of its ever moving scene to witness the change of season of spring and autumn of winter and summer to feel hot and cold pleasure and pain beauty and deformity right and wrong to be sensible to the accidents of nature to consider the mighty world of eye and ear to listen to the stockdoves notes amid the forest deep to journey over moor and mountain to hear the midnight sainted choir to visit lighted halls or the cathedrals gloom or sit in crowded theatres and see life itself mocked to study the works of art and refine the sense of beauty to agony to worship fame and to dream of immortality to look upon the vatican and to read shakspeare to gather up the wisdom of the ancients and to pry into the future to listen to the trump of war the shout of victory to question history as to the movements of the human heart to seek for truth to plead the cause of humanity to overlook the world as if time and nature poured their treasures at our feet to be and to do all this and then in a moment to be nothing to have it all snatched from us as by a jugglers trick or a phantasmagoria

(*Hazlitt:* "Essays.")

IX.

i think the noblest sea that turner has ever painted and if so the noblest certainly ever painted by man is that of the slave ship the chief academy picture of the exhibition of 1840 it is a sunset on the atlantic after a prolonged storm but the storm is partially lulled and the torn and streaming rain clouds are moving in scarlet lines to lose themselves in the hollow of the night the whole surface of sea included in the picture is divided into two ridges of enormous swell not high nor local but a low broad heaving of the whole ocean like the lifting of its bosom by deep drawn breath after the torture of the storm between these two ridges the fire of the sunset falls along the trough of the sea dyeing it with an awful but glorious light the intense and lurid splendour which burns like gold and bathes like blood along this fiery path and valley the tossing waves by which the swell of the sea is restlessly divided lift themselves in dark indefinite fantastic forms each casting a faint and ghastly shadow behind it along the illumined foam they do not rise everywhere but three or four together in wild groups fitfully and furiously as the understrength of the swell compels or permits them leaving between them treacherous spaces of level and whirling water now lighted with green and lamp like fire now flashing back the gold of the declining sun now fearfully dyed from above with the undistinguishable images of the burning clouds which fall upon them in flakes of crimson and scarlet and give to the reckless waves the added motion of their own fiery flying purple and blue the lurid shadows of the hollow breakers are cast upon the mist of night which gathers cold and low advancing like the shadow of death upon the guilty ship as it labours amidst the lightning of the sea its thin masts written upon the sky in lines of blood girded with condemnation in that fearful hue which signs the sky with horror and mixes its flaming flood with the sunlight and cast far along the desolate heave of the sepulchral waves incarnadines the multitudinous sea

i believe if i were reduced to rest turners immortality upon any single work i should choose this its daring conception ideal in the highest sense of the word is based on the purest truth and wrought out with the concentrated knowledge of a life its colour is absolutely perfect not one false or morbid hue in any part or line and so modulated that every square inch of canvas is a perfect composition its drawing as accurate as fearless the ship buoyant bending and full of motion its tones as true as they are wonderful and the whole picture dedicated to the most sublime of subjects and impressions completing thus the perfect system of all truth which we have shown to be formed by turners works the power majesty and deathfulness of the open deep illimitable sea

(*Ruskin:* "Modern Painters.")

X.

with the emigration union or dissolution of the wandering tribes the loose and indefinite picture of the scythian desert has continually shifted but the most ancient map of russia affords some places which still retain their name and position and the two capitals novgorod and kiow are coeval with the first age of the monarchy novgorod had not yet deserved the epithet of great nor the alliance of the hanseatic league which diffused the streams of opulence and the principles of freedom kiow could not yet boast of three hundred churches an innumerable people and a degree of greatness and splendour which was compared with constantinople by those who had never seen the residence of the cæsars in their origin the two cities were no more than camps or fairs the most convenient stations in which the barbarians might assemble for the occasional business of war or trade yet even these assemblies announce some progress in the arts of society a new breed of cattle was imported from the southern provinces and the spirit of commercial enterprise pervaded the sea and land from the baltic to the euxine from the mouth of the oder to the port of constantinople in the days of idolatry and barbarism the sclavonic city of julin was frequented and enriched by the normans who had prudently secured a free mart of purchase and exchange from this harbour at the entrance of the oder the corsair or merchant sailed in forty three days to the eastern shores of the baltic the most distant nations were intermingled and the holy groves of curland are said to have been decorated with grecian and spanish gold between the sea and novgorod an easy intercourse was discovered in the summer through a gulf a lake and a navigable river in the winter season over the hard and level surface of boundless snows from the neighbourhood of that city the russians descended the streams that fall into the borysthenes their canoes of a single tree were laden with slaves of every age furs of every species the spoil of their beehives and the hides of their cattle and the whole produce of the north was collected and discharged in the magazines of kiow the month of june was the ordinary season of the departure of the fleet the timber of the canoes was framed into the oars and benches of more solid and capacious boats and they proceeded without obstacle down the borysthenes as far as the seven or thirteen ridges of rocks which traverse the bed and precipitate the waters of the river at the more shallow falls it was sufficient to lighten the vessels but the deeper cataracts were impassable and the mariners who dragged their vessels and their slaves six miles over land were exposed in this toilsome journey to the robbers of the desert at the first island below the falls the russians celebrated the festival of their escape at a second near the mouth of the river they repaired their shattered vessels for the longer and more perilous voyage of the black sea if they steered along the coast the danube was accessible with a fair wind they could reach in thirty six or forty hours the opposite shores of anatolia and constantinople admitted the annual visit of the strangers of the north they returned at the stated season with a rich cargo of corn wine and oil the manufactures of greece and the spices of india some of their countrymen resided in the capital and provinces and the national treaties protected the persons effects and privileges of the russian merchant

(*Gibbon:* " Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire.")

EXERCISES (B).

(The above extracts punctuated, etc. They may also be used for Dictation Exercises, or as additional tests in Paraphrasing after working those on p. 128, *et seq. Being typical specimens from standard authors they may be advantageously referred to after reading* § *65.)*

I.

History is the action and reaction of these two—Nature and Thought; two boys pushing each other on the curb-stone of the pavement. Everything is pusher or pushed: and matter and mind are in perpetual tilt and balance, so. Whilst the man is weak, the earth takes up to him. He plants his brain and affections. By and by he will take up the earth, and have his gardens and vineyards in the beautiful order and productiveness of his thought. Every solid in the universe is ready to become fluid on the approach of the mind, and the power to flux it is the measure of the mind. If the wall remain adamant, it accuses the want of thought. To a subtler force, it will stream into new forms, expressive of the character of the mind. What is the city in which we sit here, but an aggregate of incongruous materials, which have obeyed the will of some man? The granite was reluctant, but his hands were stronger, and it came. Iron was deep in the ground, and well combined with stone, but could not hide from his fires. Wood, lime, stuffs, fruits, gums, were dispersed over the earth and sea, in vain. Here they are, within reach of every man's day-labour—what he wants of them. The whole world is the flux of matter over the wires of thought to the poles or points where it would build. The races of men rise out of the ground preoccupied with a thought which rules them, and divided into parties ready armed and angry to fight for this metaphysicial abstraction. The quality of the thought differences the

Egyptian and the Roman, the Austrian and the American. The men who come on the stage at one period are all found to be related to each other. Certain ideas are in the air. We are all impressionable, for we are made of them ; all impressionable, but some more than others, and these first express them. This explains the curious contemporaneousness of inventions and discoveries. The truth is in the air, and the most impressionable brain will announce it first, but all will announce it a few minutes later. So women, as most susceptible, are the best index of the coming hour. So the great man, that is, the man most imbued with the spirit of the time, is the impressionable man—of a fibre irritable and delicate, like iodine to light. He feels the infinitesimal attractions. His mind is righter than others, because he yields to a current so feeble as can be felt only by a needle delicately poised.

(*Emerson:* "Essay on Fate" from the "Conduct of Life.")

II.

What are the eternal objects of Poetry, among all nations, and at all times? They are actions ; human actions ; possessing an inherent interest in themselves, and which are to be communicated in an interesting manner by the art of the Poet. Vainly will the latter imagine that he has everything in his own power ; that he can make an intrinsically inferior action equally delightful with a more excellent one by his treatment of it : he may indeed compel us to admire his skill, but his work will possess, within itself, an incurable defect.

The Poet, then, has in the first place to select an excellent action ; and what actions are the most excellent ? Those, certainly, which most powerfully appeal to the great primary human affections : to those elementary feelings which subsist permanently in the race, and which are independent of time. These feelings are permanent and the same ; that which interests them is permanent and the same also. The modernness or antiquity of an action, therefore, has nothing to do with its fitness for poetical representation ; this depends upon its inherent qualities. To the elementary part of our nature, to our passions, that which is great and passionate is eternally interesting ; and interesting solely in proportion to its greatness and to its passion. A great human action of a thousand years ago is more interesting to it than a smaller human action of to-day, even though upon the representation of this last the most consummate skill may have been expended, and though it has the advantage of appealing by its modern language, familiar manners, and contemporary allusions, to all our transient feelings and interests. These, however, have no right to demand of a poetical work that it shall satisfy them ; their claims are to be directed elsewhere. Poetical works belong to the domain of our permanent passions : let them interest these, and the voice of all subordinate claims upon them is at once silenced.

(*Matthew Arnold:* Preface to First Edition of his collected poems.)

III.

It was a day belonging to a brief and pathetic season of farewell summer resurrection, which under one name or another is known almost everywhere. In North America it is called the "Indian Summer." In North

Germany and Midland Germany it is called the "Old Wives' Summer," and more rarely the "Girls' Summer." It is that last brief resurrection of summer in its most brilliant memorials, a resurrection that has no root in the past, nor steady hold upon the future, like the lambent and fitful gleams from an expiring lamp mimicking what is called the "lightning before death" in sick patients, when close upon their end. There is the feeling of a conflict that has been going on between the lingering powers of summer and the strengthening powers of winter, not unlike that which moves by antagonist forces in some deadly inflammation hurrying forwards through fierce struggles into the final repose of mortification. For a time the equilibrium has been maintained between the hostile forces; but at last the antagonism is overthrown; the victory is accomplished for the powers that fight on the side of death; simultaneously with the conflict the pain of conflict has departed: and thenceforward the gentle process of collapsing life, no longer fretted by counter-movements, slips away with holy peace into the noiseless deeps of the Infinite, so sweet, so ghostly, in its soft golden smiles, silent as a dream, and quiet as the dying trance of a saint, faded through all its stages this departing day, along the whole length of which I bade farewell for many a year to Wales and farewell to summer.

(*De Quincey:* "Confessions of an English Opium-eater.")

IV.

The High Court of Parliament was to sit, according to forms handed down from the days of the Plantagenets, on an Englishman accused of exercising tyranny over the lord of the holy city of Benares, and over the ladies of the princely house of Oude.

The place was worthy of such a trial. It was the great hall of William Rufus, the hall which had resounded with acclamations at the inauguration of thirty kings, the hall which had witnessed the just sentence of Bacon and the just absolution of Somers, the hall where the eloquence of Strafford had for a moment awed and melted a victorious party inflamed with just resentment, the hall where Charles had confronted the High Court of Justice with the placid courage which has half redeemed his fame. Neither military nor civil pomp was wanting. The avenues were lined with grenadiers. The streets were kept clear by cavalry. The peers, robed in gold and ermine, were marshalled by the heralds under Garter King-at-arms. The judges in their vestments of state attended to give advice on points of law. Near a hundred and seventy lords, three-fourths of the Upper House as the Upper House then was, walked in solemn order from their usual place of assembling to the tribunal. The junior baron present led the way, George Eliott, Lord Heathfield, recently ennobled for his memorable defence of Gibraltar against the fleets and armies of France and Spain. The long procession was closed by the Duke of Norfolk, Earl Marshal of the realm, by the great dignitaries, and by the brothers and sons of the King. Last of all came the Prince of Wales, conspicuous by his fine person and noble bearing. The grey old walls were hung with scarlet. The long galleries were crowded by an audience such as has rarely excited the fears or the emulation of an orator. There were gathered together, from all parts of a great, free, enlightened, and prosperous empire, grace and female loveliness, wit and learning, the representatives of every science and of every art. There were seated round the Queen the fair-haired young daughters of the house of Brunswick. There the Ambassadors of great Kings and Commonwealths gazed with admiration on a spectacle which no other country in the world could present. There Siddons, in the prime of her majestic beauty, looked with emotion on a scene surpassing all the imitations of the stage. There the historian of the Roman Empire thought of the days when Cicero pleaded the cause of Sicily against Verres, and when, before a senate which still retained some show of freedom, Tacitus thundered against the oppressor of Africa. There were seen, side by side, the greatest painter and the greatest scholar of the age. The spectacle had allured Reynolds from that easel which has preserved to us the thoughtful foreheads of so many writers and statesmen, and the sweet smiles of so many noble matrons. It had induced Parr to suspend his labours in that dark and profound mind from which he had extracted a vast treasure of erudition, a treasure too often buried in the earth, too often paraded with injudicious and inelegant ostentation, but still precious, massive, and splendid. There appeared the voluptuous charms of her to whom the heir of the throne had in secret plighted his faith. There too was she, the beautiful mother of a beautiful race, the Saint Cecilia whose delicate features, lighted up by love and music, art has rescued from the common decay. There were the members of that brilliant society which quoted, criticised, and exchanged repartees, under the rich peacock-hangings of Mrs. Montague. And there the ladies whose lips, more persuasive than those of Fox himself, had carried the Westminster election against palace and treasury, shone round Georgiana Duchess of Devonshire.

The Sergeants made proclamation. Hastings advanced to the bar, and bent his knee. The culprit was indeed not unworthy of that great presence. He had ruled an extensive and populous country, and made laws and treaties, had sent forth armies, had set up and pulled down princes. And in his high place he had so borne himself, that all had feared him, that most had loved him, and that hatred itself could deny him no title to glory, except virtue. He looked like a great man, and not like a bad man. A person small and emaciated, yet deriving dignity from a carriage which, while it indicated deference to the court, indicated also habitual self-possession and self-respect, a high and intellectual forehead, a brow pensive, but not gloomy, a mouth of inflexible decision, a face pale and worn, but serene, on which was written, as legibly as under the picture in the council-chamber at Calcutta, *Mens æqua in arduis;* such was the aspect with which the great proconsul presented himself to his judges.

(*Macaulay:* "Essay on Warren Hastings.")

V.

We live in and form part of a system of things of immense diversity and perplexity, which we call Nature; and it is a matter of the deepest interest to all of us that we should form just conceptions of the constitution of that system and of its past history. With relation to this universe, man is, in extent, little more than a mathematical point; in duration but a fleeting shadow; he is a mere reed shaken in the winds of force. But as Pascal long ago remarked, although a mere reed, he is a thinking reed; and in virtue of that wonderful capacity of thought, he has the power of framing for himself a symbolic conception of the universe, which, although doubtless highly imperfect and inadequate as a picture of the great whole, is yet sufficient to serve him as a chart for the guidance of his practical affairs. It has taken long ages of toilsome and often fruitless labour to enable man to look steadily at the shifting scenes of the phantasmagoria of Nature, to notice what is fixed among her fluctuations, and what is regular among her apparent irregularities; and it is only comparatively lately, within the last few centuries, that the conception of a universal order and of a definite course of things, which we term the course of Nature, has emerged.

But, once originated, the conception of the constancy of the order of Nature has become the dominant idea of modern thought. To any person who is familiar with the facts upon which that conception is based, and is competent to estimate their significance, it has ceased to be conceivable that chance should have any place in the universe, or that events should depend upon any but the natural sequence of cause and effect. We have come to look upon the present as the child of the past and as the parent of the future; and, as we have excluded chance from a place in the universe, so we ignore, even as a possibility, the notion of any interference with the order of Nature. Whatever may be men's speculative doctrines, it is quite certain that every intelligent person guides his life and risks his fortune upon the belief that the order of Nature is constant, and that the chain of natural causation is never broken.

In fact, no belief which we entertain has so complete a logical basis as that to which I have just referred. It tacitly underlies every process of reasoning; it is the foundation of every act of the will. It is based upon the broadest induction, and it is verified by the most constant, regular, and universal of deductive processes. But we must recollect that any human belief, however broad its basis, however defensible it may seem, is, after all, only a probable belief, and that our widest and safest generalisations are simply statements of the highest degree of probability. Though we are quite clear about the constancy of the order of Nature, at the present time, and in the present state of things, it by no means necessarily follows that we are justified in expanding this generalisation into the infinite past, and in denying, absolutely, that there may have been a time when Nature did not follow a fixed order, when the relations of cause and effect were not definite, and when extra natural agencies interfered with the general course of Nature. Cautious men will allow that a universe so different from that which we know may have existed; just as a very candid thinker may admit that a world in which two and two do not make four, and in which two straight lines do inclose a space, may exist. But the same caution which forces the admission of such possibilities demands a great deal of evidence before it recognises them to be anything more substantial. And when it is asserted that, so many thousand years ago, events occurred in a manner utterly foreign to and inconsistent with the existing laws of Nature, men who without being particularly cautious are simply honest thinkers, unwilling to deceive themselves or delude others, ask for trustworthy evidence of the fact.

Did things so happen or did they not? This is a historical question, and one the answer to which must be sought in the same way as the solution of any other historical problem. (*Huxley:* "Lectures on Evolution.")

VI.

How useless, and even pitiful, is the continued complaint of moralists and divines, to whom none lend an ear, whilst they endeavour, age after age, to check youth and pleasure, and turn the current of life and nature backward on its course. For how many ages in this old Rome, as in every other city, since Terence gossiped of the city life, has this frail faulty humanity for a few hours sunned itself on warm afternoons in sheltered walks and streets, and comforted itself into life and pleasure, amid all its cares and toils and sins. Out of this shifting phantasmagoria comes the sound of music, always pathetic, and sometimes gay ; amid the roofs and belfries peers the foliage of the public walks, the stage upon which, in every city, life may be studied and taken to heart ; not far from these walks is, in every city, the mimic stage, the glass in which, in every age and climate, human life has seen itself reflected, and has delighted, beyond all other pleasures, in pitying its own sorrows, in learning its own story, in watching its own fantastic developments, in foreshadowing its own fate, in smiling sadly for an hour over the still more fleeting representation of its own fleeting joys.

For ever, without any change, the stream flows on, spite of moralist and divine, the same as when Phaedria and Thais loved each other in old Rome. We look back on these countless ages of city life, cooped in narrow streets and alleys and paved walks, breathing itself in fountained courts and shaded arcades, where youth and manhood and old age have sought their daily sustenance, not only of bread, but of happiness, and have with difficulty and toil enough found the one and caught fleeting glimpses of the other between the dark thunder clouds, and under the weird, wintry sky of many a life. Within such a little space how much life is crowded, what high hopes, how much pain ! From those high windows behind the flower-pots young girls have looked out upon life, which their instinct told them was made for pleasure, but which year after year convinced them was, somehow or other, given over to pain. How can we read this endless story of humanity with any thought of blame? How can we watch this restless, quivering human life, this ceaseless effort of a finite creature to attain to those things which are agreeable to its created nature, alike in all countries, under all climates and skies, and whatever change of garb or semblance the long course of years may bring, with any other thought than that of tolerance and pity—tolerance of every sort of city existence, pity for every kind of toil and evil, year after year repeated, in every one of earth's cities, full of human life and handicraft, and thought, and love, and pleasure, as in the streets of that old Jerusalem over which the Saviour wept?

(*J. H. Shorthouse:* "John Inglesant," chap. xxv.)

VII.

Observe the accommodation of the most common artificer or day-labourer in a civilised and thriving country, and you will perceive, that the number of people of whose industry a part, though but a small part, has been employed in procuring him this accommodation, exceeds all computation. The woollen coat, for example, which covers the day-labourer, as coarse and rough as it may appear, is the produce of the joint labour of a great multitude of workmen. The shepherd, the sorter of the wool, the woolcomber or carder, the dyer, the scribbler, the spinner, the weaver, the fuller, the dresser, with many others, must all join their different arts in order to complete even this homely production. How many merchants and carriers, besides, must have been employed in transporting the materials from some of those workmen to others, who often live in a very distant part of the country! How much commerce and navigation, in particular, how many shipbuilders, sailors, sailmakers, ropemakers, must have been employed in order to bring together the different drugs made use of by the dyer, which often come from the remotest corners of the world! What a variety of labour, too, is necessary in order to produce the tools of the meanest of those workmen! To say nothing of such complicated machines as the ship of the sailor, the mill of the fuller, or even the loom of the weaver, let us consider, only, what a variety of labour is requisite, in order to form that very simple machine the shears, with which the shepherd clips the wool. The miner, the builder of the furnace for smelting the ore, the feller of the timber, the burner of the charcoal, to be made use of in the smelting-house, the brickmaker, the bricklayer, the workmen who attend the furnace, the millwright, the forger, the smith, must all of them join their different arts to produce them. Were we to examine, in the same manner, all the different parts of his dress and household furniture, the coarse linen shirt which he wears next his skin, the shoes which cover his feet, the bed which he lies on, and all the different parts which compose it, the kitchen-grate at which he prepares his victuals, the coals which he makes use of for that purpose, dug from the bowels of the earth, and brought to him perhaps by a long sea and a long land carriage, all the other utensils of his kitchen, all the furniture of his table, the knives and forks, the earthen or pewter plates upon which he serves up and divides his victuals, the different hands employed in preparing his bread and his beer, the glass window which lets in the heat and the light and keeps out the wind and the rain, with all the knowledge and art requisite for preparing that beautiful and happy invention without which these northern parts of the world could scarce have afforded a very comfortable habitation, together with the tools of all the different workmen employed in producing those different conveniences; if we examine, I say, all these things, and consider what a variety of labour is employed about each of them, we shall be sensible that, without the assistance and co-operation of many thousands, the very meanest person in a civilised country could not be provided, even according to, what we very falsely imagine, the easy and simple manner in which he is commonly accommodated. Compared, indeed, with the more extravagant luxury of the great, his accommodation must no doubt appear extremely simple and easy; and yet it may be true, perhaps, that the accommodation of an European prince does not always so much exceed that of an industrious and frugal peasant as the accommodation of the latter exceeds that of many an African king, the absolute master of the lives and liberties of ten thousand naked savages.

(*Adam Smith:* "Wealth of Nations.")

VIII.

Life is indeed a strange gift, and its privileges are most mysterious. No wonder when it is first granted to us, that our gratitude, our admiration, and our delight should prevent us from reflecting on our own nothingness, or from thinking it will ever be recalled. Our first and strongest impressions are borrowed from the mighty scene that is opened to us, and we unconsciously transfer its durability as well as its splendour to ourselves. . . . To see the golden sun, the azure sky, the outstretched ocean ; to walk upon the green earth, and be lord of a thousand creatures ; to look down yawning precipices or over distant sunny vales ; to see the world spread out under one's feet on a map ; to bring the stars near ; to view the smallest insects through a microscope ; to read history, and consider the revolutions of empire and the successions of generations ; to hear of the glory of Tyre, of Sidon, of Babylon, and of Susa, and to say all these were before me and are now nothing ; to say I exist in such a point of time, and in such a point of space ; to be a spectator and a part of its ever-moving scene ; to witness the change of season, of spring and autumn, of winter and summer ; to feel hot and cold, pleasure and pain, beauty and deformity, right and wrong ; to be sensible to the accidents of nature ; to consider the mighty world of eye and ear ; to listen to the stockdove's notes amid the forest deep ; to journey over moor and mountain ; to hear the midnight sainted choir ; to visit lighted halls, or the cathedral's gloom, or sit in crowded theatres and see life itself mocked ; to study the works of art and refine the sense of beauty to agony ; to worship fame, and to dream of immortality ; to look upon the Vatican, and to read Shakspeare ; to gather up the wisdom of the ancients, and to pry into the future ; to listen to the trump of war, the shout of victory ; to question history as to the movements of the human heart ; to seek for truth ; to plead the cause of humanity ; to overlook the world as if time and nature poured their treasures at our feet—to be and to do all this, and then in a moment to be nothing—to have it all snatched from us as by a juggler's trick, or a phantasmagoria !

(*Hazlitt :* " Essays.")

IX.

I think the noblest sea that Turner has ever painted, and, if so, the noblest certainly ever painted by man, is that of "The Slave Ship," the chief Academy picture of the Exhibition of 1840. It is a sunset on the Atlantic, after prolonged storm ; but the storm is partially lulled, and the torn and streaming rain-clouds are moving in scarlet lines to lose themselves in the hollow of the night. The whole surface of sea included in the picture is divided into two ridges of enormous swell, not high, nor local, but a low broad heaving of the whole ocean, like the lifting of its bosom by deep-drawn breath after the torture of the storm. Between these two ridges the fire of the sunset falls along the trough of the sea, dyeing it with an awful but glorious light, the intense and lurid splendour which burns like gold, and bathes like blood. Along this fiery path and valley, the tossing waves by which the swell of the sea is restlessly divided, lift themselves in dark, indefinite, fantastic forms, each casting a faint and ghastly shadow behind it along the illumined foam. They do not rise everywhere, but three or four together in wild groups, fitfully and furiously as the understrength of the swell compels or permits them ; leaving between them treacherous spaces of level and whirling water, now lighted with green and lamp-like fire, now flashing back the gold of the declining sun, now fearfully dyed from above with the undistinguishable images of the burning clouds, which fall upon them in flakes of crimson and scarlet, and give to the reckless waves the added motion of their own fiery flying. Purple and blue, the lurid shadows of the hollow breakers are cast upon the mist of night, which gathers cold and low, advancing like the shadow of death upon the guilty ship as it labours amidst the lightning of the sea, its thin masts written upon the sky in lines of blood, girded with condemnation in that fearful hue which signs the sky with horror, and mixes its flaming flood with the sunlight, and, cast far along the desolate heave of the sepulchral waves, incarnadines the multitudinous sea.

I believe, if I were reduced to rest Turner's immortality upon any single work, I should choose this. Its daring conception, ideal in the highest sense of the word, is based on the purest truth, and wrought out with the concentrated knowledge of a life; its colour is absolutely perfect, not one false or morbid hue in any part or line, and so modulated that every square inch of canvas is a perfect composition; its drawing as accurate as fearless; the ship buoyant, bending, and full of motion; its tones as true as they are wonderful; and the whole picture dedicated to the most sublime of subjects and impressions (completing thus the perfect system of all truth, which we have shown to be formed by Turner's works)—the power, majesty, and deathfulness of the open, deep, illimitable sea.

(*Ruskin:* "Modern Painters.")

X.

With the emigration, union, or dissolution of the wandering tribes, the loose and indefinite picture of the Scythian desert has continually shifted. But the most ancient map of Russia affords some places which still retain their name and position; and the two capitals, Novgorod and Kiow, are coeval with the first age of the monarchy. Novgorod had not yet deserved the epithet of great, nor the alliance of the Hanseatic league, which diffused the streams of opulence and the principles of freedom. Kiow could not yet boast of three hundred churches, an innumerable people, and a degree of greatness and splendour, which was compared with Constantinople by those who had never seen the residence of the Cæsars. In their origin the two cities were no more than camps or fairs, the most convenient stations in which the barbarians might assemble for the occasional business of war or trade. Yet even these assemblies announce some progress in the arts of society; a new breed of cattle was imported from the southern provinces; and the spirit of commercial enterprise pervaded the sea and land from the Baltic to the Euxine, from the mouth of the Oder to the port of Constantinople. In the days of idolatry and barbarism, the Sclavonic city of Julin was frequented and enriched by the Normans, who had prudently secured a free mart of purchase and exchange. From this harbour, at the entrance of the Oder, the corsair, or merchant, sailed in forty-three days to the eastern shores of the Baltic, the most distant nations were intermingled, and the holy groves of Curland are said to have been decorated with Grecian and Spanish gold. Between the sea and Novgorod an easy intercourse was discovered: in the summer, through a gulf, a lake, and a navigable river; in the winter season, over the hard and level surface of boundless snows. From the neighbourhood of that city, the Russians descended the streams that fall into the Borysthenes; their canoes, of a single tree, were laden with slaves of every age, furs of every species, the spoil of their beehives, and the hides of their cattle; and the whole produce of the North was collected and discharged in the magazines of Kiow. The month of June was the ordinary season of the departure of the fleet; the timber of the canoes was framed into the oars and benches of more solid and capacious boats; and they proceeded without obstacle down the Borysthenes, as far as the seven or thirteen ridges of rocks, which traverse the bed, and precipitate the waters, of the river. At the more shallow falls it was sufficient to lighten the vessels; but the deeper cataracts were impassable; and the mariners, who dragged their vessels and their slaves six miles over land, were exposed in this toilsome journey to the robbers of the desert. At the first island below the falls, the Russians celebrated the festival of their escape; at a second, near the mouth of the river, they repaired their shattered vessels for the longer and more perilous voyage of the Black Sea. If they steered along the coast, the Danube was accessible; with a fair wind they could reach in thirty-six or forty hours the opposite shores of Anatolia; and Constantinople admitted the annual visit of the strangers of the North. They returned at the stated season with a rich cargo of corn, wine, and oil, the manufactures of Greece, and the spices of India. Some of their countrymen resided in the capital and provinces; and the national treaties protected the persons, effects, and privileges of the Russian merchant.

(*Gibbon:* "Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire.")

CHAPTER VI.

MATTER.

THE REQUISITE KNOWLEDGE AND HOW TO ACQUIRE IT.

§ 47. If we would write an essay, we necessarily must have something to say. But mere knowledge is not sufficient. Due attention should be paid to what has been said about the formation of a correct style. Having felled our tree, we must be careful how we fashion the timber.

§ 48. *Methods of acquiring information.* The reader will doubtless ask: "How can I obtain the information needed by anyone who would be a ready writer?" We answer: "By *reading*, by *observation*, and by *careful thought*."

§ 49. *Range of the essay writer's knowledge.* The next query will possibly be: "What should I know?"

(*a*) You ought to have a good general acquaintance with *English and Modern History*, especially from the constitutional point of view. Your knowledge must not consist of a meaningless string of dates and names, but you should know something of the men who helped to make England, and the deeds which went to that making. Learn how the Elizabethan sailors laid the foundations of England's navy and trade, and assisted to raise her from the position of a sixth-rate power to that of Mistress of the Seas. The dates of their birth and death, the names of their ships, though of course interesting, are of less importance than the broad significance and fruit of their deeds.

(*b*) *Biography* is a great aid to understanding history. Make yourself acquainted with the lives of leaders in literature, science, politics, famous military and naval commanders, and be able to give an intelligent account of their careers. Such essays must not be confined to dry

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

details or a mass of dates, but should be based upon broad lines. You should note the effect of these men's lives and deeds upon the world's history rather than the exact years in which they were born, married, or died—excellent as such dates may be in a chronological table. It is more important to know the social and economic changes resulting from the discovery of the New World by Columbus than the fact that he was a native of Italy, and a knowledge that Wellington shattered Napoleon's power should outweigh the comparatively insignificant detail that he once fought a duel with Lord Winchilsea.

(*c*) A popular idea of the outlines of *Natural Science* is useful to the individual as an essay writer and instructive to all as units in the universe of Nature. Obtain some idea of the general principles underlying physics and chemistry, botany and zoology, geology and astronomy. This knowledge need not extend to intricate formulæ and abstruse details, but should be sufficient to enable you to understand such facts as (1) That the metals on railways are not laid in close contact end to end, but with sufficient space to allow for lengthening in hot weather without forcing each other out of position; (2) That when a plant is killed by frost it is mainly because the water which constitutes a large part of its sap, expands upon freezing, bursts the "cell" walls and destroys the tissue; (3) The composition and properties of the atmosphere, water, etc., and other portions of chemistry and physics which have a bearing upon everyday life; (4) Outlines of meteorology—causes of rainfall, thunderstorms, etc.

N.B.—(1) and (2) might be included in an essay upon "The economic effects of weather changes."

(*d*) The basic principles of *Geography* and *Economics* must not be neglected. Look at geography in its commercial, political, and economic aspect rather than that in which it is viewed by the makers of many school text-books. Like the elder Gradgrind, they are "sticklers for facts, sir," but we question if they are anything more. Geography is best viewed in its relation to current events, and should comprise (1) Influence of the position, climate, and configuration of a country upon its prosperity; (2) Source of origin and international exchange of the various articles of commerce; (3) Typical manufactures and industries, causes of their localisation, rise and decline of different districts; (4) Factors influencing the prosperity or decay of certain towns—compare discovery of gold at Johannesburg, and the decline of Norwich when the

English woollen trade became permanently centralised in the West Riding of Yorkshire; (5) A study of good maps as regards the position of places rendered "household words" by recent events, *e.g.* South Africa, Manchuria, Mont Pelée, Macedonia, etc. We have found it advantageous to draw a large outline map of the world, and to use the following system of marking. The figure "5" against Bombay refers to page 5 in our notebook, which contains *(a)* Short notes from a magazine article on "Bombay as a naval base;" *(b)* Extract from a Board of Trade report on its coasting trade.

Do not neglect *physical geography* so far as it deals with the origin and nature of volcanoes, glaciers, ocean-currents, and similar phenomena which have a practical "worldliness" about them. There is no study more interesting than that of the world and its wonders, no grander epic than that written upon the earth's strata.

(*e*) *Economics* should be considered as the science which investigates the production and distribution of wealth, *i.e.* of all things tending to promote the material well-being of mankind. It should include a delineation of past and present industrial systems, and explain how trades are regulated, the agencies of distribution, the means of transit and communication.

Note (1) See § 66 for reference books in History, etc.

(2) Do not attempt to "*study*" the subjects in their entirety, but look up portions suitable for essays on the titles given in the "*Appendix*," § 97. You will thus be training yourself in habits of research and accumulating the information referred to in § 49, which will fit you for attempting the more difficult miscellaneous titles given in § 69. (See also § 67 on "*Practical hints for writing an essay.*")

(*f*) Then there is a vast mass of *miscellaneous knowledge* which can well be summarised under the heading "general information." Keep abreast of the times and know what is happening at home and abroad, what are the controversial and general topics of the day. Current topics cannot be better studied than from the daily press and the various reviews. The "leaders" of our best newspapers are essays in every sense of the word, being usually written by eminent specialists in the subjects which they treat. Besides their leading articles, most newspapers contain one or more essays upon some literary, dramatic, scientific, or social question. The best of these should be preserved, and filed under various headings or sub-divisions, *e.g.* "Economics," "Applied Science," "Book Reviews," etc., or at least copious notes should be made. Glance through them from time to time, rejecting anything which mature consideration tells you is not worth keeping. You will thus be training the faculty of criticism, and forming a compendium of contemporary knowledge. These notes should be carefully indexed, so that easy reference is possible. Frequently you will secure valuable material unattainable in books, *e.g.* on such subjects as "Wireless Telegraphy," "Airships," "Trusts," "Radium," the latest scientific discoveries, etc.

(*g*) Of course the most important *reading* is that of *standara authors*, and in § 65 we have sketched a suggestive course of reading. At first sight it may appear a laborious task to wade through so much standard literature, too often held to imply dry-as-dust matter. Besides being a means to an end (that of passing an examination in composition), an extensive first-hand acquaintance with the masters of fiction, history, and criticism will store the mind with valuable information, and appreciably add to the higher pleasures of life.

§ 50. *Something more than reading is necessary.* But reading is not everything. In the words of *Burke*: "What is education? A parcel of books? Not at all, but intercourse with the world, with men, and with affairs."

Again, hear *Pope*: "The proper study of mankind is man." And also *Lord Avebury* (Sir John Lubbock): "Earth and Sky, Woods and Fields, Lakes and Rivers, the Mountain and the Sea, are excellent schoolmasters, and teach some of us more than we can ever learn from books."

> "Reading, methinks, is but collecting the rough materials, amongst which a good deal must be laid aside as useless. Meditation is, as it were, choosing and fitting the materials, framing the timbers, squaring and laying the stones, and raising the buildings." (LOCKE: "Education.")

§ 51. *Learn to observe facts and to investigate truths.* Do not allow your *faculty of observation* to be dormant. Some people go through the world with their eyes shut; others, though wide awake, see nothing.

(*a*) Much valuable material may be gained or thought out during a rural walk, a bicycle ride, a journey by rail or water. Notice the natural features—moor and mountain, lake and forest, cascade and cañon. Secure a brief mental picture, and write out a succinct description when you reach home. Sometimes this material will prove of incalculable value, as when writing an essay upon "A cycling tour," "The beauties of Spring," etc.

Descriptive writing is one of the most difficult forms of composition, and though few can hope to stand upon the same pinnacle as a Scott or a Ruskin, all can learn to use their eyes and record what they see in correct and idiomatic English.

The following passages, selected almost at random from Scott, are excellent examples of picturesque description:—

(1) "Yet the glen, though lonely and difficult of access and sterile, was not then absolutely void of beauty. The turf which occupied the little plain ground on the sides of the stream, was as close and verdant as if it had occupied the scythes of a hundred gardeners once a fortnight; and it was garnished with an embroidery of daisies and wild flowers, which the scythes would certainly have destroyed. The little brook, now confined betwixt closer limits, now left at large to choose its course through the narrow valley, danced carelessly on from stream to pool, light and unturbid, as that better class who pass their way through life, yielding to insurmountable obstacles, but as far from being subdued by them as the sailor who meets by chance with an unfavourable wind, and shapes his course so as to be driven back as little as possible."—"The Monastery."

(2) "It was a mild summer day; the beams of the sun, as is not uncommon in Zetland, were moderated and shaded by a silvery haze which filled the atmosphere, and, destroying the strong contrast of light and shade, gave even to noon the sober livery of the evening twilight. The little lake, not three-quarters of a mile in circuit, lay in profound quiet; its surface undimpled, save when one of the numerous water-fowl, which glided on its surface, dived for an instant under it. The depth of the water gave the whole that cerulean tint of bluish green which occasioned its being called the Green Loch; and at present it formed so perfect a mirror to the bleak hills by which it was surrounded, and which lay reflected on its bosom, that it was difficult to distinguish the water from the land; nay, in the shadowy uncertainty occasioned by the thin haze, a stranger could scarce have been sensible that a sheet of water lay before him. A scene of more complete solitude, having all its peculiarities heightened by the extreme serenity of the weather, the quiet gray composed tone of the atmosphere, and the perfect silence of the elements, could hardly be imagined. The very aquatic birds, who frequented the spot in great numbers, forbore their usual flight and screams, and floated in profound tranquillity upon the silent water."—"The Pirate."

(*b*) Notice any striking local customs, any peculiarities of dialect, as you must assuredly do in traversing Wales, the Scotch Highlands, or any part of the Continent, and be on the look-out for scraps of local history which you may hear during travel or holiday.

(*c*) If your holiday is spent in the country, keep your eyes open for material which may prove useful in treating subjects like "The respective advantages of town and country life" and "A day in the harvest-field."

Such first-hand knowledge is infinitely more valuable than anything obtainable from books, and an examiner can generally tell whether a candidate's knowledge is practical or theoretical. Besides laying up a stock of information which will help you in passing an examination in composition, your mental horizon will become enlarged, your view of life will be broader, and you will learn to realise better the parts played by the various actors who are day by day and year by year producing the great drama of "Universal Life."

§ 52. *Learn to think.* The thinking faculty is an important but much neglected one. Fairly deep and original thought is absolutely necessary in writing upon economic subjects or upon abstract ideas such as "Courage, the highest form of virtue," "Inconsistency is the bane of little minds." One must *learn* to think, and this is not a lesson which can be mastered at a sitting, or which will come to you as an inspiration in the examination hall. Note Cobbett's words: "He who writes badly thinks badly."

§ 53. *Cultivation of the Imagination.*

Facts are essential to all good description, but usually there is another requirement, viz., an account of the impression they make upon the observer. Most people are conscious of a vague impression made upon them by picturesque scenery, a majestic building, a fine picture or piece of sculpture, but they find it exceedingly difficult to put such impression into words. It is felt, but they cannot tell how or why it is felt; they are not quite certain whether the rugged grandeur of the mountains appeals to them or whether they are impressed by the silvery stillness of the lake below, by the colour contrasts seen among the wood-clad hill-sides, by the stretch of fair meadowland in the plain. Perhaps it is really no *one* of these, but all taken together as little bits of colouring in the whole mosaic. They all help to amplify our ideas of the beauty of this particular stretch of scenery, but we are scarcely conscious of this until we bring into play that divine faculty of imagination, a faculty which has helped poets to paint fairy realms with their own colouring, to people them with the elf-like creatures of their own brain-kingdom, a faculty which has helped musicians to carry on the God-given destiny of David, a faculty which has transformed bare canvas and rough-hewn marble into speaking creations instinct with the soul of Art, a faculty which has saved from madness many an occupant of the solitary cell. Bring this faculty into play, use it well and use it often; link it hand in hand with the faculty of seeing, and you, too, will exclaim with Sterne, "I pity the man who can travel from Dan to Beersheba and cry, ''Tis all barren.'" See first, but be sure that you see well and truly; do not be like the fly on Æsop's chariot wheel, but *do* grasp a sense of the rights of proportion, and do not use a microscope lens here, ordinary window-glass there. Seek the central features of the landscape and apply a negative test of "if not here"; take them part by part, piece by piece, and put the question, "How would outblotting affect the whole picture?" There would be less grandeur did the mountains go—perhaps no grandeur at all; were the lake dried up, a pleasing softness would be wanting, and so forth, and so forth. Then, besides describing the scene features, you will be able to realise what part they play in the picture, you feel you can comment upon them and bring out their distinctive characteristics, you feel you are able to produce something more than an auctioneer's catalogue, and realise that exercise of the imagination has placed you upon this loftier pedestal. Read Ruskin and read Scott; see how they use the two faculties side by side, and think how tame would be their descriptions were the more abstract faculty absent.

Note how description goes hand-in-hand with imagination in the following impression of *The Gladness of Spring*:—

"We may shut our eyes, but we cannot help knowing
That skies are clear and grass is growing;
The breeze comes whispering in our ear,
That dandelions are blossoming near,
That maize has sprouted, that streams are flowing,
That the river is bluer than the sky,
That the robin is plastering his house hard by;
And if the breeze kept the good news back,
For other couriers we should not lack;
We could guess it all by yon heifer's lowing,
And hark! how clear bold chanticleer,
Warmed with the new wine of the year,
Tells all in his lusty crowing!"—[*Lowell.*]

§ 54. Never omit to take advantage of opportunities for gathering material. It may be true that you are not likely to write an essay upon such-and-such a subject, but it is just possible that certain facts about it may be useful as illustrating or explaining something else. Remember that Saul found a kingdom whilst seeking his father's asses, and that Columbus discovered the New World whilst searching for a westerly passage to India.

CHAPTER VII.

HINTS AS TO A COURSE OF READING.

"Reading maketh a full man, conference a ready man, and writing an exact man." (BACON.)

§ 55. In § 65 we give a list of books which, while not professing to contain what is best in English literature, seeks to include representatives of various styles likely to prove useful to the student of composition. It will doubtless be said that the list is far from complete, and this we do not gainsay. It is not meant to be complete, or even representative of English literature, and does not aim at doing more than mention a few great books likely to help and inspire those studying composition.

§ 56. Whilst preparing for an examination, it is impossible to read all books which may be said to stand in the front rank of English classics. Few will have time to read more than a small proportion of our list, which has been made comprehensive enough to suit all tastes. However, everyone should endeavour to read as many as possible of the works marked thus.* If you have already perused them, turn over the leaves, and mark any passages which seem to exhibit the writer's dominant characteristic. Read these passages two or three times, close the book, and give their substance in your own words. When writing this exercise, bear in mind the authors' style, but you must guard against slavish imitation of any writer. An occasional exercise like this will enable you to appreciate the many varieties of style to be found in our literature, and contact with good styles will help to improve your own. [See § 5.]

§ 57. *Necessity for discrimination in reading.*

Bacon says—

> "Some books are to be tasted, others to be swallowed, and some few to be chewed and digested."

Remember this during your literary studies. If you are unaccustomed to solid reading, possibly your first serious journey into classic territory may prove tedious and uninteresting. Persevere! Subject your mind to that discipline which an athlete finds necessary when training. However much he may hanker after the "fleshpots of Egypt," he knows indulgence in them will be fatal to success. So also with you.

§ 58. *Reading of Poetry*—the *use* of it.

We are essentially concerned with the formation of a good prose style, but that does not prevent us from considering the inspiration following judicious reading of what is best in our great poets. The help to be derived from such literary excursion is mainly of that character which will come under the head of "acquisition of matter." No one ought to attempt to write until he has something to write about, and it is in this respect that the poets will assist us to that mental fulness and wealth of ideas which are two of the most important essentials of the would-be writer. Who can leave Shakspeare without acquiring a broader outlook upon life and a vastly widened mental horizon? Who can leave Milton without bringing away a conception of the grandeur of phrase, of the nobility of thought, which characterize the blind poet? Who can leave Shelley or Wordsworth without acquiring a greater and a more realistic conception of the marvels and the beauties of nature? And so we may find something of worth, if we will but meet it half way, in a journey through the rich fields which any of our greatest singers have sown. This ripening and drawing out of the imaginative powers is one of the things which many an otherwise good writer lacks, which, did he but possess it, would make all the difference between literature and mere word-spinning. The imagination of the writer ought to meet that of the reader, and the two, going hand in hand, should be capable of creating mental pictures of what the writer intends shall be as silently eloquent as the canvases of a Raphael or a Corregio.

The roots of poetry are deep, and force their way down amongst that mental soil around which clings the quality known as "soul"; and so you will ever find that poetry is a fertile source for inspiring prose with a new vitality.

§ 59. *How to read.* [See also § 3.]

(1) The fist dip into "Sartor Resartus" may not be a happy one. Carlyle's undulating style perplexes you, the matter seems dry, and you close the book in disgust. Instead of taking up some illustrated magazine or yellow-backed novel, make a fresh attempt. Ask yourself whether you really have been reading, or merely repeating the words mechanically. Try to put yourself in the writer's place and to look at things as he did—in other words, get at his meaning.

(2) Take the following extract from the beginning of the chapter headed "Prospective":—

> "Thou thyself, O cultivated reader, ... knowest thou any corner of the world where at least *Force* is not? The drop which thou shakest from thy wet hand, rests not where it falls, but to-morrow thou findest it swept away; already on the wings of the North wind, it is nearing the Tropic of Cancer. How came it to evaporate, and not to lie motionless? Thinkest thou there is ought motionless, without Force, and utterly dead . . . . . The withered leaf is not dead and lost; there are forces in it and around it, though working in inverse order; else how would it *rot?*"

Read, and re-read it until you can enter into the spirit of the words and realise that Carlyle is striving to teach you that the seemingly most trivial workings of Nature are in accord with carefully ordained laws. You will now be in a position to face the rest of the chapter, and, far from feeling wearied, will learn to appreciate Carlyle at his true worth, wondering how you could have wasted so much time in the perusal of ephemeral matter whilst this rich well of the classics remained untapped.

(3) Beware of the allurements of second-rate fiction, and during a course of training in composition reject all novels except those by recognised masters, such as Scott, Dickens, Thackeray, Stevenson, etc. Remember, too, there is a right and a wrong way of reading fiction. Enter into the story as though you were living it anew. If the hero is indulging in a mad gallop, with foes in front or behind, hear the thud of hoofs, the shouts of pursuer and pursued. Feel the grip on the saddle, the

touch of the reins, the breeze rushing through your hair, the blood tingling in your veins. If the hero is in trouble, sorrow with him. Rejoice with him in his moments of joy. In short, throw off the identity of self, and for the moment be romantic Edward Waverley or Dugald Dalgetty, instead of plain Ben Brown or John Jones.

(4) Do not be a mere word-machine, grinding out so many pages per hour, but live heart and soul in your author. Pass by no chapter until you have fully arrived at its meaning, no matter how many readings may be necessary. The true reader is so wrapped up in his book that he is oblivious of anything else. So closely does he follow the fortunes of Waverley or Ivanhoe that he even ignores Nature's cravings, and is in danger of allowing dinner-time to pass unheeded when, book in hand, he prepares to spend a holiday in some sylvan solitude, "far from the madding crowd." When you have reached this stage you may reasonably congratulate yourself that you are learning to read.

§ 60. *Note-taking during reading.*

(*a*) Keep a *quotation book*, *i.e.* a notebook containing striking sayings gathered during your reading.

If care be exercised and discrimination shown, much good will follow note-taking during reading, but the anxiety to accumulate notes and to fill common-place books must not outweigh the fact that you *are reading*. We are not all gifted with the memory of a Macaulay, and very often wish to recall or to verify a quotation which cannot always be found at a moment's notice. Here a properly indexed quotation book would help not a little and save much time; moreover, an occasional turning of its leaves will serve to recall and to graft on to our mind many a priceless grain of thought garnered from sheaves of words we may not care to revisit. Such a book will tend to develop the faculty of orderly arrangement and will serve to record the evolution of your literary taste. Occasional revision will show that you have selected passages of slight intrinsic value or of merely passing interest, but the use of notebooks described in § 64 will enable you to prune your collection from time to time.

On page 88 we give an example of a useful form of quotation book, but, in the case of long quotations, some may prefer to give in the second column merely a page reference to their copy of the author in question, and to mark the quotation there. An index is necessary, but is a simple matter if space be left at the beginning of the book and assigned to the various letters of the alphabet. Instead of a bound volume, many people prefer to use loose sheets of paper and one of the many systems of filing now upon the market.

SUBJECT.	QUOTATION.	SOURCE.
Living Organism (Latent Energy of).	The spectacle afforded by the wonderful energies prisoned within the compass of the microscopic hair of a plant, which we commonly regard as a merely passive organism, is not easily forgotten by one who has watched its display, continued hour after hour, without pause or sign of weakening.	*Huxley:* "The Physical Basis of Life."
Courage (Mercenary Aspect).	What a vulgar thing does courage seem when we see nations buying and selling it for a shilling a day.	*De Quincey:* "Vision of Sudden Death."
Silent Forces (Power of).	Ah yes, I will say again: The great *silent* men! Looking round on the noisy inanity of the world, words with little meaning, actions with little worth, one loves to reflect on the great Empire of *Silence.* The noble silent men, scattered here and there, each in his department; silently thinking, silently working; whom no Morning Newspaper makes mention of. They are the salt of the Earth. A country that has none or few of these is in a bad way. Like a forest which has no *roots;* which had all turned into leaves and boughs;—which must soon wither and be no forest.	*Carlyle:* "On Heroes and Hero Worship."
Science (Nobility of).	Is it not, indeed, an absurd and almost sacrilegious belief, that the more a man studies Nature the less he reveres it? Think you that a drop of water, which to the vulgar eye is but a drop of water, loses anything in the eye of the physicist who knows that its elements are held together by a force which, if suddenly liberated, would produce a flash of lightning? Think you that what is carelessly looked upon by the uninitiated as a mere snowflake, does not suggest higher associations to one who has seen through a microscope the wondrously varied and elegant forms of snow-crystals? Think you that the rounded rock marked with parallel scratches, calls up as much poetry in an ignorant mind as in the mind of a geologist, who knows that over this rock a glacier slid a million years ago?	*Herbert Spencer:* "Education."

(*b*) Besides the "quotation book" above mentioned, keep notebooks for (1) fiction, (2) essayists, (3) poetry, etc (See § 64 for Hints as to Style of Notebook, etc.)

Use them according to the following plan of analysis :—

§ 61. *In the analysis of a novel* the main points to be considered are—

(1) Summary of the plot.

(2) List of the characters, their weakness and strength, and the parts — important or unimportant — which they play in the story. Note their characteristics, *e.g.* the benevolence of Mr. Pickwick, the plasticity of Edward Waverley, the quiet egotism of Robinson Crusoe.

(3) The author's descriptive power (especially in the case of a novelist like Scott). Note choice descriptive or reflective passages such as the opening of "Ivanhoe."

(4) Historical and geographical references.

(5) Literary license, *e.g.* Gurth and Wamba in "Ivanhoe" talk far more learnedly than people in their station really would.

Stretching of historical fact; *i.e.* in the hands of the novelist real personages often are credited with fictitious words and deeds, *e.g.* Richard I. in "Ivanhoe," Warwick in the "Last of the Barons."

(6) Kind of novel, *e.g.*

(*a*) *Waverley*, *Ivanhoe*, *Old St. Paul's*, are historical.
(*b*) *Pickwick* is humorous (and a novel without a plot).
(*c*) *Hypatia* is really a theological philosophy.

§ 62. *The analysis of an essay* should include—

(1) A prêcis of the subject-matter.

(2) Any phrases and sayings which have "become popular," such as Bacon's words heading this chapter.

(3) Grammatical anomalies or characteristics.

(*a*) Peculiarities of sentences, *e.g.* Johnson's ponderousness, Macaulay's frequent use of antithesis, Carlyle's ruggedness, Stevenson's euphony.

(*b*) *Punctuation.* Bacon uses little more than the semicolon and full stop. Macaulay is extremely partial to the semicolon in cases where many writers would prefer the full stop. Carlyle scatters hyphens and exclamation marks broadcast; both punctuation and style are peculiarly his own, effective in the hands of their master, but inert and grotesque in those of imitators.

(4 Note the author's skill (or lack of it) in paragraphing, use of figures of speech and idiomatic phrases, fondness of quotation from his own or foreign literature, rhythmical effect produced on reading aloud.

(5) Main characteristics as a stylist, *e.g.*

> Bacon (*conciseness*).
> Addison (*pure literary form.*)

You will derive more benefit from one essay so treated than from skimming through a hundred. Above all things be a critical, independent observer; do not be a mere copyist, or faithful disciple of such and such an author. In learning to write, remember you must also learn to think, and this you will never do by acting the part of a parrot.

§ 63. *Plan for notes on a poem* (like "Paradise Lost," "Lady of the Lake," etc.).

1) Précis of argument or story

(2) Historical and geographical references.

(3) Seeming violations of grammatical rules.

(4) Collection of "quotations," and lines which have become "household words," *e.g.*

> "Full many a flower is born to blush unseen." (GRAY.)
> "Oh for the touch of a vanished hand." (TENNYSON.)

(5) Metre and technique (generally considered in the introduction of "edited" editions).

§ 64. We recommend that notes be made in the so-called "elastic bound" notebooks from which the leaves can be easily detached, or in books with the pages perforated near the binding. The notes, extracts, etc., can then be arranged alphabetically, according to subjects, authors, etc., and filed for ready reference. This plan possesses the unique advantage that additions can always be added to the notes and continuity as well as logical arrangement preserved without the labour of re-writing the whole. Some people prefer to make their notes upon thin strips of card which are prepared for this purpose and are of a size convenient for the pocket.

§ 65. *Suggested course of reading* (for meaning of asterisk see page 84). The following notes are in no sense intended to be *criticisms.* Their aim is to lead the reader's mind into channels of thought which will be useful to him as a student of composition.

ESSAYISTS.

Author.	*Works recommended.*	*Remarks.*
Bacon	* *Essays*, particularly those upon "Studies," "Travel," "Gardens," etc.	Note the abundance of choice "quotable" sayings, and of metaphorical conceptions. Bacon discourses to us upon abstract qualities such as "Truth," "Envy," "Nobility," "Ambition." He tells us how to travel and how to carry out the regime of health. He speaks of marriage, parents and children, youth and age, guides us in our studies, and does not disdain to touch upon building and gardens.
Addison	* The "Sir Roger de Coverley" Papers, and other "Spectator" Essays.	Johnson's arguments are sound, but do not copy his Latinised style, which should be compared with the almost inimitable grace of Addison's. Study Sir Roger as a fine type of honest humanity, and let your imagination carry you to the time and world in which he lived ; you will then see much of the England and English life as Addison saw it.
Johnson (see p. 101)	"Rambler" Essays.	

ESSAYISTS—*continued.*

Author.	*Works recommended.*	*Remarks.*
Lamb	* Any of the "Elia" Essays, *e.g.* "Mrs. Battle on Whist," "A Quaker's Meeting," "Dissertation upon Roast Pig," "Poor Relations," etc. Lamb's "Tales from Shakspeare."	Notice the "old world" air of Lamb's writings and the skill with which he approaches the most diverse subjects. His descriptions of contemporary London life are excellent.
Leigh Hunt	Essays such as "My Books," "The Old Gentleman," "Seamen on Shore," "A Chapter on Hats."	His subjects are usually bookish, or deal with Nature and Humanity.
De Quincey	Essay on "The English Mail Coach." * "Confessions of an English Opium-Eater."	Note the inequality of De Quincey's work. His lack of research at times made his scholarship somewhat defective. But his best wine is of a rare vintage, and will tickle the palate of the most fastidious reader. De Quincey is very fond of figures of speech, especially "personification," and few writers possess a more copious vocabulary. For this reason alone his works will repay careful study. Extract III., p. 61, is from the "Opium Eater."

ESSAYISTS—*continued.*

Author.	*Works recommended.*	*Remarks.*
Sydney Smith	"Letters of Peter Plymley," and Miscellaneous Essays.	Sydney Smith is noteworthy for his witty and pointed sayings, which are replete with the buoyant spirits of a very unclerical clergyman. *e.g.* (1) "Yes! you will find people ready enough to do the good Samaritan without the oil and the twopence." (2) "You flavour everything; you are the vanille of society."
Macaulay (see p. 102)	All his Miscellaneous Essays, particularly those on * "Warren Hastings," * "Chatham" (two studies), * "Bacon."	(1) Macaulay makes great use of most of the legitimate artifices of the stylist, but particularly of antithesis and well-planned adjectives. (2) Instead of criticisms on books, Macaulay's Essays strike us as elaborate biographical studies of the sovereigns, statesmen, philosophers, and men of letters whose lives the reviewed volumes are supposed to sketch. (3) A particularly fine passage is the trial scene in "Warren Hastings." (See Extract IV., p. 62.)
Carlyle (see p. 103)	"Sartor Resartus," * "Past and Present," * "Heroes and Hero-Worship," "Essay upon Burns."	(1) Most of Carlyle's miscellaneous writings are philosophical essays of rough surface and great depth, though their form is calculated to frighten the uninitiated as much as it originally did publishers.

ESSAYISTS—*continued.*

Author.	*Works recommended.*	*Remarks.*
Carlyle (*cont.*)		But once get beyond the husk of his peculiar mannerisms and the kernel will richly repay all trouble. (2) His style is unique and almost indescribable. He was a writer of rugged and bitter "Carlylisms," somewhat of a cynic, though not too much so to prevent his being a philosopher, and saw the world through a glass which represented manhood as "mostly fools."

CRITICS.

Author.	*Works recommended.*	*Remarks.*
Hazlitt	"Spirit of the Age," "The Characters of Shakspeare's Plays," "Lectures on the English Poets."	Hazlitt's dramatic criticisms display an excellent knowledge of that world which the drama is supposed to reflect, but he was a rabid partisan, and merciless to those who differed from him.
Matthew Arnold	"Friendship's Garland," * "Essays in Criticism."	(1) Arnold's view of men and things was in no small degree influenced by lines of thought reflected from Greek literature. (2) His style is one of almost formal correctness, coupled with an exquisite rhythm. One of his most effective weapons is a polished and delicately veiled satire. (3) Extract II., p. 61, is a good example of Arnold's style.
Ruskin	"Modern Painters." * "Sesame and Lilies." "The Crown of Wild Olive." "Unto this Last." "Munera Pulveris."	The body of Ruskin's work is prose, its spirit is poetry. Read a page or two aloud, and the beautiful rhythm cannot fail to strike you. His writing possesses a unique peculiarity which would be a grave fault in the hands of nearly everyone else—long sentences, often consisting of twenty or more lines.

NOVELISTS.

Author.	*Works recommended.*	*Remarks.*
Defoe	* "Robinson Crusoe."	(1) The plot is bare, and we see none of those subtle artifices of dramatic finesse, picturesque description, or delicate handling of the human passions which our modern novelist considers essential auxiliaries. (2) The hero is as practical as Defoe's vigorous homespun Saxon language. Like a matter-of-fact Englishman he relates what was always uppermost in his mind. The island was his prison, and he wanted to get out of it. The husbanding of his stores and the production of life's necessaries were more important in his eyes than an aesthetic contemplation of beautiful scenery.
Goldsmith	The "Vicar of Wakefield."	This classic contains few attributes of a novel, but is one of our "immortals." There is little plot, less picturesque descriptive writing, and practically no incident. Yet, as a character sketch, the good Vicar is unique. If Goldsmith deliberately tried (which he probably did not) to shew how a worthy man, unmoved by misfortune, could act the part of a Stoic, he would not have succeeded better. Most

NOVELISTS—*continued.*

Author.	*Works recommended.*	*Remarks.*
Goldsmith (*cont.*)		of the other characters are mediocre, many of them are weak ; but this only tends to set off the strength of the central figure.
Fielding	"Tom Jones."	Fielding was the first English novelist to give a picture of life as it really is. Unlike his predecessors, he succeeded in evolving men and women, not qualities. Tom Jones, the hero, may be a sower of wild oats, but we cannot deny him the hallmark of "man." The plot of this novel is one which it would be difficult to surpass anywhere, and the style, while perhaps not graceful, is lucid. Fielding's novels will amply repay reading, because of the excellent studies in characterisation afforded by them.
Scott	* "Waverley," "Guy Mannering," "Old Mortality," * "Ivanhoe," "Kenilworth," * "The Antiquary," but every one of the Waverley Novels left unread is a loss to you.	(1) Few writers possess greater powers of attracting their readers than Scott. His theme was his native land, and he ever forces this fact upon us. Everywhere in his pages we breathe the northern ozone, and seem to feel that we are in the sunshine of the open air. He presents Scotch men and manners as they never had been, and possibly as

NOVELISTS—*continued.*

Author.	*Works recommended.*	*Remarks.*
Scott (*cont.*)		they never will be, presented again. His characters live in a world of realism and not in the clouds of abstraction. He is ever exalting the spirit of chivalry, whether his field of action be a king's court, a robbers' hut, or a monkish cloister, whether the century be the 11th or the 18th. (2) A reading of "Ivanhoe" or "Waverley" will give you a far better knowledge of early Plantagenet England or of the second Jacobite rebellion than a study of many pretentious historical treatises. (3) Excellent and typical examples of vivid narrative are descriptive of (*a*) The Highland Feast in "Waverley" (ch. xx.). (*b*) The death of Amy Robsart in "Kenilworth." (*c*) The Ashby-de-la-Zouch Tournament in "Ivanhoe."
Dickens	* "Pickwick Papers," * "David Copperfield," "Oliver Twist," * "A Tale of Two Cities," but try to read Dickens as we would have you read Scott.	(1) Dickens undoubtedly owes much of his popularity to the clever manner in which he sketches characters in humble life. Many of these stand out by reason of their very eccentricity, witness Sam Weller and Dick Swiveller. Most of the scenes are professedly laid in the London of his day, but one is tempted

NOVELISTS—*continued.*

Author.	*Works recommended.*	*Remarks.*
Dickens (*cont.*)		to ask whether many of the actors do not exist in a world of his own creation, for some of them seem too fantastic for real life. (2) Dickens is one of our happiest humorists, but bathos is occasionally the result of overdoing the pathetic. He is a great hankerer after the ghoulish and horrible, but much of this is necessary by reason of his peculiar choice of subjects. We admire the power of the hand which drops the curtain upon Fagin, and, repressing an involuntary shudder, recognise that a less sombre tint would spoil the picture. (3) Examined from the standpoint of technique, Dickens is by no means faultless. His plots are poor, and lack unity, but the uniqueness of his characters hides much of this from the casual reader. Most of his books are mere "chronicles" of events which have very little interdependence, and which rarely work for a common end. (4) He was essentially a novelist with a purpose, and often, under the guise of caricature, exposed disgraceful social evils—cheap boarding schools in "Nicholas Nickleby," Chancery abuses in "Bleak House," and the debtors' prison in "Little Dorrit."

NOVELISTS—*continued.*

Author.	*Works recommended.*	*Remarks.*
Thackeray	* "Vanity Fair," "Esmond," "Pendennis," "Paris Sketch Book," * "The Newcomes."	One of the most noteworthy features of Thackeray's novels is his satirisation of the middle and upper classes. Few writers have known the world or human nature better than he did, and this knowledge is displayed in the skill with which he presents such diametrically opposite characteristics as the simple manliness of Colonel Newcome and the artful wickedness of Becky Sharp.
Bulwer-Lytton	"Last Days of Pompeii," "Ernest Maltravers," * "The Coming Race."	Experimenting in many forms of fiction, Lytton attained respectable merit in most, but pre-eminent excellence in none. There is rather too much glitter about his style, and many of his characters lack solid reality. He chiselled their features with the skill of an accomplished sculptor, but often forgot to breathe into them the breath of life.
Stevenson, R. L.	* "Treasure Island."	Look at Stevenson's manner rather than his matter. He was an artist in prose writing, and one of our most skilful fashioners of exquisite sentences. His telling phrases in description are known to some as the "New Euphuism."

BIOGRAPHERS.

Author.	*Works recommended.*	*Remarks.*
Boswell	"Life of Johnson."	Idolism: "the ridiculous." A strange medley, in which he regards his subject with almost deified affection that at times appears ludicrous. It gives an excellent sketch of Johnson's career.
Lockhart	"Life of Scott."	Sense of proportion: "the sublime." Written in excellent taste, and presents Scott as he really was—as a man, not a demigod.
Johnson	"Lives of the Poets."	(1) Johnson was a philosopher of no little depth, who knew how to estimate men and things at their true worth. His fondness for "learned," and particularly for Latinised, words, frequently scares away would-be readers, but his style is very robust, and he excels as a coiner of figurative conceptions. (2) The best "Lives" are probably those of Dryden and Pope, but they should be read from the literary rather than from the biographical point of view.

HISTORIANS.

Author.	*Works recommended.*	*Remarks.*
Gibbon	"Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire."	(1) Gibbon's style is decidedly "gilt-edged," but not repellant and tawdry like that of many of his imitators. His strong point is a peculiar cadence of language, his sentences possessing the undulating regularity of wave motion. (2) As an imaginative descriptionist he excels, and, as in the case of Macaulay, we may say that his work is generally excellent whether considered as history or as literature. (3) See Extract X., p. 68.
Hallam	"Constitutional History."	This is one of the best works of its kind. Note the author's Whig tendencies, his cold-blooded argument, and the fact that in his hands historical personages usually seem mere automata.
Macaulay	* "History of England."	(1) Macaulay is one of those rare historians who present real men and real events in such a manner that we are tempted to think we are reading a romance. Nevertheless, though he is such a picturesque

HISTORIANS—*continued.*

Author.	*Works recommended.*	*Remarks.*
Macaulay (*cont.*)		narrator, his views are generally sound, except in a few cases where he was blinded by prejudice. (2) Chapter III., describing the state of England in 1685, is especially fine, and it is upon this chapter that much of Macaulay's reputation rests.
Carlyle	* "History of the French Revolution."	(1) Might be termed a "lyric history." Carlyle possessed the faculty of assimilating the substance of dry documents and of weaving it into a narrative of enthralling interest. He is one of our first historians to outline his characters true to life and to colour them with all the realism of a novelist. (2) A glorification of liberty and justice.
Froude	"History of England" (Tudor Period).	(1) Despite his more than occasional inaccuracy and partisanship, Froude possessed the gift of introducing a powerful realism into his story. (2) Note the vivid, almost callous, gruesomeness of the passage describing Mary Stuart's execution.
Green	"Short History of the English People."	Instinct with life and movement, and can be read from cover to cover.

SCIENTISTS.

Author.	*Works recommended.*	*Remarks.*
J. S. Mill	"Logic."	"Liberty" and "Utilitarianism" (titles indeed of two of his minor works) underlie all Mill's writings. His reasoning faculty is strongly developed, and we are never left in doubt as to his meaning.
Adam Smith	* "Wealth of Nations."	Read Smith for his matter rather than his manner. His theories as to free trade revolutionised the ideas of political economists of his own and succeeding generations, but in many respects are inapplicable to present conditions of life. "The Wealth of Nations" is a classic both in Economics and in Literature, and Extract VII., p. 65—the well-known passage on the "Division of Labour"—is an excellent sample of its contents.
Herbert Spencer	"Biology," * "Education."	Spencer has been variously criticised, but there is no doubt that he possesses one of the main essentials of the scientific writer—ability to argue from both sides of the question. When we agree with him he convinces us, when we do not he directs our mind into

SCIENTISTS—*continued.*

Author.	*Works recommended.*	*Remarks.*
Herbert Spencer (*cont.*)		the channels of deep thought. Note the eloquent first chapter in "Education."
Darwin	"Origin of Species."	Darwin is always sure of his facts (a large proportion of them being derived from personal investigation), which, with his theories and opinions, are clearly laid before the reader.
Huxley	"Man's Place in Nature," * "Lay Sermons."	Huxley is noted for his originality of thought and the ability to present the most abstruse subject in a pleasing garb. His "Lay Sermons" exhibit the pure philosopher in nearly every line. Extract V., p. 63—from Huxley's "Lectures on Evolution"—aptly illustrates his style.

MISCELLANEOUS.

Author.	*Works recommended.*	*Remarks.*
Bunyan	* "Pilgrim's Progress."	One of the miracles of literature, and probably the greatest allegory in the language. Though the work of a supposed illiterate tinker, it is singularly free from errors in grammar and in taste. The beauty of the style is its simplicity and its regard for Saxon idiom. The plot is regular and straightforward, and the book is undoubtedly one of the most important forerunners of our modern novel, though the subjects treated are foreign to most novelists.
Dryden	"Essay of Dramatic Poesie."	Milton was a greater poet than Dryden, but compare the latter's graceful prose with the ponderous sentences of "Areopagitica." Dryden avoided the complicated sentence and any "learned" or archaic wordings likely to mystify his readers. He endeavoured to cultivate an easy style in accordance with Anglo-Saxon idiom—and succeeded.

MISCELLANEOUS—*continued.*

Author.	*Works recommended.*	*Remarks.*
Swift	* "Gulliver's Travels," "Tale of a Tub."	"Gulliver" is a biting, savage satire. Children like to read it because the idea of dwarfs and giants pleases them. Unlike their elders they are unable to see that these are merely Swift's vehicles for depicting humanity in the most loathsome light possible.
Burke	"Reflections on the French Revolution," * "Speeches upon American Taxation," etc.	Few writers have made better uses of the niceties of rhetoric than Burke, and it is as a rhetorician that he excels. Yet these very speeches, which so captivate the modern reader, were delivered in a dry, uninteresting style which rapidly cleared the "House." Note the splendidly imaginative passage upon Marie Antoinette in "Reflections on the French Revolution" and the fine figurative language of the speech upon "American Taxation."

The English Bible is essential to anyone who would become a stylist and a master of his language. From cover to cover our standard translation is a gold mine of virile phrase, phrase in which the essentials of clearness and precision are ever seen, phrase which, because of this and because of the thought it unfolds, clings, ivy-like, to a man's memory from youth to age. Note the wonderful purity of our Biblical English—ninety-seven per cent. of its words are of native stock—and note how this purity is one of its literary charms. Note its poetry, and note its directness of appeal to the simplest mind, note its nobility of diction, and you will realise that as mere literature it would have lived through the ages, did not its sacred character graft it upon the hearts of all Christian peoples.

Note. (1) *Ruskin* says, "My mother forced me, by steady daily toil, to learn long chapters of the Bible by heart, ... and to that discipline—patient, accurate, resolute—I owe not only a knowledge of the book, but much of my general power of taking pains, and the best part of my taste in literature."

(2) Hear *Leigh Hunt*: "The taste which the Bible forms is not the taste for big words, but a taste for the simplest expressions or the clearest medium of presenting ideas. Remarkable it is that most of the sublimities of the Bible are conveyed in monosyllables. For example, 'Let there be light: and there was light!' Do these words want any life that Latin could give them?"

NOTE that the Extracts given on p. 60 *et seq.* are taken from many authors contained in the foregoing list (see also the prose passages or paraphrase in § 76). The works we have recommended will furnish many similar passages, and the student is advised that more benefit will be derived from a careful study of such pieces than from a hasty perusal of entire books (see also § 3 and § 59, "*How to read.*")

§ 66. *Reference Books.* Besides the reading undertaken from a literary standpoint, the student will require works of reference for the elucidation of facts which may crop up from time to time. In these days of Free Libraries almost anyone can gain access to

(1) "The Encyclopædia Britannica."

(2) "Chambers' Encyclopædia."

(3) "The Natural Dictionary of Biography."

(4) A good English dictionary such as the "Standard" or "Imperial," or upon a smaller scale Webster's,

Annandale's, Chambers', etc. Do not think it a degradation to consult the English dictionary when you do not know the meaning of a word. It is difficult to commit a greater error than to use words of which you do not understand the signification—when the remedy is so obvious and simple.

(5) A concise yet comprehensive History of English Literature, such as Saintsbury's "Short History of English Literature" (MACMILLAN); Stopford Brooke's "English Literature from 670 to 1832 A.D." (MACMILLAN); and such a manual as "The English Language" (CLIVE).

(6) The "Review of Reviews," which is a current symposium of what is passing in literature and in affairs. It gives a list of the best and more permanent articles in English and foreign publications. This can be glanced at, any helpful title noted, and the article read in its entirety in the "Quarterly," "Fortnightly," "Blackwood," or wherever it appears.

(7) Works like "Whitaker's Almanack," "The 'Daily Mail' Year Book," "Who's Who," etc., which will frequently form excellent reference books on current topics.

(8) Books whence can be obtained the information referred to under the heading "Range of the essay-writer's knowledge" (§ 49, *et seq.*), and which will supply facts for working-up an essay upon most historical, geographical, or scientific topics, *e.g.* Ransome's "Advanced History of England," Haydn's "Dictionary of Dates," Chisholm's "Commercial Geography," Mill's "International Geography" (NEWNES), Mill's "Realm of Nature" (MURRAY) —containing excellent accounts of scientific phenomena noticeable in everyday life, including lucid chapters upon "Physical Geography"; Cassell's "Popular Science," Walker's "Political Economy," English translation of Gide's "Political Economy" (HEATH), Cunningham and McArthur's "Outlines of Industrial History" (CAMBRIDGE PRESS), De Gibbins' "History of Commerce in Europe" (MACMILLAN).

NOTE: Macmillan's well-known 1/- "Primers" treat most subjects in a popular *elementary* manner, and so do the volumes in Newnes' "Story" series (*e.g.* "Story of the Alphabet," etc).

NOTE: Most well-known classics are now accessible in cheap editions, such as Dent's "Everyman's Library," Routledges "Universal Library," Froude's "The World's Classics," etc.

CHAPTER VIII.

ESSAY WRITING.

§ 67. *Practical hints for writing an essay.*

Matter.

(1) Read yourself full of the subject; try to think it threadbare. Remember what we have said about the acquisition of matter. Have your facts ready to hand, carefully assorted, each one docketed as it were, and stowed away in the proper mental compartment.

Style.

(2) If you have studied and digested our previous remarks upon "style," you will be able to write facile and natural English. Avoid any "playing to the gallery;" this is a temptation which invariably besets young (we had almost said all) writers.

Importance of trifles.

(3) Do not lose sight of the importance of what may seem small things, such as handwriting, spelling, punctuation, paragraphing, and neatness. A margin will add to the appearance of your work and tend to increase marks, so will tidy, legible writing. No examiner is favourably impressed if, in order to arrive at your meaning, he has to scrutinise microscopic hieroglyphics closely. He is but human, and in such cases there is always danger of his pencil making a vicious scratch, thereby adding yet another to the ignoble army of failures.

Methods of practice.

(4) When practising, always have the essays corrected by a capable hand, or, if this is impossible, lay them aside for a week or ten days. Then read through carefully and deliberately two or three times, attending to the following points:—

(*a*) Delete all adjectives which strike you as unnecessary or flamboyant.

(*b*) Critically examine the "fine passages," and ask yourself whether they are really gold or only dross. You will be calmer than when you wrote, and may now consider that your finest rhetoric is mere hysteria, that your most poetic thoughts are drivelling nonsense, and that your choicest flowers of speech are nothing more than wordy weeds.

(*c*) Substitute honest English words for your Johnsonian Latinisms. Whilst lacking flimsy tawdriness, they will possess the merit of clearness and simplicity.

(5) Much practice is necessary. At least two essays should be written weekly. Do not sort the titles; every one given in our list in § 69 should be *outlined* once or twice, and full essays frequently written. (See remarks on "Essay Titles," § 68.)

In the examination room.

(6) During actual examination, when a selection of subjects is allowed, exercise due thought before commencing to write. Do not choose an imposing title only to find that after wasting irrecoverable time you are utterly incapable of dealing with it. Your second venture will create an unfavourable impression on the examiner, to say nothing of the sad self-consciousness that you have sacrificed golden minutes in which you might have earned sufficient marks to secure a place in the "pass list," whereas ambition to display your abilities in treating a grandiloquent title has resulted in the loss of a valuable appointment. However, do not necessarily select the easiest title, or the most commonplace if you can adequately treat another. An examiner, after wading through piles of mediocre nonsense upon a well-worn "saw," is at once struck by a new subject, or by original treatment of an old one, and will award higher marks accordingly.

(7) Do not be afraid of stating your own opinions if these are sound or logical. However great a partisan the examiner may be, he is not so unjust as to make you suffer for differing from him upon a controversial subject. Some "coaches" frequently advance the statement that originality is not welcomed in examinations, but we beg to differ on this score, except of course when such originality takes the form of misstatement or unsound scholarship.

§ 68. *Remarks on essay titles given in* § 69.

I. We append for practice an extensive list of essay titles, of which many have been set at various competitive examinations, whilst the remainder are original, and in every case deal with up-to-date subjects.

II. These titles, though comprising a great variety of topics, are not grouped under specific headings, or classified in any way, it being our belief that a promiscuous arrangement will afford the best practice, especially if the candidate works doggedly through them. It is a fatal mistake to sort them—to choose only what is congenial and to omit that which is difficult or wearisome.

III. Following the titles are hints for making

(*a*) *Brief notes* suggesting lines of thought which may be taken. Before commencing the essay, it is always better to jot down possible heads or sub-divisions. These can then be classified in a manner similar to our

(*b*) *Outline essays*, which indicate the order of the various details comprised in your theme. Both rough notes and outline essay should occupy less than half-an-hour, and where two hours is allowed the remaining time should be ample for the production of the finished article. Quality is a far more important essential than quantity. In most examinations two-and-a-half to three pages of matter will prove sufficient. Many candidates fail through rushing haphazard into the subject. Their essays lack plan, continuity of argument, and reasoning power, even if the grammar and composition be beyond reproach. Our greatest writers have all been deep and careful thinkers. A Macaulay or a Carlyle does not take a sheet of foolscap and spontaneously dash off "Warren Hastings" or "Sartor Resartus." Such methods may suit the hack journalist or tenth-rate leader-writer, but they are fillers of space before fashioners of English.

NOTE: Though the *Model essays* given in § 72 are intended to be examples as to length, arrangement, and the treatment required by different classes of subjects, it is quite possible that many subjects may be treated from diverse points of view without deteriorating from the mark-earning capacity of an essay. This is easily conceivable in the case of titles like "All is fair in war," "England fifty years ago," "The ideal business man," "Heroes in everyday life." Therefore do not let the reader be discouraged if he would not have thought of saying the same things or taking the same lines as we have done in our model essays.

§ 69. **Essay titles** *for practice.* (*See also Note* 2 *on page* 72, *and* § 97.)

A (*Set at various competitive examinations during the last few years—mostly for Civil Service Appointments*).

1. An imaginary conversation between C. J. Rhodes and Warren Hastings.
2. The biography of any famous explorer.
3. "Courage is the highest of virtues, because it is that one which makes all other virtues possible." Discuss this statement.
4. Write a letter to a friend contending that a war is likely to produce less suffering nowadays than at the beginning of the century. Write his reply, taking the opposite view.
5. Write a letter to a friend who has offered to pay your expenses for a week's tour on the Continent, telling him which places you propose to visit.
6. Is public opinion in the main formed or only reflected by the Press?
7. Inconsistency is the bugbear of little minds.
8. Different nationalities can never really understand one another.
9. Hero worship and sycophancy.
10. The debt of modern civilisation to the ancient Greeks and Romans.
11. Shakspeare as reflecting his own age.
12. The sun.
13. The self-made man: his faults and virtues.
14. The lost colonial power of Spain.
15. Female suffrage.
16. Patriotism: its uses and abuses.
17. Is unprofitable prison labour on the whole good or bad?
18. Hypocrisy is the homage that vice pays to virtue.
19. Your native country as it was one hundred years ago, and as it is now.
20. What makes a good, and what a bad letter-writer?
21. To paint the triumph of vice is inartistic.
22. The struggle for existence: how far it is modified in the case of human beings.
23. "And nothing worthy proving can be proved."
24. Fieri non debuit; factum valet.
25. All is fair in war.
26. "Political constitutions are not made, but grow." Examine this statement.
27. England, France, and Germany as commercial and political rivals.
28. Describe a dog show from a dog's point of view.
29. How far is popularity among his companions a criterion of a young man's worth?

30. Castles in the air.
31. Your favourite characters in Dickens.
32. Holland as a colonising Power.
33. "One crowded hour of glorious life
    Is worth an age without a name."
34. Ocean trade routes.
35. The forms of literature in which women have, and in which they have not, reached eminence.
36. The drawbacks of civilisation.
37. England fifty years ago.
38. The theory of the free breakfast table.
39. The difficulties of the benevolent.
40. What has Great Britain gained or lost by being an island?
41. Popular arguments for and against Free Trade.
42. Nothing worth knowing can be learned without effort.
43. Is the progress of Science destructive of Poetry?
44. The mixture of races in the United Kingdom.
45. The Gothenburg system of dealing with the Liquor Traffic.
46. Write a letter arguing that there are two sides to every question, and giving examples.
47. Discretion of speech is more than eloquence.
48. Discuss what is the greatest invention of the 19th century.
49. Reasons for and against preserving ancient buildings and monuments.
50. Has conscription become necessary for our national security?
51. Are the interests of England and Russia necessarily opposed?
52. The methods and results of present day philanthropy.
53. Modern scientific forecasting of weather compared with the weather wisdom of our forefathers.
54. The advantages and drawbacks of a Channel Tunnel.
55. "Appearances are deceitful; but it is on them that we form our judgments."
56. The duties of civilised to uncivilised nations.
57. What qualities go to constitute a great statesman?
58. The Anglo-Japanese Alliance.
59. The World in 2000 A.D.—a forecast.
60. Makers of the British Empire—from Clive to Cecil Rhodes.
61. Contrast woman's position to-day with the position she occupied fifty years ago.
62. Government by party.
63. Ambition.
64. The good and the evil aspects of sport.
65. Kipling as the poet of the modern age.
66. The victories of peace.
67. Happy is the nation which has no history.
68. The Yellow Peril.
69. The relations of Australia to Asia and the Pacific.
70. The connection between the geological strata of a district and the features of its scenery.
71. To impart knowledge is but a small part of the aims of education.
72. The comparative influence of music, literature, and art.
73. Science is organised common-sense.

74. Discuss the theory that all men are born equal.
75. How far is the pursuit of wealth a cause of human improvement?
76. Sentiment as a political factor.
77. A dialogue between an Englishman, Scotchman, and Irishman, each extolling the virtues of his native land.
78. The future of electricity.
79. Decimal coinage, weights, and measures.
80. Colonial expansion.

B (*Original*).

81. The Stage, the Press, the Platform: their comparative influence.
82. Folk-lore.
83. Socialistic tendencies of the age.
84. Mediæval Trade Guilds.
85. Electricity as a motive power.
86. "The sea in English poetry."
87. The custom of "tipping."
88. Fiscal problems of to-day.
89. The evil side of magazine literature.
90. Should women engage in business?
91. London in the hands of the novelist.
92. The Mediterranean as a factor in the Balance of Power.
93. Our coal supply: its possible exhaustion.
94. The commercial effect of removing all restrictions on trade in China.
95. Automobilism.
96. The examination evil.
97. The principle of subsidising steamship companies.
98. The place of "Nature Study" in Education.
99. The young man of to-day as compared with his predecessor of fifty years ago.
100. Socialism: its future.
101. The worship of power.
102. The stage as a social factor.
103. The usefulness or otherwise of international exhibitions.
104. The English Public School System.
105. Japan as a "Great Power."
106. The economic aspect of "Trusts."
107. Geography and the daily newspaper.
108. Health Resorts: are they a misnomer?
109. Yachting as a sport.
110. Utilitarianism *versus* idealism.
111. The beauties of Autumn compared with those of Spring
112. The commercial side of modern athletics.
113. Man's tendency to form cliques.
114. "Captains of Industry" as world forces.
115. The aspirations of youth.
116. The future of South Africa.
117. Is this a prosaic age?
118. An ideal system of national education.
119. The "bonus system" in business concerns.
120. The caricaturist as an illustrator of contemporary history.

121. Discuss the present day truth of Adam Smith's statement that we are a nation of shopkeepers.
122. "The world which credits what is done
Is cold to all that might have been."
123. The Hooligan problem: suggest a remedy.
124. The gambling evil.
125. The superficiality of modern reading.
126. The ideal business man.
127. Arbitration *versus* war.
128. A forecast of aerial navigation.
129. Municipal theatres.
130. An ideal dictionary.
131. Ruskin as an economist.
132. "This fine old world of ours is but a child
Yet in the go-cart." (*Tennyson*).
133. Old friends are best.
134. Heroes in everyday life.
135. Modern surgery.
136. Should railways be owned by the State?
137. Empire and Naval Power.
138. Ought the colonies to be represented in the Home Parliament?
139. The fickleness of public opinion.
140. Is the British race deteriorating physically?
141. "The man in the street": who is he, and what place does he occupy in the economy of the nation?
142. Do museums fulfil their objects?
143. The ethics of Modern Society.
144. Examine the evil consequences of allowing one's life to run in a groove.
145. The Almighty Dollar!
146. The army reservist and his influence upon the labour market.
147. "Two of a trade seldom agree."
148. The modern lady novelist.
149. The manysidedness of a 20th century workman's life contrasted with his grandfather's.
150. True patriotism.
151. "Yellow Journalism."
152. The evils of child labour and the uses of the Factory Acts.
153. Literary landmarks of the 19th century.
154. The probable impressions of a Chinaman on visiting England for the first time.
155. An Imperial Customs-Union.
156. The economy of Nature.
157. Diplomacy and its subterfuges.
158. The distribution of rainfall: causes and effects thereof.
159. The ethics of business.
160. Hardships entailed by a severe winter.
161. Labour organisations: their effects upon industry.
162. What is "will-power?"
163. "Order is Heaven's first law."
164. Cosmopolitan London.
165. The tyranny of fashion.

166. Past reputations: their influence upon a man's after career.
167. Discuss the statement that most professions are overcrowded.
168. Compare the Elizabethan and Victorian eras.
169. The business side of Parliament.
170. Lost opportunities seldom recur.
171. Popular superstitions.
172. Egotism.
173. The study of hygiene as a preventive of disease.
174. True self-culture: of what does it consist?
175. Modern Art.
176. The Colonial Policy of the Great Powers.
177. "If all the year were playing holidays,
To sport would be as tedious as to work."
178. "Back to the land": a catchword or a truism?
179. "Press not a falling man too far." (*Shakspeare:* "Henry VIII.")
180. Discuss the meaning of Plato's statement that "Man is a two-legged animal without feathers."
181. Biography as a key to history.
182. The Industrial Revolution of the 18th century.
183. "Young men think old men fools, and old men know young men to be so." (*Camden.*)
184. Examine the assertion that "A successful parliamentary career depends upon how far a man has acquired the art of political lying."
185. The study of experimental science as a factor in human well-being.
186. Write an imaginary dialogue between one of Nelson's captains and the commander of a 20th century ironclad.
187. Modern organisation of industry.
188. Causes affecting the growth of large towns.
189. "Characters never change. Opinions alter—characters are only developed." (*Disraeli.*)
190. Outline a week's walking tour in any part of England noted for its beautiful scenery.
191. Compare the constitutions of England and the United States of America.
192. Naval warfare of the future.
193. "Satire should, like a polished razor keen,
Wound with a touch that's scarcely felt or seen."
194. The effect of the Suez Canal upon our trade with the East Indies.
195. Compare modern methods of travelling with those in vogue one hundred years ago.
196. "Second thoughts are best." Examine, and if possible, refute this saying.
197. The respective advantages and disadvantages of an active and a contemplative life.
198. Write a short biography of the person you consider to have rendered most service to his fellow-men during the 19th century, and give adequate reasons for your choice.
199. Bank Holidays: their place in modern life.
200. "The moon looks
On many brooks,
The brook can see no moon but *this*." (*Moore.*)

§ 70. *Brief notes for outline essays.* Having selected the title, look at your subject from every point of view, and jot down suggestive "heads" for possible lines of thought. If writing upon "*Organisation*," the following notes might suggest themselves—

(*a*) Politics. Good and evil side. Examples.
(*b*) Industry. Trade Unionism. Division of Labour.
(*c*) Nature.
(*d*) Reforms, etc. secured—slave trade, corn laws, etc.

At the outset do not trouble about the order in which you write these notes. You can afterwards number and draft them into an outline scheme, thus—

(1) *Introduction.*
(2) "*Applications*" (*a*, ***b***, ***c***).
(3) *Evil side.*
(4) *Conclusion.*

(See § 71 for more extended outline essay.)

In *practice* it is an excellent plan to expand the draft considerably, in a manner similar to our "*outline essays*," but during an actual examination of course time will not permit this. Careful preliminary drilling, however, will enable the writer to make his outline mentally with ease and rapidity from a few brief headings. Personally we consider such practice in constructing outline essays one of the most important parts of a course of training in composition.

Most people can say something about topics of general interest, but comparatively few can readily and quickly arrange their ideas in logical sequence; but, other things being equal, a methodically arranged essay at once creates a favourable impression upon the examiner. In this connection note the directions of the Civil Service Commissioners: "Your composition should fill at least two pages, but it will be valued according to the quality rather than the quantity" This is evidently intended to deter candidates from handing in several pages of hastily written and disconnected paragraphs.

§ 71. Outline Essays.

(1) Organisation (*see* § 70 *for scheme of brief notes and* § 72 *for finished essay*).

(1) *Introduction:* Organisation plays a prominent part in every walk of life—without method little can be achieved.

(2) *Applications of Organisation in*

(*a*) *Political World:* (1) Efficient organisation more important than numerical strength in ensuring success of ministry or party; (2) Party welfare must overshadow individual ambition. Illustrate from political history.

(*b*) *Industry:* Organisation seen amongst both employers and employed. Refer to (1) Management of a large business—meaning of term "captains of industry;" (2) "Trusts," "combines," etc.; (3) Trade unionism; (4) "Division of labour."

(*c*) *Nature:* (1) Animals uniting to repel common enemy; (2) Division of labour—ants; hive of bees; beavers' dam across stream; wolves hunting in packs, with leader, etc.

(3) *Evil Side:* (1) Alliance of powerful states to crush weak and inoffensive neighbour; (2) When trade organisations cause general strike for trivial reasons; (3) Secret Societies of middle ages, etc.; (4) Corsican vendetta carried on for several generations; (5) Thugs of India, etc.

(4) *Conclusion*

> "It is excellent
> To have a giant's strength; but it is tyrannous
> To use it like a giant."

(2) PERSECUTION AIDS THE CAUSE IT ATTACKS.

I. A brief—four or five lines—paraphrase of the text and an indication of how wide or how narrow will be the scope of the present paper.

II. How true it is! Instances from history—not confined to English History — such as the Swiss by Austria, the Roundheads under Charles I. and the Netherlands by Spain may be quoted.

III. Why does persecution aid the cause it attacks? The half-hearted fall away, the faithful are knit more closely together, their sufferings and their faith awaken thought and enlist sympathy, and in time they become a majority.

IV. Persecution cannot be justified. It results from ignorance, selfishness, bigotry. It is not punishment which aims at preventing crime, for it provokes retaliation and dulls the moral sense. Note the acts of the Russian Nihilists in this connection.

V. It can assist a bad cause as easily and naturally as a good one; wherefore punish a political offender or a crazy agitator, but do not make a martyr of him.

(3) THE ADVANTAGES AND DISADVANTAGES OF DEMOCRATIC GOVERNMENT.

I. Definition of Democratic or Representative Government:—"Government OF the people, BY the people, FOR the people." (LINCOLN.)

Instances—

- (*a*) *Qualified* democracy; manhood suffrage not granted (as in Great Britain).
- (*b*) *Absolute* democracy implies universal suffrage, as in U.S.A. and in France.

II. *Advantages—*

- (*a*) All sections of the community may safeguard their own interests: evils of oligarchy avoided.
- (*b*) A nation of *men*, not automata subject to the caprices of an erratic despot.

III. *Disadvantages—*

- (*a*) Tendency towards the "tyranny of the majority," and to sudden frenzies, *e.g.* French Revolution, American "War Fever" against Spain, and the Monroe Doctrine.
- (*b*) The end of democracies often militarism—*e.g.* Napoleon I. in France.

IV. *Conclusion—*

> "For forms of government let fools contest,
> Whate'er is best administered is best."

Paraphrase and comment upon these words.

(4) ARE POLAR EXPEDITIONS WORTH THE HARDSHIPS AND SACRIFICES INVOLVED.

I. Dwell upon the primary objects of Polar expeditions (*a*) Scientific investigation; (*b*) The discovery of a "North West Passage" to India. The former aim has been in part attained, the latter has been found useless. Why?

II. Note that new lands and seas have been discovered, information obtained about Arctic flora and fauna (specify species peculiar to these regions). Knowledge of phenomena connected with icebergs, ocean currents, weather conditions, etc., has been enlarged.

It has been demonstrated that these frozen lands are practically useless for agricultural and pastoral purposes, and for mining. Why?

Ice impedes navigation, so useless from commercial point of view.

III. Is the main result (furtherance of scientific knowledge) generally utilitarian or merely for the benefit of the few? Material and social results practically nil.

IV. Note names of prominent Arctic explorers, and briefly allude to one or two interesting facts connected with any of them which throw into relief hardships undergone or sacrifices involved: (*e.g.* Franklin, Markham, Nansen, etc.)

V. Deprecate expeditions undertaken for the sake of notoriety or record-breaking.

What good would follow the discovery of the North Pole it is difficult to see if we look at it in a purely economic light.

(5) THE DIFFICULTIES OF THE "CONCERT OF EUROPE."

I. What is the concert of Europe? The attainment of peace by mutually cordial relations amongst the Great Powers. (Britain, Russia, Germany, France, Italy, Austria.)

II. Note the following factors which act and react one upon another:—

(*a*) Triple alliance between Germany, Italy, and Austria.
(*b*) Dual ,, ,, France and Russia.
(*c*) The "splendid isolation" of Britain, who has the active support of her colonies, the passive good-will of the United States, and latterly the alliance with Japan.

Note that in Africa Britain becomes involved in all the difficulties which beset a Continental nation.

III. Each ally must shape its policy to avoid (*a*) running counter to the interests of its partners; (*b*) dragging them into a conflict from which they would derive no material advantage, and so would afford but half-hearted support.

Necessary to guard against the existence of secret treaties between nations outwardly anything but friends.

IV. Historical sketch and references (very brief).

- (*a*) Elizabeth and support accorded to Protestant Hollanders.
- (*b*) Failure of Henry VII.'s and James I.'s schemes for foreign alliances. Why?
- (*c*) Wars of Spanish Succession and Austrian Succession.
- (*d*) Great Napoleonic War (sub-divisions and after effects).
- (*e*) Crimean War and later Russo-Turkish conflict.
- (*f*) Franco-German War of 1870.
- (*g*) Anglo-Boer War. Why did not foreign nations intervene?

"Concert" rests with so-called Great Powers. Smaller ones of less account, though they *may* be causes of a struggle, as witness Greece in 1820, Turkey in 1854.

(6) MEN, NOT WALLS, MAKE A CITY.

I. Walls are merely the shell.

Ruins in Assyria, Yucatan, Peru, Mashonaland, once doubtless the centres of busy communities, now almost forgotten. Why? Because they have fallen below the margin of cultivation or production, and their inhabitants have disappeared.

Note the former glories of Greece and Rome—unspeakable monuments of past civilisations confront the traveller on every hand, but may we not compare them with "a last year's nest from which the birds have flown?" Many a "mushroom" city and diggers' camp in the United States and other "new" lands now more important from a commercial point of view.

II Note causes contributing to the decay of a place—

- (*a*) Weakening of a nation and loss of its trade. (Spain.)
- (*b*) Transference of a staple industry elsewhere. (Capture of English silk manufacture by France to the detriment of towns like Macclesfield, Coventry, etc.).
- (*c*) New industrial and economic conditions. (Bristol, Venice, Genoa.)
- (*d*) Loss of temporary attraction, such as exhaustion of gold supply in neighbourhood. (Mushroom townships in California and Australia.)

III. Commerce the sheet-anchor of countries and cities. Man the motive power which moves the wheels of commercial life—his are the actions which go to make the city great—when he can no longer profitably pursue his avocations in one spot, he seeks another, and his former field of action loses its prosperity.

Compare "*The City*" on a Bank Holiday with its usual busy aspect.

(7) ADVANTAGES AND DISADVANTAGES THAT WOULD FOLLOW THE ADOPTION OF A UNIVERSAL LANGUAGE.

I. NOTE.—English the language of commerce, French of diplomacy, German of science, etc.

II. *Advantages*—

(*a*) *Commercial:* Intercourse between nations easier; no necessity for the rising generation to spend their best years in the acquisition of foreign languages; wider field for the merchant's energies.

(*b*) *Social:* Tendency to promote the "brotherhood of nations" by sweeping away alien methods of thought; exchange of ideas as depicted in literature; better understanding possible; note possible effects on travel and travellers.

(*c*) *Political:* Possible absorption of smaller and weaker countries by more powerful neighbours, and ultimate development of the world into one huge republic—a modern Utopia. Less likelihood of war.

III. *Disadvantages*—

(*a*) *Commercial:* Tendency to promote the "trust system:" great financiers of one country would have more opportunities for controlling the industries of another; centralisation of industries; ultimate congregation of particular industries in particular localities; commercial extinction of the weaker peoples.

(*b*) *Social:* Decay of patriotism—still Slav, still Teuton, but Russian and German only in name; history of the past would become a dead letter. As with the classics of Rome and Greece, the rich literature of the more cultivated nations would become the monopoly of a few scholars, and (paradox of paradoxes) it would be necessary for Englishmen to learn a new language before they could enjoy Shakspeare.

(*c*) *Political:* Tendency to develop into a few powerful Commonwealths would greatly foster local discontent, there would be more Finlands and Irelands than those inhabited by Finns and Irish; legislation would become difficult and cumbersome.

(8) 'TIS DARKEST BEFORE DAWN.

I. *A simile from Nature.* Give the metaphorical and literal meanings. Compare with the proverb: "There is a silvery lining to every cloud."

II. *Parallel in Nature.* Severity and bleakness of Winter followed by the beauties of Spring. Thunderstorm succeeded by refreshing coolness. Land "in fallow" the forerunner of luxuriant crops.

III. *Applications to everyday life.* An epidemic may suggest more efficient sanitary measures. An outbreak of fire in a school, theatre, etc., may bring into prominence hitherto unnoticed defects in similar buildings. A scientist's apparently hopeless failures may suggest new and successful lines of thought to himself or to others.

IV. *Historical references.*

(1) Marian persecution and comparative toleration of Elizabeth.

(2) England's "splendid isolation," followed by final success in the Napoleonic wars.

(3) The Mutiny of 1857 inaugurated era of Crown government and domestic reform in India.

(4) Instance Anglo-Boer War of 1899-1902.

V. *Conclusion.* "All things work together for good."

(9) THE EVOLUTION OF IMPERIALISM.

I. *Definition of "Imperialism."* Should be something more than a catch-word of political parties.

Note and comment upon words Cowper puts into the mouth of Boadicea:

> "Regions Cæsar never knew
> Thy posterity shall sway."

II. *Historical sketch.*

(*a*) Welding together of tribal states the genesis of a world-wide empire. Expansion of Saxon Heptarchy into *one* kingdom. Next note so-called "domination of England" over Ireland, Wales, and Scotland in reigns of Henry II., Edward I., etc. Was it real and lasting?

(N.B.—Such references should be *very* brief, and should not occupy more than five or six lines.)

(*b*) Rise of England as a sea power under Elizabeth tended to exalt her from sixth-rate European state to a front rank amongst world Powers.

(*c*) First American colonies, rise of East India Company, and struggle with the French in America and Asia; loss of American colonies a check to "Imperialism;" colonisation of Australia and "opening out" of Africa in 19th century.

Formation of Dominion of Canada and Australian Federation.

Note names of men prominent as empire builders or imperialists — Raleigh, Clive, Hastings, Rhodes, Chamberlain.

(*d*) Comparative modernity of imperialistic idea. Existence and importance of colonies not fully recognised until the later Victorian era.

(1) *Advantages*, (2) *Disadvantages*, *of Imperialism.*

Advantages.	Disadvantages.
Commercially. Strategically, As means of strength.	Sometimes urged that important Colonial questions are apt to outweigh those of domestic nature.
Fields for emigration.	Necessity for larger army and navy, hence increased taxation of Mother country.

§ 72. *Model Essays.*

(1) Organisation.

There is hardly any walk of life in which organisation does not play a prominent part. Whether an undertaking be great or small, it will shew equally unsatisfactory results if method is ignored by those responsible for its accomplishment.

Organisation figures in the forefront of the political battle, which is the life-blood of government by party. The followers of a powerful ministry, the chatterers of a noisy minority, the members of a clique which pursues one object to the exclusion of all others, those selfish chasers of the political butterfly, are all bound to their respective leaders by the chains of organisation. He who deserts his cause and his leader, even for what he believes are substantial and conscientious reasons, meets the cold, disdainful glances of his former colleagues, and if not inwardly despised is generally received with distrust and misgiving by his former opponents. Still, there are exceptions to every rule, and in this respect political history is not without its paradoxes.

In the industrial world, too, we meet with organisation on every side. Compare the highly organised business undertakings of the civilised world with the erratic barterings of savage tribes—and the presence and absence of method will be at once apparent. Organisation in its most advanced form is seen in the composition of the huge "Trusts," "Syndicates," etc., about which so much has been heard of late. Modern "merchant princes" are sometimes termed "captains of industry," because their position seems analogous to that of the commander of an army; they merely outline the general operations, leaving the details to be filled in by subordinates. The simile of a machine is self-evident—everyone has his special place and work, deviation from which would put the whole concern out of joint, as assuredly as the loosening of a tiny screw would affect the accuracy of the most delicate chronometer. But organisation is not confined to the higher rungs of the industrial ladder, and there are few civilised countries where we do not see labourers uniting in Trades' Unions to cope with the combines of the capitalist, the joint aim (and frequently airy ideal) being that a fair day's work may command a fair day's wage.

Again, suppose a heavy weight has to be raised and transported to a distance. We may have ten men at our disposal. Let them, one after another, attempt the task, and as each grows tired, let a colleague take his place. But there is no result; the weight has not been moved a hair's breadth. Now organise. Let them all work together, and simultaneously exert their strength. The mass moves and the work is done. What mere unorganised labour could never have accomplished is easily susceptible to a united effort.

Next consider the lower animals. Many of these wander in herds, and find immunity from harm in mere numbers. Such are the elephant, bison, deer, and wild horse. Flocks of swallows have been known to unite to assist an injured mate and to drive away a common enemy, and the same thing is recorded of storks and weasels. We have excellent examples of organisation in the division of labour with which ants perform their work, or in the building of dams across streams by beavers. Wolves often hunt in packs under the direction of one animal, and by organised effort accomplish what would be individually impossible.

Organisation exists primarily to exert and to repel force. The national army and navy are maintained to ensure our safety against foreign aggression; and secondly to uphold and enforce the recognition of national rights and dignity. Here, too, strength lies not in numbers alone, but in organisation, for a small, well-organised army has frequently defeated a worse-trained though numerically stronger one. For instances we need not go outside our own "little wars."

There is much of good in organisation, but not a few evils have been traced to the same agency. It should be remembered that power and force result from organisation, whether the aim be good or bad. True, it is to be hoped that a bad cause will not be so greatly favoured as a good one, that the ultimate force will be less powerful through lack of numbers, and through the dissensions of the less unconscientious. Still, in spite of these considerations, a malevolent working power may long remain, as witness the French "Reign of Terror," or the pro-slavery tendencies of Englishmen.

It is pleasant to see a vast multitude, all striving to attain the same praiseworthy object—something conducive to the material benefit of mankind, some social reform or outcry for liberty and justice. No earnest student of men and things will decry the movements which resulted in parliamentary reform, the abolition of capital punishment for trivial offences, the attainment of free trade or of efficient national education. Yet all these have been the result of carefully-planned and well-organised effort on the part of their promoters, not apparent perhaps to the casual observer, but none the less sure for that.

Organisation is a highly dangerous weapon in the hands of the unscrupulous and unskilled. A child who has seized a sharp edged tool often obtains a serious self-inflicted wound therefrom, and similar experience awaits organisations of the ignorant and wilful. Such will frequently use their power unworthily to obtain personal benefits, to coerce the weak, or to crush their private enemies. Examples may be seen in the alliances of savage chieftains, or in the machinations of corrupt and demagogic oligarchies.

Organisations must always inflict some pain, for even if their aim be utility and general good, it is impossible to conceive a case of righting wrong without inflicting some suffering upon those who oppose such movements. A parent's chastisement causes a child some physical pain, the object of which is afterwards seen to be beneficial. Still, the organised many should have some consideration for the weaker few. Given power, and a good cause, let all organisations earnestly seek to add generosity to these qualities. Let them remember that our greatest poet has said:

> ". . . . . . It is excellent
> To have a giant's strength; but it is tyrannous
> To use it like a giant."

(2) HOW FAR IS THE PURSUIT OF WEALTH THE CAUSE OF HUMAN IMPROVEMENT?

That civilisation rests upon a purely material basis is a self-evident proposition. Our well-being is ultimately a question of what we eat and drink, wherewith we are clothed and sheltered, and with what appliances we seek to avail ourselves of the resources of Nature.

It is clear, therefore, without in any way adopting the standpoint of economics, that there is a necessary and inseparable connection between civilisation and "wealth," for we give that collective name to the sum of our material resources.

Without wealth, a community, like an individual, is incapable of attaining any great degree of enjoyment. A severe and incessant struggle for the necessaries of existence leaves no opportunity for the pursuit of those things that minister to increased comfort and enjoyment. The most obvious characteristic of savages is their poverty and consequent incapacity to improve their conditions of existence. In every civilisation that has appeared on the earth, man has become absorbed in the pursuit of wealth, and the attainment of wealth has, in turn, augmented his possibilities of improvement.

When we turn to history we perceive that those nations which were most civilised, in which the conditions of existence were safest and pleasantest, had raised themselves to a position of superiority by their success in agriculture, commerce and mechanical invention; then, having become richer than their neighbours, they turned their attention to the useful and the fine arts, to literature, to the pursuit of knowledge, and all that enriches and ennobles life.

It is the same with the individual to-day. The rich man's leisure enables him to become active in these civilising and improving pursuits, and inherited wealth, securing its possessors from interruption by the needs of the day, renders a cumulative culture possible; while the lower orders, under the necessity of supplying daily wants by daily toil, cannot make any direct and visible contribution to that culture.

So much for the direct and obvious connection; there are, however, other ways in which the pursuit of wealth contributes to human improvement. It builds up, as we know, an elaborate structure of civilised society; to maintain that structure, its members must be able to meet the exacting demands made upon them by its magnitude and complexity. Thus, their pursuit of wealth not only calls forth their energies in erecting the fabric, but also in maintaining its stability. And whereas material energies are mostly required in the former process, moral energies are requisite for the latter. Savages cannot carry on the civilisation of a land they over-run, and a spendthrift cannot keep his inheritance. In short, the pursuit of wealth is the essence of the civilising process, calling out men's energies, physical, mental and moral, visibly improving the sum of their conditions, and is necessary for the progress of that improvement. It is now seen that wherever and whenever men have forsaken this object, as, under the pressure of certain ideals of conduct of life, many men forsook it in mediæval Europe—they have been mistaken and have strayed from the path of human improvement.

Yet the case against the pursuit of wealth is a weighty one. Excluding from our survey such results of its crude pursuit as murder, rapine, and the phenomena of barbarism, we are still face to face with an appalling mass of human misery. That cursed thirst has been the cause of unimaginable suffering all through the ages, for it has been the chief stimulus of man's inhumanity to man. It has been denounced by poet, prophet, and philosopher as the worst and deadliest bane of humanity, as the root of all evils. It has taken myriad shapes in all places, at all times, and has been a perennial cause of most of the evils that have afflicted and retarded mankind, until we now talk of the "cruelty of civilisation!"

The elaborate pursuit of wealth, as distinguished from the crude methods above-mentioned, involves a subtle demoralisation in the best. It intensifies greed, ambition, and injustice in all others. It absorbs a man's best energies, making him oblivious of all that is best and highest in life. Devotion to money-making becomes a passion, implying the rejection (as far as conscious observance goes) of the religious, ethical, and spiritual elements of our nature and eats, like a canker, into the very heart of a nation. The alarming tendencies now being manifested by the chief nations of the world are almost wholly inspired by an excessive attention to the pursuit of wealth.

(3) INDIVIDUALISM AS A MEANS OF EDUCATION AND OF SUCCESS IN LIFE.

In order that we may clearly understand this important and interesting subject, it is necessary that we should define the exact meaning both of Individualism and of Education. By "Individualism" we mean that influence, that power, that almost magnetic attraction which everybody possesses in a more or less marked degree. By "Education" is meant the drawing out from a person of that knowledge and power which lies latent within him. Education means primarily, as its derivation proves, "drawing out," and not, as is often erroneously supposed, "pouring in."

Now, regarding education from the correct point of view, it is evident almost at first sight that Individualism is one of the greatest educational forces of all time. It is true both from the moral and scholastic standpoints. A child's character depends very largely upon its upbringing, and on those by whom it is surrounded in childhood. The morals imbibed during youth may, it is true, be obliterated in maturer years by the influence of other individuals, but can never be entirely eradicated by mere book-learning. "Like father, like son," is an old and well-worn saying. In many cases it would be more correct to say "Like nurse, like child." As regards scholastic education, from their own experience most people can bear witness to the powers of Individualism. In learning any subject much depends on the personality of the teacher. It is not eloquence, nor cleverness, nor conciseness which makes a teacher successful. A person with very little knowledge may be a successful teacher, while a most learned person may fail to impart even the rudiments of his knowledge.

It might be imagined that as a person advances from boyhood to manhood, and becomes more able to act and think for himself, the Individualism of others would cease to influence him. Such, however, is not the case. A man of striking personality and character impresses all with whom he comes into contact, and it frequently happens that our susceptibility to this influence increases as we grow older.

It is interesting to compare the influence of a strong man's Individualism upon the public with that exerted by the Press. The Press influences many different people, but usually only slightly; an individual has possibly a more limited field of action, but he can profoundly impress those with whom he is surrounded. A striking article by a great politician in a newspaper would reach many, but influence few; a speech by him on the same subject would reach fewer people, but upon them it would create a profound impression. This is why, in all schemes for raising the social standard of the poorer population and in similar projects, so much individual help is required. The masses are composed of individuals with free wills, and they are more likely to be reached by the concrete personality of a man than by the abstract exhortations of a society or organisation.

Looking at the history of past centuries, one cannot help being struck by the influence individuals have exerted. Indeed, "History" is made by individual men. Napoleon, who made much of the European history for so many years, was one of those whose individualism was felt by all around him. The guiding brain of a single man—Alfred the Great—was mainly responsible for moulding a congeries of petty states into the germ of a mighty Empire—our own. The strong individuality of men like Peter the Hermit and Martin Luther has caught the enthusiasm of thousands and initiated religious movements world-wide in their effects. It is to Mahomet as an individual rather than to Mahomedanism as a creed that millions of dusky-skinned devotees are drawn. In literature it is the same; a book which, published anonymously, would have very little chance of success, is bought by thousands when a favourite author's name appears on the title-page. Apart from any intrinsic merit, it is the writer's personality which attracts readers. In not a few instances, the individuality of one man has laid the foundation and built the success of colossal business enterprises—as typical present day examples one cannot do better than mention the names of Newnes, Lipton, or Morgan.

And so will it continue. Men who have succeeded in the past, and will succeed in the future, are those who have a striking personality of their own. This personality, possibly latent in early youth. is drawn out by education and steadily develops as maturity is attained.

(4) NATIONAL LITERATURE AS REFLECTING NATIONAL CHARACTER.

Who can say where the source of a nation's literature or of its life lies? Travellers tell us that a mighty river frequently has its beginning in a brooklet of clear water hundreds of miles from the spot where it is navigable for the largest vessels. We have wondered that so great an end should have so small a beginning, and so we must marvel that such great powers as national literature and national character should begin and end in things so small and weak as men. The surroundings of Nature may perhaps influence this character, but they can never make it.

The origin of national character is at present veiled in the deepest mystery. Englishmen, rejoicing in a bracing climate and an insular position, have become energetic and hardy. People located in similar places have like wants, and not altogether dissimilar tastes. History shews us that hardy northern races, after conquering the more effete peoples of a warmer clime, intermingle with them and in the course of a few generations adopt most of their characteristics and customs, until a stronger tribe appears upon the scene and they in turn pass from the position of rulers to ruled.

In all but the most uncivilised communities the character of the people must find an outlet through which to assert itself, and that outlet is the national literature. Coming then, from energetic men, can we expect to see other than bold free thoughts? With nation and with literature it is a case of the "survival of the fittest." First to his family, then to his friends, and lastly to his fellow-countrymen, an individual breathes his thoughts. These will live or die by the verdict of his contemporaries and of posterity, and, if they survive, will form a link in the great chain of national literature.

How truly the literature of a country portrays its character may readily be seen. Take, for instance, Scott and Burns as the poets of Scotland. In their light, sympathetic verse, both have painted to the life the nature-loving Scotsman, to whom no sight is so welcome as the hills, the lakes, and the wild rustic fastnesses of his childhood. Take too, an example from England. When the character of the nation was influenced by the Puritan revival, the result was stamped on the national literature in the greatest work of that great poet Milton. He produced his "Paradise Lost" at the time when the noble and simple character of the Puritans was seen in its greatest strength. In like manner, towards the dawn of our literature, when religion and warfare were the Alpha and Omega of the early Englishman, the subjects of literary productions were biblical or warlike. Later, when thought and culture began to be the characteristics of the intellectual Briton, the masterpieces of our literature bear the impress of scholarship and grace.

Character must produce its results, and as literary work proceeds, the author's character and that of his fellows is reproduced on its pages. A man does not—and cannot—keep his opinions to himself. His influence, whether for good or ill, must be felt by those around him. If a picture be painted badly and form an imperfect representation of the object, it is disliked and forgotten. To such a fate is consigned a collection of thoughts which does not find a chord of similar pitch in the hearts of the writer's countrymen. A work which differs from the national character finds its reward in oblivion. In other words, the public knows what it likes and wants. True, an unaccountable wave of sudden frenzy may surround ephemeral inanities with a halo of meteor-like popularity. But, as in the world of Nature, the effect of a meteor, though dazzling while it lasts, is of short duration. The dominant national characteristic is bound to reassert itself in its likes and dislikes. Richardson's novels, well as they sold in their own day, are practically unread in ours.

As national literature is produced by the spontaneous outpourings of those sentiments which make up the national character, so it remains as a monument of the past as well as a mirror of the present, sustaining that character to which it owes so much of its life. When the Britons, beaten on all sides by the Roman legions, were despairing of success, the verses and legends of the bards raised their drooping spirits, and little progress could the Romans make until those brave minstrels were slaughtered amid the groves of Mona. In later times, inspired by similar strains, a fierce frenzy laid hold of the Welsh and Scotch mountaineers, and they sallied out to devote life and limb to the cause they loved. Their literature told them they had long been free, and free now, they still celebrate in stirring, unshackled lines the old stories of how their fathers fought and died for liberty. And so all the world over. From the remotest ages national character first imprinted itself on the national literature which afterwards sustained the character that produced it.

Note on Construction of Paragraphs.

A paragraph is a connected series of sentences developing some idea or topic, and, on a small scale, possesses many of the attributes which should distinguish an essay; indeed, we might well term it an essay *within* an essay. Paragraphs must be neither too long nor too short, but their main essential is *unity of ideas;* in other words, prominence must be given to the main topic of the paragraph, and nothing introduced which does not bear upon this. Again, your reader must be made to feel this central idea instinctively, and the current of thought leading up to it must not be broken or turned aside by extraneous details. Sentence should follow sentence naturally and logically, each one helping to amplify and make clearer ideas expressed by the previous sentences. Relation between sentence and sentence should be shown by careful use of conjunctional words and phrases, by construction, and by punctuation. Sometimes the *suspended paragraph* (similar in purport to the "suspended sentence," for which see *p.* 27), tends to relieve monotony of composition by not revealing the main topic until its close. Care should be taken that the opening and the closing of paragraphs are not weak. The opening, if possible, should show connection of ideas with the preceding paragraph and may take the form of *interrogation*, *repetition*, or some other rhetorical device; the closing sentence, to be forceful, must not only show good rhythm, but should drive home the argument by epigram, denial, or a well chosen quotation.

CHAPTER IX.

PARAPHRASING.

§ 73. *Introductory.* Diverse opinions exist as to the educational value of paraphrasing, which means to express in our own words the substance of some given piece of prose or verse. Some may urge that there are not two correct or excellent ways of expressing a single thought; they say one way gives the exact meaning, the other does not. No doubt this is true in the main, but it must be borne in mind that the purpose of a paraphrase is to give the *substance* of the passage in as few words as possible. It does not aim at improving the author's wording; it seeks to give you a bird's-eye view of what he says. In fact, it is analogous to the précis of a number of letters. [Note the difference between a brief *analysis*—giving a bare outline of the writer's thoughts—and a more extended paraphrase.]

§ 74. *Hints for paraphrasing.*

(1) Read through the extract two or three times, and see that you thoroughly grasp the author's meaning. In this do not lose sight of his style. It would be obviously out of place to paraphrase Milton in the style of a Dan Leno. We have it on the authority of Matthew Arnold that he once saw Shakspeare's words in *Macbeth:*

> "Canst thou not minister to a mind diseased?"

paraphrased as

> "Canst thou not wait upon a lunatic?"

(2) Endeavour to grasp the "general" meaning of the piece (*e.g.* in Extract II. this may be taken to be "Poverty a crippler of independent action"), and thence evolve a concise and pithy précis of the writer's words.

(3) Avoid all superfluities, florid figures of speech, and poetic diction. Sometimes it may be necessary to retain a phrase in its entirety, there being only one way of adequately expressing the meaning without descending to comparatively weak language, *e.g.* you could not very well alter

> "Who steals my purse, steals trash."

It is a somewhat vexed question whether metaphors should be retained or "translated." We advise a middle course. If the metaphor is a striking one—and especially if it is couched in 1st person discourse—reproduce it, *e.g.* Tennyson's

> ". . . . . . . Let thy voice
> Rise like a fountain for me day and night,"

would sound almost ludicrous in any other guise. If it is merely a bombastic metaphorical play upon words, express the literal meaning in straightforward, everyday language, and in as few words as possible. Avoid creating poetic combinations such as "moon-laid," "wave-lapped," etc., or the examiner may think *you* are slightly moonstruck.

(4) Remember you are writing English, and that all we have previously said about composition will apply here. Let your paraphrase consist of brief, but forcible sentences. Use plenty of full stops and shun connectives, relatives, and participles. Do not lose sight of the fact that a paraphrase is simply a translation, and, by the way, translation from a foreign language (French in particular) will help you considerably.

§ 75. *Re the extracts to be paraphrased.*

(*a*) It must be distinctly understood that model solutions are only intended to be a guide as regards *plan.* It is quite conceivable that two paraphrases may gain full marks, and be worded very differently. The main thing is to catch the author's spirit, then it should not be difficult to give his meaning in a few simple words.

(*b*) Notes on the passages for paraphrase are given on *p.* 144, *et seq.* In working an actual examination paper, it is an excellent plan to draw up similar outline notes before paraphrasing the piece. You thus are able more clearly to distinguish important points from subsidiary details, and there is less likelihood of your work being marred by alterations and erasures.

§ 76. *Extracts for practice in paraphrasing.*

I.

O River of Yesterday, with current swift
Through chasms descending, and soon lost to sight,
I do not care to follow in thy flight
The faded leaves, that on thy bosom drift!
O River of To-morrow, I uplift
Mine eyes, and thee I follow, as the night
Wanes into morning, and the dawning light
Broadens, and all the shadows fade and shift!
I follow, follow, where thy waters run
Through unfrequented, unfamiliar fields,
Fragrant with flowers and musical with song;
Still follow, follow; sure to meet the sun,
And confident that what the future yields
Will be the right, unless myself be wrong.
(*Longfellow:* "The Two Rivers.")

II.

The iron rod of penury still compels
Her wretched slave to bow the knee to wealth,
And, poison with unprofitable toil,
A life too void of solace to confirm
The very chains that bind him to his doom.
Nature, impartial in munificence,
Has gifted man with all-subduing will;
Matter, with all its transitory shapes,
Lies subjected and plastic at his feet,
That weak from bondage, tremble as they tread.
How many a rustic Milton has passed by,
Stifling the speechless longings of his heart,
In unremitting drudgery and care!
How many a vulgar Cato has compell'd
His energies, no longer tameless then,
To mould a pin, or fabricate a nail!
How many a Newton, to whose passive ken
Those mighty spheres that gem infinity,
Were only specks of tinsel, fix'd in heaven
To light the midnights of his native town.
(*Shelley:* "Queen Mab.")

III.

Cranmer. . . . . . . " Let me speak, sir,
For heaven now bids me; and the words I utter
Let none think flattery, for they'll find 'em truth.
This royal infant (heaven still move about her!)
Though in her cradle, yet now promises
Upon this land a thousand thousand blessings,
Which time shall bring to ripeness: she shall be
(But few now living can behold that goodness)
A pattern to all princes living with her,
And all that shall succeed: Saba was never
More covetous of wisdom and fair virtue,
Than this pure soul shall be: all princely graces
That mould up such a mighty piece as this is,
With all the virtues that attend the good,
Shall still be doubled on her: truth shall nurse her,
Holy and heavenly thoughts still counsel her.
She shall be lov'd, and fear'd: her own shall bless her:
Her foes shake like a field of beaten corn,
And hang their heads with sorrow: good grows with her:
In her days every man shall eat in safety
Under his own vine, what he plants; and sing
The merry songs of peace to all his neighbours:
God shall be truly known; and those about her
From her shall read the perfect ways of honour,
And by those claim their greatness, not by blood.
Nor shall this peace sleep with her: but as when
The bird of wonder dies, the maiden phœnix,
Her ashes new create another heir,
As great in admiration as herself;
So shall she leave her blessedness to one
(When heaven shall call her from this cloud of darkness),
Who, from the sacred ashes of her honour,
Shall star-like rise, as great in fame as she was,
And so stand fix'd: peace, plenty, love, truth, terror.
That were the servants to this chosen infant,
Shall then be his, and like a vine grow to him;
Wherever the bright sun of heaven shall shine,
His honour, and the greatness of his name,
Shall be, and make new nations: he shall flourish,
And, like a mountain cedar, reach his branches
To all the plains about him:—our children's children
Shall see this, and bless heaven."
King Henry: "Thou speakest wonders."
Cranmer: "She shall be, to the happiness of England,
An aged princess; many days shall see her,
And yet no day without a deed to crown it.

> Would I had known no more! but she must die—
> She must, the saints must have her; yet a virgin,
> A most unspotted lily shall she pass
> To the ground, and all the world shall mourn her."
> (*Shakspeare:* "King Henry VIII.")

These are the prophetic words which Shakspeare puts into the mouth of Archbishop Cranmer at the christening of Princess (afterwards Queen) Elizabeth.

V.

Two men I honour, and no third. First, the toilworn Craftsman that with earth-made Implement laboriously conquers the Earth, and makes her man's. Venerable to me is the hard Hand; crooked, coarse; wherein notwithstanding lies a cunning virtue, indefeasibly royal, as of the Sceptre of this Planet. Venerable too is the rugged face, all weather-tanned, besoiled, with its rude intelligence; for it is the face of a Man living manlike. O, but the more venerable for thy rudeness, and even because we must pity as well as love thee! Hardly-entreated Brother! For us was thy back so bent, for us were thy straight limbs and fingers so deformed: thou wert our Conscript, on whom the lot fell, and fighting our battles wert so marred. For in thee too lay a god-created Form, but it was not to be unfolded; encrusted must it stand with the thick adhesions and defacements of Labour: and thy body, like thy soul, was not to know freedom. Yet toil on, toil on: *thou* art in thy duty, be out of it who may; thou toilest for the altogether indispensable, for daily bread.

A second man I honour, and still more highly: Him who is seen toiling for the spiritually indispensable; not daily bread, but the bread of Life. Is not he too in his duty; endeavouring towards inward Harmony; revealing this, by act or by word, through all his outward endeavours, be they high or low? Highest of all, when his outward and his inward endeavour are one: when we can name him Artist; not earthly Craftsman only, but inspired Thinker, who, with heaven-made Implement conquers Heaven for us! If the poor and humble toil that we have Food, must not the high and glorious toil for him in return, that he have Light, have Guidance, Freedom, Immortality? These two, in all their degrees, I honour; all else is chaff and dust, which let the wind blow whither it listeth.

Unspeakably touching is it, however, when I find both dignities united; and he that must toil outwardly for the lowest of man's wants, is also toiling inwardly for the highest.

(*Carlyle:* "Sartor Resartus.")

V.

It was not by vile loitering in ease
That Greece obtained the brighter palm of art,
That soft yet ardent Athens learned to please,
To keen the wit and to sublime the heart,
In all supreme, complete in every part.
It was not thence majestic Rome arose,
And o'er the nations shook her conquering dart;
For sluggard's brow the laurel never grows,
Renown is not the child of indolent repose.

Had unambitious mortals minded nought,
But in loose joy their time to wear away;
Had they alone the lap of dalliance sought,
Pleased on her pillow their dull heads to lay,
Rude Nature's state had been our state to-day;
No cities o'er their tow'ry fronts had raised,
No arts had made us opulent or gay;
With brother brutes the human race had grazed;
None e'er had soared to fame, none honoured been, none praised.

(*Thomson:* "Castle of Indolence.")

VI.

Look, the world tempts our eye,
And we would know it all.
We map the starry sky,
We mine this earthen ball,
We measure the sea-tides, we number the sea-sands:

We scrutinize the dates
Of long-past human things,
The bounds of effac'd states,
The lines of deceas'd kings:
We search out dead men's words, and works of dead men's hands:

We shut our eyes, and muse
How our own minds are made;
What springs of thought they use,
How righten'd, how betray'd;
And spend our wit to name what most employ unnam'd;

But still, as we proceed,
The mass swells more and more
Of volumes yet to read,
Of secrets yet to explore.
Our hair grows grey, our eyes are dimm'd, our heat is tam'd.

(*Matthew Arnold:* "Empedocles on Etna.")

VII.

A little learning is a dang'rous thing
Drink deep, or taste not the Pierian spring;
There shallow draughts intoxicate the brain,
And drinking largely sobers us again.
Fired at first sight with what the muse imparts,
In fearless youth we tempt the height of arts,
While from the bounded level of our mind,
Short views we take, nor see the lengths behind;
But more advanced, behold with strange surprise,
New distant scenes of endless science rise!
So pleased at first the tow'ring Alps we try,
Mount o'er the vales, and seem to tread the sky,
Th' eternal snows appear already passed,
And the first clouds and mountains seem the last;
But those attained, we tremble to survey
The growing labours of the lengthened way,
Th' increasing prospect tires our wand'ring eyes,
Hills peep o'er hills, and Alps on Alps arise."
(*Pope:* "Essay on Criticism.")

VIII.

On Liberty.
Thee, goddess, thee Britannia's Isle adores:
How has she oft exhausted all her stores,
How oft in fields of death thy presence sought,
Nor thinks the mighty prize too dearly bought!
On foreign mountains, may the sun refine
The grape's soft juice, and mellow it to wine,
With citron groves adorn a distant soil,
And the fat olive swell with floods of oil.
We envy not the warmer clime, that lies
In ten degrees of more indulgent skies,
Nor at the coarseness of our heaven repine,
Though o'er our heads the frozen Pleiads shine,
'Tis Liberty that crowns Britannia's Isle,
And makes her barren rocks and her bleak mountains shine.
(*Addison:* "Letter from Italy.")

IX.

It was about the lovely close of a warm summer day,
There came a gallant merchant ship full sail to Plymouth Bay;
Her crew hath seen Castile's black fleet beyond Aurigny's Isle;
At earliest twilight, on the waves light heaving many a mile.
At sunrise she escaped their van, by God's especial grace;
And the tall Pinta, till the noon, hard held her close in chase.

Forthwith a guard at every gun was placed along the wall;
The beacon blazed along the roof of Edgecumbe's lofty hall;
And many a light fishing bark put out to pry along the coast,
And with loose rein and bloody spur rode inland many a post.
With his white hair unbonneted the stout old sheriff comes;
Behind him march the halberdiers; before him sound the drums;
His yeomen round the market cross make clear an ample space,
And there behoves him to set up the standard of Her Grace.
How heartily the trumpets peal, and gaily dance the bells
As slow upon the labouring wind the royal blazon swells.
Look how the lion of the sea lifts up his ancient crown,
And underneath his deadly paw treads the gay lilies down.
So stalked he when he turned to flight on that famed Picard field
Bohemia's plume and Genoa's bow, and Cæsar's eagle shield;
So glared he when at Agincourt in wrath he turned to bay,
And crushed and torn beneath his paws the princely hunters lay.
Ho! strike the flagstaff deep Sir Knight! Ho! scatter flowers fair maids.
Ho! gunners fire a loud salute! Ho! gallants draw your blades,
Thou sun, shine on her joyously; ye breezes waft her wide;
Our glorious semper eadem, the banner of our pride.
(*Macaulay*; "The Armada.")

X.

Some say that gleams of a remoter world
Visit the soul in sleep—that death is slumber,
And that its shapes the busy thoughts outnumber
Of those who wake and live—I look on high;
Has some unknown omnipotence unfurl'd
The vale of life and death? Or do I lie
In dream, and does the mightier world of sleep
Spread far around and inaccessibly
Its circles? For the very spirit fails,
Driven like a homeless cloud from steep to steep
That vanishes among the viewless gales!
Far, far above, piercing the infinite sky,
Mount Blanc appears—still, snowy, and serene—
Its subject mountains their unearthly forms
Pile around it, ice and rock; broad vales between
Of frozen floods, unfathomable deeps,
Blue as the overhanging heavens, that spread
And wind among the accumulated steeps;
A desert peopled by the storms alone,
Save when the eagle brings some hunter's bone
And the wolf tracks her there—how hideously
Its shapes are heap'd around! Rude, bare, and high,

Ghastly and scarr'd and riven—Is this the scene
Where the old earthquake-demon taught her young
Ruin? Were these their toys? Or did a sea
Of fire envelop once this silent snow?
None can reply—all seems eternal now.
The wilderness has a mysterious tongue
Which teaches awful doubt, or faith so mild,
So solemn, so serene, that men may be
But for such faith with nature reconciled.
(*Shelley:* "Mount Blanc.")

XI.

From this high spring our foreign conquests flow,
  Which yet more glorious triumphs do portend;
Since their commencement to his arms they owe,
  If springs as high as fountains may ascend.

He made us freemen of the Continent,
  Whom Nature did like captives treat before;
To nobler preys the English lion sent,
  And taught him first in Belgian walks to roar.

That old unquestion'd pirate of the land,
  Proud Rome, with dread the fate of Dunkirk heard,
And trembling, wish'd behind more Alps to stand,
  Although an Alexander were her guard.

By his command we boldly cross'd the Line,
  And bravely fought where southern stars arise;
We traced the far-fetch'd gold unto the mine,
  And that which bribed our fathers made our prize.
(*Dryden:* "Heroic Stanzas on the Death of Cromwell.")

XII.

Thrice vanquish'd on the battle-plain,
Thy followers slaughter'd, fled, or ta'en,
A hunted wanderer on the wild,
On foreign shores a man exiled,
Disown'd, deserted, and distress'd,
I bless thee, and thou shalt be bless'd!
Bless'd in the hall and in the field,
Under the mantle as the shield.
Avenger of thy country's shame,
Restorer of her injured fame,
Bless'd in thy sceptre and thy sword,
De Bruce, fair Scotland's rightful Lord,

Bless'd in thy deeds and in thy fame,
What lengthen'd honours wait thy name!
In distant ages, sire to son,
Shall tell thy tale of freedom won,
And teach his infants, in the use
Of earliest speech, to falter Bruce.
(*Scott:* " Lord of the Isles.")

XIII.

My heart aches, and drowsy numbness pains
My sense, as though of hemlock I had drunk,
Or emptied some dull opiate to the drains
One minute past; and Lethewards had sunk;
'Tis not through envy of thy happy lot,
But being too happy in thy happiness—
That thou, light-winged Dryad of the trees
In some melodious plot
Of beechen green, and shadows numberless,
Singest of summer in full-throated ease.

O for a draught of vintage that had been
Cool'd a long age in the deep-delved earth,
Tasting of Flora and the country green,
Dance and Provençal song, and sunburnt mirth!
O for a beaker full of the warm south,
Full and true, the blushful Hippocrene,
With beaded bubbles winking at the brim
And purple-stained mouth,
That I might drink, and leave the world unseen,
And with thee fade away into the forest dim.

Fade far away, dissolve, and quite forget
What thou among the leaves has never known,
The weariness, the fever, and the fret
Here, where men sit and hear each other groan;
Where palsy shakes a few, sad, last grey hairs,
Where youth grows pale, and spectre-thin, and dies.
Where but to think is to be full of sorrow
And leaden-eyed despairs,
Where Beauty cannot keep her lustrous eyes,
Or new Love pine at them behind to-morrow.
(*Keats*: " Ode to a Nightingale."

XIV.

. . . . . Say where greatness lies.
Where but among the heroes and the wise!
Heroes are much the same, the point's agreed,
From Macedonia's Madman to the Swede;

The whole strange purpose of their lives to find,
Or make, an enemy of all mankind!
Not one looks backward, onward still he goes,
Yet ne'er look forward further than his nose.
No less alike the politic and wise;
All sly slow things, with circumspective eyes:
Men in their loose, unguarded hours they take,
Not that themselves are wise, but others weak.
But grant that those can conquer, these can cheat,
'Tis phrase absurd to call a villain great;
Who wickedly is wise, or madly brave,
Is but the more a fool, the more a knave.
Who noble ends by noble means obtains,
Or failing, smiles in exile or in chains,
Like good Aurelius let him reign, or bleed
Like Socrates, that man is great indeed.
(*Pope*: "Essay on Man.")

XV.

Bassanio:
"The world is still deceived with ornament.
In law, what plea so tainted and corrupt,
But, being seasoned with a gracious voice,
Obscures the show of evil? In religion,
What damned error, but some sober brow
Will bless it, and approve it with a text,
Hiding the grossness with fair ornament?
There is no vice so simple, but assumes
Some mark of virtue on his outward parts.
How many cowards, whose hearts are all as false
As stairs of sand, wear yet upon their chins
The beards of Hercules and frowning Mars;
Who, inward search'd, have livers white as milk;
As these assume but valour's excrement
To render them redoubted! Look on beauty,
And you shall see 'tis purchased by the weight;
Which therein works a miracle in nature,
Making them lightest that wear most of it:
So are those crisped snaky golden locks
Which make such wanton gambols with the wind,
Upon supposed fairness, often known
To be the dowry of a second head,
The skull that bred them in the sepulchre.
Thus ornament is but the guiled shore
To a most dangerous sea; the beauteous scarf
Veiling an Indian beauty; in a word
The seeming truth which cunning times put on
To entrap the wisest. Therefore, thou gaudy gold

Hard food for Midas, I will have none of thee;
Nor none of thee, thou pale and common drudge
'Tween man and man: but thou, thou meagre lead,
Which rather threatenest than dost promise aught,
Thy paleness moves me more than eloquence;
And here choose I: joy be the consequence."
(*Shakspeare*: "Merchant of Venice.")

(Bassanio's speech previous to choosing the leaden casket.)

XVI.

K. Hen:
. . . . "O hard condition,
Twin-born with greatness, subject to the breath
Of every fool, whose sense no more can feel
But his own wringing! What infinite heart's-ease
Must kings neglect, that private men enjoy!
And what have kings, that privates have not too,
Save ceremony, save general ceremony?
And what art thou, thou idol ceremony?
What kind of god art thou that suffer'st more
Of mortal griefs than do thy worshippers?
What are thy rents? What are thy comings in?
O ceremony, show me but thy worth!
What is thy soul of adoration?
Art thou aught else but place, degree and form,
Creating awe and fear in other men?
Wherein thou art less happy being fear'd
Than they in fearing.
What drink'st thou oft, instead of homage sweet,
But poison'd flattery? O, be sick, great greatness,
And bid thy ceremony give thee cure!
Think'st thou the fiery fever will go out
With titles blown from adulation?
Will it give place to flexure and low bending?
Canst thou, when thou command'st the beggar's knee,
Command the health of it? No, thou proud dream,
That play'st so subtly with a king's repose;
I am a king that find thee, and I know
'Tis not the balm, the sceptre and the ball,
The sword, the mace, the crown imperial,
The intertissued robe of gold, and pearl,
The farced title running 'fore the king,
The throne he sits on, nor the tide of pomp
That beats upon the high shore of this world,
No, not all these, thrice-gorgeous ceremony
Not all these, laid in bed majestical,
Can sleep so soundly as the wretched slave.

Who with a body fill'd and vacant mind
Gets him to rest, cramm'd with distressful bread;
Never sees horrid night, the child of hell,
But, like a lackey, from the rise to set
Sweats in the eye of Phœbus and all night
Sleeps in Elysium; next day after dawn,
Doth rise and help Hyperion to his horse,
And follows so the ever-running year,
With profitable labour, to his grave:
And but for ceremony, such a wretch,
Winding up days with toil and nights with sleep,
Had the fore-hand and vantage of a king.
The slave, a member of the country's peace,
Enjoys it; but in gross brain little wots
What watch the king keeps to maintain the peace,
Whose hours the peasant best advantages."

(*Shakspeare*: "Henry V.")

(Henry's soliloquy on the field of battle the night preceding Agincourt.)

XVII.

It has been written 'Silence is divine,' and of Heaven, so in all earthly things too there is a silence which is better than any speech. Consider it well, the Event, the thing which can be spoken of and recorded, is it not, in all cases, some disruption, some solution of continuity? Were it even a glad Event, it involves change, involves loss (of active Force); and so far, either in the past or in the present, is an irregularity, a disease. Stillest perseverance were our blessedness; not dislocation and alteration—could they be avoided.

The oak grows silently, in the forest, a thousand years; only in the thousandth year, when the woodman arrives with his axe, is there heard an echoing through the solitudes; and the oak announces itself when, with far-sounding crash, it *falls*. How silent too was the planting of the acorn; scattered from the lap of some wandering wind! Nay, when our oak flowered, or put on its leaves (its glad Events), what shout of proclamation could there be? Hardly from the most observant a word of recognition. These things *befell* not, they were slowly *done;* not in an hour, but through the flight of days: what was to be said of it? This hour seemed altogether as the last was, as the next would be.

It is thus everywhere that foolish Rumour babbles not of what was done, but of what was misdone or undone; and foolish History (ever, more or less, the written epitomised synopsis of Rumour) knows so little that were not as well unknown Attila Invasions, Walter-the-Penniless Crusades, Sicilian Vespers, Thirty-Years Wars: mere sin and misery; not work, but hindrance of work! For the Earth, all this while, was yearly green and yellow with her kind harvests; the hand of the craftsman, the mind of the thinker rested not: and so, after all, and in spite of all, we have this so glorious high-domed blossoming World; concerning which poor History may well ask, with wonder, Whence *it* came? She knows so little of it, knows so much of what obstructed it, what would have rendered it impossible. Such, nevertheless, by necessity or foolish choice, is her rule and practice; whereby, that paradox, 'Happy the people whose annals are vacant,' is not without its true side.

(*Carlyle:* "French Revolution.")

XVIII.

Though a linguist should pride himself to have all the tongues that Babel cleft the world into, yet if he have not studied the solid things in them as well as the words and lexicons, he were nothing so much to be esteemed a learned man, as any yeoman or tradesman competently wise in his mother dialect only. Hence appear the many mistakes which have made learning generally so unpleasing and so unsuccessful; first, we do amiss to spend seven or eight years merely in scraping together so much miserable Latin or Greek as might be learned otherwise easily and delightfully in one year. And that which casts our proficiency therein so much behind, is our time lost partly in too oft idle vacancies given both to schools and universities; partly in a preposterous exaction, forcing the empty wits of children to compose themes, verses, and orations, which are the acts of ripest judgment, and the final work of a head filled by long reading and observing, with elegant maxims and copious invention. These are not matters to be wrung from poor striplings, like blood out of the nose, or the plucking of untimely fruit; besides the ill habit which they get of wretched barbarising against the Latin and Greek idioms with their untutored Anglicisms, odious to be read, yet not to be avoided without a well continued and judicious conversing among pure authors digested, which they scarce taste: whereas, if after some preparatory grounds of speech by their certain forms got into memory, they were led to the praxis thereof in some chosen short book lessoned thoroughly to them, they might then forthwith proceed to learn the substance of good things, and arts in due order, which would bring the whole language quickly into their power. This I take to be the most rational and most profitable way of learning languages. . . . And for the usual method of teaching arts, I deem it to be an old *errour* of universities, not yet well recovered from the scholastic grossness of barbarous ages, that instead of beginning with arts most easy (and those be such as are most obvious to the sense), they present their young unmatriculated novices at first coming with the most intellective abstractions of logic and metaphysics; so that they having but newly left those grammatic flats and shallows where they stuck unreasonably to learn a few words with lamentable construction, and now on the sudden transported under another climate to be tossed and turmoiled with their unballasted wit in fathomless and unquiet deeps of controversy, do for the most part grow into hatred and contempt of learning, mocked and deluded all this while with ragged notions and babblements; while they expected worthy and delightful knowledge; till poverty or youthful years call them importunately their several ways, and hasten them with the sway of friends either to an ambitious and mercenary, or ignorantly zealous divinity; some allured to the trade of law, grounding their purposes not on the prudent and heavenly contemplation of justice and equity, which was never taught them, but on the promising and pleasing thoughts of litigious terms, fat contentions, and flowing fees; others betake themselves to state affairs, with souls so unprincipled in virtue and true generous breeding, that flattery and courtshifts and tyrannous aphorisms appear to them the highest points of wisdom.

(*Milton:* "Of Education.")

XIX.

Let the Past perish!—let darkness shroud it!—let it sleep for ever over the crumbling temples and desolute tombs of its forgotten sons,—if it cannot afford us, from its disburied secrets, a guide for the Present and the Future. What, my Lords, ye have thought that it was for the sake of antiquity alone that we have wasted our nights and days in studying what antiquity can teach us! You are mistaken; it is nothing to know what we have been, unless it is with the desire of knowing that which we ought to be. Our ancestors are mere dust and ashes, save when they speak to our posterity; and then their voices resound, not from the earth below, but the heaven above. There is an eloquence in Memory, because it is the nurse of Hope. There is a sanctity in the Past, but only because of the chronicles it retains.—chronicles of the progress of mankind,—stepping-stones in civilisation, in liberty, and in knowledge. Our fathers forbid us to recede,—they teach us what is our rightful heritage,—they bid us reclaim, they bid us augment, that heritage,—preserve their virtues, and avoid their errors. These are the true uses of the Past. Like the sacred edifice in which we are,—it is a tomb upon which to rear a temple.

(*Lytton:* "Rienzi.")

XX.

We are all inclined to judge of others as we find them. Our estimate of a character always depends much on the manner in which that character affects our own interests and passions. We find it difficult to think well of those by whom we are thwarted or depressed; and we are ready to admit every excuse for the vices of those who are useful or agreeable to us. This is, we believe, one of those illusions to which the whole human race is subject, and which experience and reflection can only partially remove. It is, in the phraseology of Bacon, one of the *idola tribus*. Hence it is that the moral character of a man eminent in letters or in the fine arts is treated, often by contemporaries, almost always by posterity, with extraordinary tenderness. The world derives pleasure and advantage from the performances of such a man. The number of those who suffer by his personal vices is small, even in his own time, when compared with the number of those to whom his talents are a source of gratification. In a few years all those whom he has injured disappear. But his works remain, and are a source of delight to millions. The genius of Sallust is still with us. But the Numidians whom he plundered, and the unfortunate husbands who caught him in their houses at unseasonable hours, are forgotten. We suffer ourselves to be delighted by the keenness of Clarendon's observation, and by the sober majesty of his style, till we forget the oppressor and the bigot in the historian. Falstaff and Tom Jones have survived the gamekeepers whom Shakespeare cudgelled and the landladies whom Fielding bilked. A great writer is the friend and benefactor of his readers; and they cannot but judge of him under the deluding influence of friendship and gratitude. We all know how unwilling we are to admit the truth of any disgraceful story about a person whose society we like, and from whom we have received favours; how long we struggle against evidence, how fondly, when the facts cannot be disputed, we cling to the hope that there may be some explanation or some extenuating circumstance with which we are unacquainted. Just such is the feeling which a man of liberal education naturally entertains towards the great minds of former ages. The debt which he owes to them is incalculable. They have guided him to truth. They have filled his mind with noble and graceful images. They have stood by him in all vicissitudes, comforters in sorrow, nurses in sickness, companions in solitude. These friendships are exposed to no danger from the occurrences by which other attachments are weakened or dissolved. Time glides on; fortune is inconstant; tempers are soured; bonds which seemed indissoluble are daily sundered by interest, by emulation, or by caprice But no such cause can affect the silent converse which we hold with the highest of human intellects. That placid intercourse is disturbed by no jealousies or resentments. These are the old friends who are never seen with new faces, who are the same in wealth and in poverty, in glory and in obscurity. With the dead there is no rivalry. In the dead there is no change. Plato is never sullen. Cervantes is never petulant. Demosthenes never comes unseasonably. Dante never stays too long. No difference of political opinion can alienate Cicero. No heresy can excite the horror of Bossuet.

(*Macaulay :* " Essay on Bacon.")

§ 77. *Model Solutions.*

Perhaps it is as well to commence paraphrasing with single lines or couplets where the thought is not involved, and it is well to remember that most longer passages are merely continuations of such.

A.

You can paraphrase the following couplets from Shakspeare similarly:

(*a*) " The evil that men do lives after them ;
The good is oft interrèd with their bones."

(*b*) " Men's evil manners live in brass ;
Their virtues we write in water."

Paraphrase.

The world remembers what is base in human nature rather than what is good and noble.

B.

"The rank is but the guinea's stamp,
The man's the gowd for a' that."

Burns.

Paraphrase.

Rank, with its attendant riches, honour, etc., may give a man current value in the eyes of some, but his own inherent qualities constitute his real worth, or the reverse.

C.

"The boast of heraldry, the pomp of power,
And all that beauty, all that wealth e'er gave,
Awaits alike the inevitable hour."

Paraphrase.

An hour of change (*i.e.* Death), which cannot be gainsaid, awaits alike those who pride themselves upon their long descent, their position of worldly power, their beauty, or their wealth.

D.

"Turn, Fortune, turn thy wheel with smile or frown;
With that wild wheel we go not up or down;
Our hoard is little, but our hearts are great."

Paraphrase.

Fortune, we ignore thy smiles and frowns, and the changes caused by them; we may have little wealth, but that does not lessen our courage.

MODEL PARAPHRASE of Passage III. (*p.* 137.)

Cranmer says,

"I must speak, sir, for I feel God bids me do so. What I say must not be taken as flattery; my prophecy is bound to come true. This royal baby will be the cause of countless blessings to England, blessings which will be more and more felt as time goes on. Though few now living will see this, her life will be a pattern to sovereigns of her own and future ages. The Queen of Sheba sought not wisdom and goodness more keenly than she will do; all virtues which mark a good queen and a good woman will be seen in her. She will be loved and blessed by her own subjects; she will be a cause of fear and sorrow to her enemies. During her reign our land will not be disturbed by war; English folk will be able to follow the avocations and the pleasures of peace undisturbed. The nation will be God-fearing and religion something more than a name; and she shall set an example of honour and goodness to those about her court. When she dies, this happy state of things will not die with her, but will be continued under her successor. He will rise like a phœnix from her ashes, and his reign will be marked by those good qualities which distinguished hers. Then the mother-country, laying the foundation of her colonies, will give birth to daughter-nations, and

'our children's children
Shall see this, and bless heaven.'"

King Henry interpolates the remark,

"Thou speakest wonders,"

and *Cranmer*, continuing, says,

"She shall live to a good old age and bring much happiness to England, no day passing without some worthy deed from her. I would, however, that one point were concealed from me, namely, that she must die unmarried, and so leave no direct heir."

§ 78. *Notes on passages* to be paraphrased.

No.	*Main Idea.*	*Remarks.*
I.	Healthy minds do not care to think of the failures and bitter memories of the past; they rather look towards a future illuminated by hope.	Note Longfellow's metaphor. The past and the future are particularised as "yesterday" and "to-morrow," and are likened to rivers. The essential point is to grasp the meaning; focus your mind upon the spirit rather than the letter of the lines.
II.	Poverty a crippler of human energy and independent action.	The poet tries to show us that a man cannot do great things if he is constantly occupied with the thought, "To-day I must earn to-morrow's bread."
III.	A prophetic picture of many of the glories of Shakspeare's own age. (Model paraphrase given on p. 151.)	A glowing, but not necessarily untruthful picture of Elizabeth's virtues and the results of her reign—her faults and failures are conveniently forgotten. The rather far-fetched lines applying to James I. are thought by some to have been added after his accession.
IV.	Carlyle says that he honours two classes of men above all others—life's toilers and thinkers.	Some may find it difficult to paraphrase a piece of prose like this, but such should not be the case if it be borne in mind that the drift of the passage is required without waste of words.
V.	Nothing worth having is attained without effort.	Note the wealth of metaphor *e.g.* in the fourth line oratory and sculpture are referred to in figurative language.

No.	*Main Idea.*	*Remarks.*
VI.	Man's insatiable quest after knowledge only proves that the more is learnt the more there is still to learn.	(1) Explain what studies are metaphorically spoken of in the lines— "We map the starry sky, We mine this earthen ball," etc. (2) Compare with the latter part of No. VII.
VII.	Do not be satisfied with surface knowledge. (Compare with No. VI.)	Note the cheerful spirit with which "Youth" faces difficulties that increase with age.
VIII.	Despite certain natural disadvantages, it is better to enjoy Liberty in Britain than restricted freedom in brighter climes.	Remember this was written at the beginning of the 18th century. Since then many conditions of life abroad have changed.
IX.	Announcement of the Armada's approach. Preparations made to meet it. Britain at bay.	Note, and carefully explain the historical references in the lines— "So stalked he . . . . princely hunters lay."
X.	Majestic solitude of the mountain — speculations as to its origin.	Note the mystic-psychological vein in which Shelley approaches his subject.
XI.	Cromwell the forerunner of our foreign conquests.	Explain the historical allusions in the last verse.
XII.	Bruce blessed as his country's deliverer. The blessing takes the form of immortal fame.	A Scotchman's speech to Scotchmen. In your paraphrase take, or allow for, a partisan view.
XIII.	The poet, oppressed by the sorrows and burdens of the world, wishes he could share the nightingale's happy innocence.	Note the dark side of life presented in the third stanza. This is the key to Keat's pleading.

No.	*Main Idea.*	*Remarks.*
XIV.	The world's mistaken idea as to what constitutes "*greatness*."	Compare the last four lines with the argument set forth in the others.
XV.	Appearances are deceptive. There are two sides to every question.	You have to show that "fine, feathers do not always make fine birds." A man of imposing presence may be a villain or coward at heart.
XVI.	Kings and other highly placed individuals often experience sorrows and burdens peculiar to their station—which are unknown to humbler mortals.	The dominant note is that a king's freedom of action is fettered by ceremony or etiquette.
XVII.	The quiet working of Nature compared with man's noisy self-trumpetings.	Note the proverbs (1) "Still waters run deep," (2) "Empty vessels make most sound," convey practically the same lesson as this passage.
XVIII.	A scathing argument that mechanically-acquired knowledge is not "education."	Since Milton's day educational methods have almost entirely changed, but the principle he advances is as true now as when the words were written. Note his verbosity and fondness for long words, also the now obsolete spelling of *error*.
XIX.	The main object of studying the history of past ages should be to derive guidance for the future.	Note that Rienzi is depicted by Lytton as addressing his fellow Romans.
XX.	No one is without his failings, but the achievements of a genius tend to dwarf and to eliminate his faults as a man.	Generalise rather than particularise, *i.e.* do not quote all the instances given by Macaulay.

CHAPTER X.

INDEXING AND PRÉCIS WRITING.

§ 79. *Introductory.*

(*a*) This is an important but much neglected branch of English composition, and takes a prominent place in Civil Service and other examinations demanding a knowledge of commercial subjects. It is valuable as a mental training, tending towards habits of precision, logical arrangement, and neatness. Both *précis writing* and *paraphrasing* (*q.v.*) are excellent means of stimulating thought and of improving the power of concentration. A student who can quickly construct a presentable précis possesses a very valuable auxiliary towards the acquisition of knowledge. He is able at once to discriminate salient principles and to recollect them with much less effort than if he were ignorant of the art, for précis writing *is* an art. Its use is also apparent to the barrister mastering his "brief," to the lecturer thinking out the gist of his discourse, to the reporter epitomising lengthy speeches, to the paragraphist, and last, but not least, to the man of business.

Précis writing is most extensively used in Government Departments, and consequently figures as a subject in nearly all Civil Service examinations. The idea is to furnish a brief but comprehensive summary of a series of despatches, which will indicate the leading points at issue to anyone who has not time to read the original documents, or who wishes to refresh his memory with respect to the same.

(*b*) Mere theory is useless in indexing and précis writing. Constant practice is necessary, and all exercises should be corrected by a capable tutor.

On p. 152 *et seq.*, we append model solutions of actual examination papers, which should be carefully studied after our hints for working papers have been mastered.

§ 80. *General Hints for working a paper in Indexing and Précis writing.*

(1) Rapidly scan the correspondence, making a hasty cross against any letters which seem likely to present difficulties in the indexing. But in most examinations you dare not devote more than *ten minutes* to this first glance.

(2) Mark the introductory paragraphs of letters which give the substance of preceding ones. This will save you much trouble and thought when writing the index.

(3) Sometimes one of the last letters will furnish an epitome of most of the matters dealt with by the correspondence. If this be the case, much of the précis will be at hand in a rough-hewed form. It will merely require shaping and polishing, with an additional fixture here and there. The précis of the Society of Arts Paper (printed in this chapter) ought to have been merely a précis of the last letter.

(4) You will now be able to approach your work in a calm, philosophical manner, conscious that the ten or fifteen minutes so spent, if not shewing any result in black and white, are eminently mark-earning in their character, and may save you from the disastrous consequences of rushing headlong into the work and finding that when half-way through you have to begin again, owing to a misconception of what are and what are not salient details.

§ 81. *Index.*

(1) For methods of ruling see our model solution on p. 152, *et seq.* The first and second columns should each be one inch in width, the third two inches, and the fourth four inches. In examinations ruled paper is always supplied, and is generally divided into spaces of five lines each. Cultivate a compact style of writing, and if possible get each index into a single space of five lines, but do not do so at the expense of sacrificing a vital point. Better have a comprehensive index of eight lines than one of four which omits some salient detail.

(2) See that you make no mistake in copying the number of the letter, date, and names of correspondents. The names must always be taken from the top of documents. A letter signed by a permanent official is often headed,

"Colonial Office or War Office to So-and-so." (See No. 10, Ex. III.) If the document is a treaty, memorandum, etc., copy the given heading into the "name" column. (See inclosure in No. 23, Ex. IV.) It is better to rapidly check these three columns as you go along, leaving the fourth column for a final general revision.

(3) (*a*) Each index should begin with a present participle—"reporting," "stating," "requesting," "submitting," "authorising," etc. Common-sense and a consideration of the official positions of the correspondents will easily supply the appropriate word. (*b*) Remember that the Treasury "approve" or "appoint," that the Secretaries of State "approve," "authorise," and "direct," and that their subordinates "submit" and "report." Avoid vague and weak introductory words. "Concerning," "relating to," etc., are usually meaningless.

(4) Remember that your index must contain all material and no trivial details. As to what *are* salient facts, put yourself in the place of a judge, and say, "Now, so much evidence lies before me. What vitally affects the ultimate bearing of the case, and what is immaterial to it?" Suppose there is likelihood of war between Turkey and Greece, and the British Minister at Athens reports to the Foreign Secretary the movements of a Greek squadron, adding his own views as to its objective. The reported fact is important, the surmise is not, as it may be very wide of the mark. Upon the former may rest a point of international law; the latter has no weight whatever.

(5) Be explicit, yet brief. Remember that your object is to save space, not to fill it. It is not often that telegraphic despatches can be summarised to any great extent, but sometimes this can be done. Compare the following "Index" of "No. 1" in Exercise V. (p. 182) with the full text:—"Stating that his Ministers have been called upon by the Government of the Commonwealth to furnish a report on the action of South Australian officials in refusing to arrest the crew of the Dutch vessel 'Vondel,' but have declined to do so, holding that the Commonwealth has no jurisdiction in the matter." (See remarks on "Brevity," Composition Section, chap. ii. § 9.)

Avoid tautology, and do not index a letter to the Marquess of Ripon as "Asking his Lordship." Say "Asking him."

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY

§ 82. *Précis.*

(1) Always begin by explaining how the correspondence was initiated, and what were the various points at issue.

(2) In the précis, be chary of quoting the actual words of letters. What is wanted is a clear, incisive narrative in your own language. The document should be drawn up on the same plan as the "synopsis of preceding chapters" in a good magazine serial story, or as a newspaper summary of events which usually appears above the leading articles. A careful study of our model solutions will emphasise this point.

(3) It is essential to remember that while events take place in chronological order, the letters and telegrams reporting them may be, and often are, received and printed in different sequence. The précis must tell the story in logical order; it must, in fact, be an essay upon the *facts* disclosed in the letters, and neither dates nor numbers of letters (marginally or otherwise inserted) must occur. The names of the writers are usually immaterial, and "Thomas Atkins writing to John Bull, Esq.," and "Mr. Pickwick, in reply to Samuel Weller," are phrases which as thinly disguise the amateur précis writer as the lion's skin did the graceful form of the ass in the fable of Æsop.

(4) A history of letter writing is not required. Only in rare cases should direct reference be made to individual documents. Sometimes this is unavoidable in respect to an ultimatum or declaration of war.

(5) Be careful to give the *exact* terms—but not necessarily the exact wording—of treaties, agreements, ultimatums, etc. These form a centrepiece on which most of the correspondence is hinged. Only the gist is required. Side issues and trivial explanations should be ignored.

(6) Do not be afraid of adding explanations or comments, denoting the official position of correspondents, and of supplying sufficient historical reference to make the matter under consideration clear. In short, you should clothe your bare facts in graceful and vigorous English.

§ 83. *Model Solutions to Exercises II. and IV.* (see pp. 159 and 160).

SOLUTION TO EXERCISE II.—PRÉCIS

Of Letters relating to the appointment of Lord Malmesbury, in 1796, as our Plenipotentiary in Paris, and to his negotiations with the Directory.

In the course of the French War of 1796 proposals in the direction of peace came before the British Government, and the King, on October 13th, appointed Lord Malmesbury as Minister Plenipotentiary to conduct the negotiations with M. Charles Delacroix, the French Minister for Foreign Affairs, in Paris.

His Majesty ardently desired to contribute, as far as he might, to the re-establishment of public tranquillity and to ensure, by means of just, honourable, and solid conditions of peace, the future repose of Europe. Enunciating the principle that the first object of negotiations for peace relates to the restitutions and cessions which the respective parties had mutually to demand in consequence of the events of the war, His Majesty intimated that Great Britain, from the uninterrupted success of her naval war, had no restitution to demand from France, who had, however, on the continent of Europe made conquests, in which were implicated the most important interest of His Majesty's people and the most sacred engagements of his crown.

He proposed, therefore, to offer, by proportional restitutions, compensation to France for those arrangements to which she would be called upon to assent in order to satisfy the just demands of His Majesty's Allies, and to preserve the "balance of power" in Europe. The Directory met the proposals, at the outset, by charging the British Plenipotentiary with delay, and it was hinted that the sole object of the British negotiations was to enable the Government to gain time in which to obtain the means for continuing the war. However, Lord Malmesbury, on the 12th November, pressed for the acceptance of the restitution principle already laid down, or of some modification of it, before indicating what were the objects of reciprocal compensation, and repeated his demand a fortnight later. The delay appeared to be on the side of France.

The Directory now expressly required Lord Malmesbury to designate categorically the objects of reciprocal compensation which he had to propose, and the British Minister presented forthwith a confidential Memorandum on the subject, which he had received from London. To this Memorandum the Directory replied that it would listen to no proposals contrary to the constitution, to the laws, and to the treaties which bound the Republic, and charged M. Delacroix to tender to Lord Malmesbury formal notice to depart from Paris within eight and forty hours.

The British Plenipotentiary at once demanded the necessary passports for himself and his suite.

SOLUTION TO EXERCISE IV.

(A)—INDEX *to Correspondence respecting the action of Her Majesty's Naval Authorities with regard to certain Foreign Vessels.*

No. of Letter.	*Date.*	*Names of Correspondents.*	*Subject matter.*
1	5 Dec. 1899.	Rear-Admiral Sir R. Harris to Admiralty (telegraphic).	Reporting the sailing from Aden for Delagoa Bay of the German steamer "Bundesrath," suspected of carrying ammunition and intending combatants for the Boer army.
2	30 Dec. 1899.	The Marquess of Salisbury to Sir F. Lascelles (British Ambassador at Berlin) (telegraphic).	Stating that H.M.S. "Magicienne" has brought the "Bundesrath" into Durban, but that there is no information as to the grounds for the seizure
3	31 Dec. 1899.	The Marquess of Salisbury to Sir F. Lascelles (telegraphic).	Stating that the German Ambassador has requested the release of the "Bundesrath" on the ground that she carries no contraband, and is a mail-ship.
4	4 Jan. 1900.	Count Hatzfeldt (German Ambassador) to The Marquess of Salisbury (translation).	Asking what are the reasons for the seizure of the "Bundesrath," and requesting her release.

SOLUTION TO EXERCISE IV.—*continued.*

No. of Letter.	*Date.*	*Names of Correspondents.*	*Subject matter.*
5	4 Jan. 1900.	The Marquess of Salisbury to Sir F. Lascelles.	Stating that the German Government contend that a neutral vessel may convey contraband of war to a belligerent provided it be landed at a neutral port, and that he has informed Baron Eckardstein H.M. Government cannot accept this view.
6	5 Jan. 1900.	Sir F. Lascelles to The Marquess of Salisbury (telegraphic).	Communicating a report by the German Consul at Durban that no contraband has been found on the "Bundesrath," and adding that public feeling in Berlin has been greatly excited by the seizure of the "Bundesrath" and of the "General."
7	5 Jan. 1900.	Count Hatzfeldt to The Marquess of Salisbury (translation).	Requesting the immediate release of the German East African liner, "General," now detained by British troops at Aden, and asking that British Commanders in African waters be instructed to desist from impeding trade between neutrals.
8	7 Jan. 1900.	Sir F. Lascelles to The Marquess of Salisbury (telegraphic).	Stating that in connection with the seizure of the German ship, "Hertzog," carrying a deputation of the Red Cross Society, Count Bulow has asked for the prompt release of all the vessels, the payment of compensation for loss, and the prevention of similar incidents.

SOLUTION TO EXERCISE IV.—*continued.*

No. of Letter.	*Date.*	*Names of Correspondents.*	*Subject matter.*
9	7 Jan. 1900.	The Marquess of Salisbury to Sir F. Lascelles (telegraphic).	Announcing his receipt of two Notes from the German Ambassador respecting the seizure of the "Bundesrath" and the search of the "General," and stating that he is expediting the necessary inquiries.
10	4 Jan. 1900.	Sir F. Lascelles to The Marquess of Salisbury (extract).	Reporting that Count Bulow desires the speedy release of the "Bundesrath," whose owners positively assert that she carries no contraband.
11	5 Jan. 1900.	Sir F. Lascelles to The Marquess of Salisbury (extract).	Reporting in detail, and commenting on the facts adverted to in No. 6.
12	9 Jan. 1900.	The Marquess of Salisbury to Sir F. Lascelles.	Stating that he has informed Baron von Eckardstein of the release of the "General" and of the suspension of the examination of vessels by the British authorities in the Red Sea, and of British dissension from the German view that a neutral may transmit contraband through a neutral port.
13	10 Jan. 1900.	The Marquess of Salisbury to Sir F. Lascelles.	Directing him to intimate to the German Government that His Majesty's Government cannot release the "Bundesrath" without examination by the Prize Court as to whether she was carrying contraband of war belonging to or destined for the South African Republic.

SOLUTION TO EXERCISE IV.—*continued.*

No. of Letter.	*Date.*	*Names of Correspondents.*	*Subject matter.*
14	11 Jan. 1900.	The Marquess of Salisbury to Sir F. Lascelles.	Stating that in order to facilitate a speedy and amicable settlement of the matters at issue, the German Government have decided to abstain from pressing their view on the question of contraband trade between neutrals.
15	12 Jan. 1900.	Sir F. Lascelles to The Marquess of Salisbury (telegraphic).	Reporting that the German Government maintain that as the preliminary search of the "Bundesrath" revealed no contrabrand, her delivery to a Prize Court is unjustifiable.
16	13 Jan. 1900.	The Marquess of Salisbury to Sir F. Lascelles (extract).	Announcing that the German Government have received with satisfaction the assurance (indicated in No. 12) that every effort will be exerted to prevent a recurrence of the seizure of German trading vessels.
17	14 Jan. 1900.	The Marquess of Salisbury to Sir F. Lascelles (telegraphic).	Stating that Baron von Eckardstein has been informed that orders have been given to discontinue the search of vessels at Aden.
18	15 Jan. 1900.	Sir F. Lascelles to the Marquess of Salisbury (telegraphic).	Reporting that Count Bulow desires that the orders forbidding the arrest of mail steamers until the completion of the examination of the "Bundesrath" may be prolonged, and that those discontinuing the search of vessels at Aden may be extended to all places similarly distant from the seat of war.

SOLUTION TO EXERCISE IV.—*continued.*

No. of Letter.	*Date.*	*Names of Correspondents.*	*Subject matter.*
19	16 Jan. 1908.	The Marquess of Salisbury to Sir F. Lascelles (telegraphic).	Intimating that mail steamers of the subsidised lines will not, for the present, be searched on suspicion alone, and that the examination of all ships at places equidistant with Aden from Delagoa Bay will be discontinued.
20	17 Jan. 1900.	The Marquess of Salisbury to Sir F. Lascelles.	Transmitting a copy of No. 7 detailing fully the grounds for the arrest and the results of the search, regretting the inconvenience caused, and directing him to communicate the dispatch to the German Foreign Minister.
21	18 Jan. 1900	The Marquess of Salisbury to Sir F. Lascelles (telegraphic).	Announcing the release of the "Bundesrath" and cargo.
22	19 Jan. 1900.	Sir F. Lascelles to the Marquess of Salisbury.	Stating that No. 20 has been communicated to Baron von Kichthofen, who voiced the German view that the seizures were a breach of international law and an undue interference with neutral commerce, and who had been informed that from this view Great Britain dissents.
23	20 Jan. 1900.	Sir F. Lascelles to the Marquess of Salisbury.	Enclosing a copy and translation of a speech by Count von Bulow on the seizure of the "General," "Herzog," and "Bundesrath" by Great Britain.

SOLUTION TO EXERCISE IV.—*continued.*

No. of Letter.	*Date.*	*Names of Correspondents.*	*Subject matter.*
Inclosure in No. 23		Speech by Count von Bulow in the Reichstag on Jan. 19, 1900 (translation).	Citing the facts which constitute a breach of international treaties and customs, detailing the history of the seizures and the negotiations which preceded the release of the vessels, and stating that, if necessary, the English Government has agreed to submit to a tribunal the claims for compensation.

(B) PRÉCIS

Of Correspondence respecting the action of Her Majesty's Naval Authorities with regard to certain Foreign Vessels.

At the commencement of the late War with the South African Republics, the British Naval Authorities had reason to suspect that ammunition and combatants were being conveyed to the enemy through the neutral territory around Delagoa Bay from steamships flying a neutral flag. Consequently the mail steamers passing Aden and bound for ports adjacent to the seat of hostilities were kept under observation by the vessels comprising the British South African Squadron.

Suspicion fell upon the "Bundesrath," a mail steamer of the German East African Line, and she was arrested and brought into Durban by H.M.S. "Magicienne." She was detained and searched, despite the protest of the German Ambassador, but no contraband was found on board.

The German view was that the seizure and detention of the "Bundesrath," and the subsequent seizures of the "Herzog" and "General," belonging to the same line, was a breach of international law and of the custom of nations. They asserted that a neutral vessel could, without incurring liability to arrest, carry contraband of war and intending combatants to be landed at a neutral port—a view which H.M. Government declined to accept.

The German Ambassador in London was instructed to make strong representations respecting the action of the British Naval Authorities, and he demanded

(1) The immediate release of the vessels;
(2) The payment of compensation for their unjustified detention;
(3) The abandonment of the stoppage and search of German merchantmen north of Aden;
(4) Freedom from arrest for steamers flying the German mail flag;
(5) The submission to arbitration of all points in dispute.

The incident closed with the prompt release of the three steamers and the declaration by Great Britain of her readiness to award German subjects compensation for the losses sustained. Instructions were issued to the British Naval Authorities to desist from searching trading vessels at Aden or any port equidistant with it from the seat of war and to exempt from search, on suspicion alone, vessels flying the German mail flag, and the English Government, while declaring their concurrence in the institution of a tribunal, hoped that no such tribunal would be necessary.

These concessions, to which were added an expression of regret for what had occurred, fully justified the words of Count von Bulow in his speech to the Reichstag on the 19th January, 1900: "We cherish the confident hope that such regrettable incidents will not be repeated."

§ 84. *Exercises* (and see note 2 on p. 208).

INTRODUCTORY EXERCISES.

(1) Study the hints, etc., in §§ 74-5, and work some of the Paraphrase Exercises given in § 76, Chap. IX.

(2) Construct a Précis of some standard novel or poem with which you are familiar, *e.g.*, Scott's "Waverley," Milton's "Paradise Lost," and endeavour to give the story or argument in a few lines, neglecting all side issues and trivialities.

(3) Write a Précis of the more lengthy single documents given in our Exercises—the following are suitable:—Enclosure in No. 23 (Ex. IV.); Encl. in No. 10, No. 13, Encl. in No. 14, Encl. in No. 16 (Ex. V.).

NOTE.—The Précis of single documents indicated in (3) will be somewhat fuller than the notice assigned to them in a Précis of the whole series of letters, as it may be necessary to give explanatory details of certain points dealt with in other letters.

EXERCISE I.

Paper in Précis (Question 8) set at the London University Matriculation Examination, June, 1903 (given in Appendix).

EXERCISE II.

Paper in Précis (Section C.) set at the London University Matriculation Examination, Sept., 1902 (given in Appendix.)

NOTE.—Though the Matriculation Examiners did not ask for *both* Index and Précis, it is better to do both when working these Exercises because of the additional practice afforded.

EXERCISE III.

CORRESPONDENCE RELATING TO THE PACIFIC ISLAND LABOURERS ACT, 1901, OF THE COMMONWEALTH OF AUSTRALIA.

(*From Parliamentary Paper—Cd.* 1554—*April*, 1903.)

No. 1.

Aborigines Protection Society to Colonial Office.

(Received April 18, 1902.)

Aborigines Protection Society, Broadway Chambers,
Westminster, S.W., April 18, 1902.

Sir,

I have the honour, by direction of the Committee of the Aborigines Protection Society, to address you with reference to proposed legislation affecting the employment of Kanaka labour in Queensland.

2. Our Committee has welcomed the arrangements now in progress for abolishing the importation of Polynesians for service in Australia and elsewhere, being assured that most stringent regulations and their fullest enforcement cannot prevent this traffic from being unjust and injurious. At the same time, it considers that those Kanakas who have been conveyed from their own islands to Queensland, and, at the expiration of their terms of service under contract, have elected to remain in the Colonv under conditions voluntarily and intelligently accepted by them, have a clear right to do so, and that their forcible deportation would be illegal, and on every ground improper.

3. According to our Committee's information, reasonable alarm prevails among a considerable number of Kanaka residents in Queensland at the imminent prospect of their expulsion from homes and occupations in which they have settled down as orderly British subjects, adapting themselves to local requirements, and having acquired habits and taken upon themselves responsibilities that unfit them for return to a state of life from which, with or without their consent, they were withdrawn many years ago. Our Committee is also informed that a weighty appeal to His Majesty is now being extensively signed by these resident Kanakas, setting forth in detail the grounds on which they seek protection from the treatment with which they are threatened.

4. In anticipation of the presentment of this petition, and in view of the possibility of delay being prejudicial to timely consideration of its

purport, our Committee takes the liberty of calling attention to the question at issue, in the hope that His Majesty's Government will be willing to make such representations to the Australian authorities as may conduce to a speedy and equitable settlement which, while conferring great benefit on those concerned in it, would in no way affect the general question of policy regarding native labour which has been raised in Queensland.

I have, etc.,
H. R. FOX BOURNE,
Secretary.

No. 2.

Mr. Chamberlain to Governor-General the Earl of Hopetoun.

My Lord, Downing Street, May 16, 1902.

I have the honour to transmit to you for the consideration of your Ministers, a copy of a letter* from the Aborigines Protection Society protesting against the deportation from Australia under the Pacific Island Labourers Act, of Kanaka residents in Queensland.

2. I at the same time enclose a copy of a question asked in the House of Lords on this subject, and of the reply returned to it. I have no doubt that your Government will adopt such precautionary measures as are desirable to ensure the return to their proper villages of such Pacific Islanders as may be deported under the Act in question.

3. I take this opportunity of acknowledging the receipt of your despatch of the 19th of December last,† forwarding copies of representations which you have received from the Lieutenant-Governor of Queensland in regard to this Act, and to enclose a copy of a despatch‡ which I have addressed to Sir H. Chermside on the subject.

I have, etc.,
J. CHAMBERLAIN.

Enclosure in No. 2.

House of Lords, February 20, 1902.

The Lord Lamington asked the Under Secretary of State for the Colonies whether the attention of His Majesty's Government has been directed to the Pacific Island Labourers Act of the Commonwealth of Australia, wherein—

1. Power is given to deport islanders who came to Australia under the laws of the Colony of Queensland, which sanctioned their permanent residence in that Colony if so inclined; and

2. Which provides no obligation to return these islanders to their proper villages on their respective islands, or to ensure their safety on their landing there.

In reply the Earl of Onslow said that this matter had been considered by the Secretary of State for the Colonies, but he did not gather that the noble Lord desired that the Secretary of State should take any action in regard to it. The subject was one which was entirely within the jurisdiction of the Commonwealth of Australia. It was one which affected them entirely, and they must be left to deal with it in their own way. The noble Lord had suggested that a very serious evil might happen to these labourers when they returned to their own country—that, instead of being received with acclamation, their fellow-countrymen would, he thought, the noble Lord went so far as to say, kill them and probably proceed to eat them. That was certainly a very alarming outlook, but he trusted that the noble Lord's fears were somewhat exaggerated. He could assure him, however, that, although as far as he had been able to read the Act, there was nothing in it which provided for the repatriation of these labourers in their own particular villages, the attention of the Commonwealth Government would be called to the matter, and a hope expressed that every care would be taken, as he was sure the Commonwealth Government would desire to take, to see that when these men were sent back, they were sent back to their own villages, and under such conditions that they might be expected to be willingly received there. The great majority of these men were not British subjects, and they were really living in a state of barbarism. They could hardly expect that the Commonwealth Government should open its shores freely to people who were in a state of barbarism or, at any rate, semi-barbarism ; and he thought the noble Lord would admit that it was entirely within the right of the Commonwealth Government to exclude these men if they thought fit. He had no doubt that the Colony of Queensland might consider it a great hardship that these men were not allowed to come and work in the sugar fields, but that was a matter of internal administration in which he was sure the noble Lord, with his knowledge and experience of Australia, would not think it would be proper for His Majesty's Government to interfere.

---

* No. 1. † Not printed. ‡ No. 3.

No. 3.

Mr. Chamberlain to Governor Sir H. Chermside (Queensland).

Sir, Downing Street, May 16, 1902.

I have the honour to acquaint you, for the information of your Ministers, that I have received from the Governor-General of Australia, a copy of the representations made to him by your Government on the subject of the Pacific Island Labourers Act, but that I have not felt justified in advising His Majesty to disallow the measure.

I have, etc.,
J. CHAMBERLAIN.

No. 4.

Colonial Office to Aborigines Protection Society.

Sir, Downing Street, May 16, 1902.

I am directed by Mr. Secretary Chamberlain to acknowledge the receipt of your letter of the 18th ultimo,* on the subject of the application of the provisions of the Pacific Island Labourers Act to Kanaka residents in Queensland, and to inform you that a copy of your letter has been forwarded to the Governor-General of Australia for the consideration of his Government.

---

* No. 1.

2. A further communication will be addressed to you on the receipt of Lord Hopetoun's reply.

I am, etc.,
H. BERTRAM COX.

No. 5.

Governor-General the Earl of Hopetoun to Mr. Chamberlain.

(Received August 12, 1902.)

Commonwealth of Australia, Governor-General,
Sydney, July 7, 1902.

Sir,

Adverting to your despatch of the 16th May,* I have the honour to state that I have been informed by my Responsible Advisers that they have now under consideration the question of the deportation of Kanakas from Queensland, and that before any active steps are taken to arrange for such deportation, such precautionary measures as are desirable to ensure the return of the Islanders to their proper villages will be adopted.

2. Mr. Deakin is now making enquiries as to the number of Kanakas who have settled in Queensland with the intention of becoming permanent residents, and when the result of those enquiries is received all the circumstances will receive the most careful consideration.

I have, etc.,
HOPETOUN,
Governor-General.

No. 6.

Colonial Office to Aborigines Protection Society.

Downing Street, September 9, 1902.

Sir,

With reference to the letter from this Department of the 16th of May,† I am directed by Mr. Secretary Chamberlain to transmit to you for the information of your Committee a copy of a despatch‡ which has now been received from the Governor-General of the Commonwealth of Australia in reply to the despatch forwarding the representations of your Society on the subject of the deportation of Kanakas from Queensland.

I am, etc.,
C. P. LUCAS.

No. 7.

Governor Sir H. Chermside to Mr. Chamberlain.

(Received October 20, 1902.)

Government House, Brisbane, Queensland, September 10, 1902.

Sir,

I have the honour to forward, for your information, a copy of a letter from Mr. Woodford, the Resident Commissioner, Solomon Islands.

I have sent a copy of this despatch to the Acting Governor-General.

I have, etc.,
HERBERT CHERMSIDE,
Governor.

---

* No. 2. † No. 4. ‡ No. 5.

Enclosure in No. 7.

Government Residence, Solomon Islands, August 10, 1902.

Your Excellency,

In reply to your despatch, No. 53, of 24th June, in which you ask for an expression of my views upon the subject of the hardships likely to be entailed upon Pacific Islanders compulsorily returned to their homes under the provisions of the Pacific Island Labourers Act, 1901, and enclosing a copy of a petition which has been presented to Your Excellency, for transmission to His Majesty the King, I have the honour, in connection with the points raised in the various paragraphs of the petition, upon which I am in a position to offer an opinion, to observe

In connection with the points raised in paragraph 9, it would certainly, in some cases, be impossible for natives to return to the places whence they were recruited, and the statement that villages have disappeared, and that tribes (so-called) have been exterminated is correct.

The objection, contained in the same paragraph, that islands have passed under the jurisdiction of foreign powers, would concern only natives of Bougainville, New Britain, or New Ireland, which, since 1886, have been under the control of Germany. I imagine that the number of natives of these islands at present in Queensland is a very small one.

On the other hand the islands of Ysabel, Choiseul, the islands in Bougainville Straits, and Lord Howe's group, which, previous to 1886, were frequently visited by Queensland labour ships until at that time they passed under German control, are now, since 1899, under British protection.

As to paragraph 10.—Native marriage laws are very strict, and intercourse between natives belonging to the same "kemas" or totems, which are strictly exogamous, is looked upon with grave displeasure.

Doubtless natives in Queensland, removed from the influences which surround them at home, have contracted marriages which would have been impossible in their own islands. It would certainly be extremely dangerous for couples so married to return to their native place.

Again, when a man or a woman has contracted a marriage in Queensland with a native of another island, as, for instance, when a Solomon Islander has married a New Hebrides woman, or a Mala man has married a San Cristoval woman, or *vice versa*, danger would undoubtedly be incurred by the alien should the couple land at the native place of the other.

Paragraph 11.—Missionary influence has been extended to most of the islands in the British Solomon Islands Protectorate. The return of Christianised natives should tend to strengthen the influence already at work.

A point not raised in the petition for obvious reasons is that natives who recruit are frequently fugitives from native justice, and leave home to avoid the consequences of their misdeeds. Such natives would incur very serious risk of vengeance by returning to their homes.

A case has recently occurred at Mala where a native who had been thirty-five years in Fiji was murdered. The alleged cause of the murder was a crime said to have been committed by him previous to his departure for Fiji.

I would bring the following to your Excellency's notice.

A case occurred about three years ago, when a native returned to Guadalcanar, after many years' residence in Queensland. During his stay there he had contracted a legal marriage with a white woman. Seven children were born of the marriage, four of whom, three girls and a boy, returned with the father. The position of these poor children is a most pitiable one. I have been forced to make temporary arrangements for the reception of the two elder girls, aged twelve and fourteen respectively, much against the father's wish, at one of the Missionary Stations.

These children, being British subjects and natives of Queensland, I would ask if the provisions of the Pacific Island Labourers Act permanently exclude them from the Commonwealth.

I propose to make arrangements to reserve certain areas where natives who are unable to land at their own homes may have an opportunity of forming settlements, but it would be desirable if I could be informed in advance of the numbers likely to avail themselves of such a proposal.

As requested, I have the honour to return the copy of the petition enclosed in your Excellency's despatch.

I have, etc.,
CHARLES M. WOODFORD.

His **Excellency** General Sir Herbert Chermside, G.C.M.G.,
Governor of Queensland.

No. 8.

Aborigines Protection Society to Colonial Office.

(Received October 23, 1902.)

Aborigines Protection Society, Broadway Chambers,
Westminster, S.W., October 22, 1902.

Sir,

I have the honour, on behalf of the Committee of the Aborigines Protection Society, in acknowledging the receipt of your letter of 9th September,* respecting the treatment of Kanakas in Queensland, and with reference to your despatch of 30th August, which appears in Parliamentary Paper, Cd. 1285, to submit to you the following observations.

2. It is a matter of great regret to the Committee that His Majesty's Government has decided not to interfere with the action of the Australian Commonwealth as regards the deportation of such Pacific Islanders as had become permanent residents in Queensland before the passing of the Pacific Islanders Act of 1901. Without questioning the determination of His Majesty's Government not "to take upon themselves the functions of a Court of Appeal from the Parliament of a self-governing Colony," in respect of measures that "involve no Imperial public interest," I am respectfully to point out that, in the Committee's opinion, the treatment appealed against by the Queensland Kanakas in their petition of last April, does involve the interests, as well as the good faith, of those responsible for control of the British Empire.

---

* No. 6.

3. The case of the petitioners is that many of them, having been induced to take temporary service in Queensland, are entitled by successive Acts of Parliament (44 Victoria, No. 17; 47 Victoria, No. 12; and 55 Victoria, No. 35) not only to restoration to their island homes if they demand it, but also to protection as permanent residents in the Colony if they preferred to surrender their right to restoration. As they urge in the petition, "It was lawful for any islander who had fulfilled his first or other agreement to enter into any business or occupation in which he could be his own master, as freely as domiciled aliens of other Colonial races have always been permitted and are still permitted to do in Australia." They have, in effect, been allowed and encouraged to acquire the rights and privileges of British citizenship.

4. It is submitted that the forcible removal from their adopted homes of any Kanaka residents in Queensland who have not been legally condemned to transportation for proved offences will be an act of flagrant injustice, not to be excused by any arbitrary legislation, and therefore calls for the intervention of His Majesty's Government, even, and especially, on "the broad constitutional ground" that "Imperial public interest" is gravely involved in the equitable upholding of liberties accorded to these subjects of the Crown by legislation which received the sanction of the Imperial Government before they were assigned to the control of the Australian Commonwealth.

I have, etc.,
H. R. FOX BOURNE,
Secretary.

No. 9.

House of Commons.

Wednesday, October 22, 1902.

Sir Brampton Gurdon asked the Secretary of State for the Colonies, with reference to his despatch, addressed to the Governor of Queensland on 30th August, 1902,* whether he can inform the House as to the steps taken by His Majesty's Government to safeguard the interests of Pacific Islanders who have become residents of Queensland, and who will be liable, under the Pacific Island Labourers Act, to exclusion from the privileges acquired by them as subjects of the Crown.

Mr. J. Chamberlain, in reply, said:—"The necessity of dealing carefully with the interests of Pacific Islanders who have become resident in Queensland has been strongly pressed on the Commonwealth Government, and I am confident that they will carry out the law in a liberal spirit. A despatch from the Governor-General on the subject is on its way.

"I may add that I am not aware that any of these labourers have become subjects of the Crown."

---

* No. 2 in [Cd. 1285]—*not printed in this work.*

No. 10.

Colonial Office to Aborigines Protection Society.

Sir, Downing Street, October 28, 1902.

I am directed by Mr. Secretary Chamberlain to acknowledge the receipt of your letter of the 22nd of October,* on the subject of the treatment of Kanakas in Queensland.

2. In reply, I am to refer you, with regard to the steps taken by His Majesty's Government to safeguard the interests of Pacific Islanders who have become residents of Queensland, to the answer returned by Mr. Chamberlain to Sir Brampton Gurdon in the House of Commons on the 22nd of October.

I am, etc.,
H. BERTRAM COX.

NOTE.—The following three hours' paper, of which a model solution is printed on *p.* 160, *et seq.*, was recently set by the Society of Arts Examiner. It is similar in length and character to those usually given in all Civil Service Examinations.

After reading the appended instructions, our hints in § 80-2 should be revised.

Compare with the instructions which head the London University Matriculation Paper on Précis Writing.

EXERCISE IV.

SOCIETY OF ARTS EXAMINATIONS (ADVANCED GRADE).

PRÉCIS-WRITING.

[TIME ALLOWED THREE HOURS.]

Having read the accompanying Correspondence—

1. Make a short Abstract, Schedule, or Docket of the letters and other papers on the ruled form supplied to you.

2. Draw up a Memorandum, or Précis, *i.e.* a brief and clear statement of what passed, not letter for letter, but in the form of a narrative. This should commence in the middle of the fold of paper supplied to you, on one of the pages not ruled with a form in red ink.

N.B.—No candidate can expect to obtain either a Second-class or a First-class Certificate, who does not attempt the Memorandum or Précis as well as the Abstract, and no candidate can expect to obtain a First-class Certificate who does not produce a fairly good Memorandum.

---

* No. 8.

(1) The object of the Abstract, Schedule, or Docket is to serve as an Index. It should contain the date of each letter; the names of the persons by whom and to whom it is written; and, *in as few words as possible*, the subject of it. The merits of such an Abstract are (*a*) to give the really important point or points of each letter, omitting everything else; (*b*) to do this briefly; (*c*) distinctly; and (*d*) in such a form as readily to catch the eye.

(2) The object of the Memorandum or Précis, which should be drawn up, *not letter by letter*, but in the form of a narrative, is to inform anyone who has not time to read the original letters of all the leading features of what transpired as shown by the correspondence. The merits of such a Précis are—(*a*) to contain all that is important in the Correspondence, and nothing that is unimportant; (*b*) to present this in a consecutive and readable shape, expressed as distinctly as possible, and as briefly as is compatible with completeness and distinctness.

CORRESPONDENCE RESPECTING THE ACTION OF HER MAJESTY'S NAVAL AUTHORITIES WITH REGARD TO CERTAIN FOREIGN VESSELS.

No. 1.

Rear-Admiral Sir R. Harris to Admiralty.

(Telegraphic.) Simonstown, December 5, 1899.

"Marathon" at Aden reports sailing of "Bundesrath" for Delagoa Bay. Ammunition suspected, but none ascertained. She carries twenty Dutch and Germans and two supposed Boers, three Germans and two Austrians, believed to be officers, all believed to be intending combatants, although shown as civilians; also twenty-four Portuguese soldiers

No. 2.

The Marquess of Salisbury to Sir F. Lascelles (British Ambassador at Berlin).

(Telegraphic.) Foreign Office, December 30, 1899.

Her Majesty's ship "Magicienne" is reported by Admiral at the Cape to have brought German steamship "Bundesrath" into Durban.

We were aware that she was suspected to be carrying ammunition in her cargo, and that she had on board a number of passengers believed to be volunteers for service with the Boers, but we have no details nor information as to the grounds for the seizure.

No. 3.

The Marquess of Salisbury to Sir F. Lascelles.

(Telegraphic.) Foreign Office, December 31, 1899.

German Embassy made a verbal communication to-day respecting the "Bundesrath," requesting that she should be released on the ground that she carries no contraband according to assurance of owners, and because her detention, owing to her being a mail ship, interferes with public and common interests, in addition to the loss suffered by the Company.

The Embassy was informed that further particulars would be given as soon as received, but that we have no information at present beyond that sent to you, which has been communicated to Count Hatzfeldt.

No. 4.

Count Hatzfeldt (German Ambassador) to the Marquess of Salisbury.

(Translation.)

My Lord, German Embassy, London, January 4, 1900.

With reference to the seizure of the German Steamer "Bundesrath" by an English ship of war, I have the honour to inform your Excellency in accordance with instructions received, that the Imperial Government, after carefully examining the matter and considering the judicial aspects of the case, are of opinion that proceedings before a Prize Court are not justified.

This view is grounded on the consideration that proceedings before a Prize Court are only justified in cases where the presence of contraband of war is proved, and that, whatever may have been on board the "Bundesrath," there could have been no contraband of war, since, according to recognised principles of international war, there cannot be contraband of war in trade between neutral ports.

This is the view taken by the British Government in 1863 in the case of the seizure of the "Springbok" as against the judgment of the American Prize Court, and this view is also taken by the British Admiralty in their "Manual of Naval Prize Law" of 1866.

The Imperial Government are of opinion that, in view of the passages in that Manual: "A vessel's destination should be considered neutral, if both the port to which she is bound and every intermediate port at which she is to call in the course of her voyage be neutral," and, "the destination of the vessel is conclusive as to the destination of the goods on board," they are fully justified in claiming the release of the "Bundesrath" without investigation by a Prize Court, and that all the more because, since the ship is a mail steamer with a fixed itinerary, she could not discharge her cargo at any other port than the neutral port of destination.

In view of what is stated above, I have the honour to request your Excellency, in accordance with instructions from the Imperial Government, that with the reservation of what may further be decided, to order the release of the "Bundesrath," and since she was seized more than a week ago and the Imperial Government have not yet been informed of the reasons for the seizure, I should be obliged if I could be favoured with a reply at your earliest convenience.

I have, etc.,
(Signed) P. HATZFELDT.

No. 5.

The Marquess of Salisbury to Sir F. Lascelles.

Sir, Foreign Office, January 4, 1900.

Baron von Eckardstein, from the German Embassy, called on me yesterday, and informed me that he had been instructed to address to me a note with respect to the arrest of the "Bundesrath." I will make some observations in a separate despatch* upon the questions raised in that note; but I informed Baron Eckardstein that we were entirely unable to accede to his contention that a neutral vessel was entitled to convey without hindrance contraband of war to the enemy, so long as the port at which he intended to land it was a neutral port. Baron Eckardstein asked me whether it was not possible to allow the mail steamer go on bail, so as not to interfere more than was necessary with her voyage.

I said that I should be entirely in favour of that plan, if it were practicable, and were adopted under suitable conditions. But I added that I believed she was now in the hands of the Prize Court, which, of course, acted independently.

I am, etc.,
(Signed) SALISBURY.

No. 6.

Sir F. Lascelles to the Marquess of Salisbury.

(Telegraphic.) Berlin, January 5, 1900.

Report has been received from German Consul at Durban stating that no contraband has been found on the "Bundesrath," although she has been searched for nine days. Baron von Richthofen said that public opinion here has been greatly excited by the seizure of the "Bundesrath" and the "General." The fact that the naval authorities had failed to discover contraband would seem to render their action unjustifiable; but the German Government maintain that, even if contraband had been discovered, England would have no right to interfere with neutral vessels going from one neutral port to another, and the task of preventing the transmission of contraband to the Transvaal would lie with the Portuguese Government.

When the war broke out, the Steamship Company disembarked some contraband of war at Dar-es-Salaam and Port Said in order to obviate any possible complication, and since then the Company has issued strict orders that contraband should not be embarked.

No. 7.

Count Hatzfeldt to the Marquess of Salisbury.

(Translation.)

My Lord, German Embassy, London, January 5, 1900.

According to a communication received by the Imperial Government by telegraph from Aden the day before yesterday, a second mail-steamer of the German East African line, the "General," has now been stopped there, occupied by force by British troops, and ordered to land her cargo.

In accordance with instructions received, I have the honour to inform your Excellency of the above, and, expressly reserving any claims for compensation, to request that orders may be given for the immediate release of the steamer and her cargo, for that portion of her cargo which has already been landed to be taken on board again, and for no hindrances to be placed in the way of the ship continuing her voyage to the places mentioned in her itinerary.

---

* No. 13.

I am further instructed to request your Excellency to cause explicit instructions to be sent to the Commanders of British ships in African waters to respect the rules of international law, and to place no further impediments in the way of the trade between neutrals.

I should be obliged if your Excellency would send me a reply at your earliest convenience.

I have, etc.,
(Signed) P. HATZFELDT.

No. 8.

Sir F. Lascelles to the Marquess of Salisbury.

(Telegraphic.) Berlin, January 7, 1900.

In consequence of the capture of a third German ship, the "Herzog," I received a message again this evening from Count Bulow asking me to pay him a visit, the vessel having on board a deputation of the Red Cross Society. A list of the members of this deputation has already been furnished by me to your Lordship.

His Excellency, after repeating to me all he had said relative to the "Bundesrath" and the "General," informed me that fresh instructions had been sent to Count Hatzfeldt to press your Lordship for a reply to the complaint which had already been submitted. He said that his most earnest desire was that orders should be sent for the prompt release of the vessels, for the payment of compensation for losses which had been sustained, and for the prevention of the recurrence of similar incidents.

No. 9.

The Marquess of Salisbury to Sir F. Lascelles.

(Telegraphic.) Foreign Office, January 7, 1900.

I have received two notes from German Ambassador, of a tone very unusual in diplomatic correspondence, respecting the arrest of the "Bundesrath" and the search of the "General."

We are pressing the authorities in Natal for prompt completion of investigation in case of the first-named ship, and making inquiry into the facts as regards the second.

The principle which we have maintained in regard to contraband of war is not that which the German Government supposes.

Both notes will be answered in due course under advice of the Law Officers of the Crown.

No. 10.

Sir F. Lascelles to the Marquess of Salisbury.

(Extract.) Berlin, January 4, 1900.

With reference to my telegram of the 30th ultimo, I have the honour to report that, shortly before seven o'clock in the evening of that day, Count Bulow sent me a message by telephone, asking me to call upon him at once.

On my arrival at his house, his Excellency told me that he was most desirous to see me, in consequence of the seizure of the German mail steamer "Bundesrath" by an English man-of-war. The ship had been taken to Durban, and his Excellency hoped that orders would be sent to release her as soon as possible, if it should be found that she did not carry contraband of war. Count Hatzfeldt had been instructed to bring the case to your Lordship's notice, but Count Bulow begged me also to telegraph to your Lordship on the subject.

I replied that I had absolutely no information on the subject, but that I would telegraph at once to your Lordship. I asked his Excellency particularly whether his request was that measures should be taken for the speedy release of the ship if no contraband was found on board.

His Excellency answered in the affirmative, and said that he had received most positive assurances from the Company, and that he honestly believed that no contraband would be found.

No. 11.

Sir F. Lascelles to the Marquess of Salisbury.

(Extract.) Berlin, January 5, 1900.

I called on Baron von Richthofen this morning, and found him preoccupied on the subject of the seizure of German ships.

After a nine days' search at Durban, no single article of contraband had been found on board the "Bundesrath;" but the vessel was still detained, and Her Majesty's Government were still waiting for information from Durban to enable them to reply to the representations which the German Government had made to them. The failure of the British authorities to discover contraband on board the "Bundesrath" seemed to deprive them of any justification for their action.

The German Government maintained that even if contraband had been discovered, it would not have justified the British authorities in interfering with a neutral ship plying between two neutral ports. He cited the case of the "Springbok," with which I was not acquainted, as a proof that a British Court had affirmed this principle. It would be for the authorities of the neutral port to prevent the contraband reaching one of the belligerents, and surely Her Majesty's Government had the means of exerting sufficient pressure on the Portuguese authorities to prevent them from allowing contraband of war to reach the Transvaal, without capturing apparently innocent German ships, and detaining them for so long a time.

On leaving Baron von Richthofen, I drafted my telegram of this day's date, but before sending it I received a message from Count von Bulow, asking me to call upon him between six and seven o'clock this evening, and therefore delayed sending my telegram until I should see his Excellency.

I have in my telegram of this day's date reported to your Lordship the principal points of my conversation with Count von Bulow.

He believed that both in law and in fact the capture of the German ships could not be justified. He honestly believed the assurances of the Steamship Company that the captured vessels contained no contraband of war, and, even if they had, the decisions of British Courts might be invoked to prove that the ships should not have been detained.

No. 12.

The Marquess of Salisbury to Sir F. Lascelles.

Sir, Foreign Office, January 9, 1900.

Baron von Eckardstein called here to-day on behalf of the German Ambassador in connection with the seizure of the "Bundesrath." I told him that I could not undertake to arbitrate on any legal question under dispute, and could not express an opinion as to whether it would be desirable to do so until I saw precisely what the doctrine in controversy was; but that I thought that questions of indemnity, demurrage, or damages, if they arose, were very suitable for arbitration.

I told him the Admiralty had released the "General," and had suspended for the present examinations in the Red Sea on account of difficulties attaching to the decision of the accusation of carrying contraband of war at a place so far distant from the destination of the accused vessel.

I further informed him that I thought it quite possible the "Herzog" might be released, but I could give no promises on the point, as she was in the Prize Court.

I said we were considering how far we could abstain from arresting mail steamers of any nation, unless their culpability was flagrant, because the inconvenience caused by their arrest was undoubtedly great.

I stated that we were wholly unable to agree with the German Government in the alleged right of a neutral to transmit contraband to a belligerent through a neutral port, but that we entirely concurred in the importance of pushing these cases through with as much rapidity as possible, and we had given repeated instructions to that effect.

I am, etc.,
(Signed) SALISBURY.

No. 13.

The Marquess of Salisbury to Sir F. Lascelles.

Sir, Foreign Office, January 10, 1900.

I transmit to your Excellency herewith the translation of a note* which I have received from the German Ambassador at this Court with regard to the seizure of the German steamer "Bundesrath" by Her Majesty's ship "Magicienne," on suspicion of carrying contraband of war destined for the South African Republics.

In this note Count Hatzfeldt states that the German Government, after careful examination of the judicial aspects of the case, are of opinion that proceedings before a Prize Court are not justified. They base this view on the doctrine that, according to the recognised principles of international law, no question of contraband of war arises in trade between neutral ports. In support of this argument they cite the view which they state "to have been taken by Her Majesty's Government in 1863 in the case of the seizure of the 'Springbok,'" as against the Judgment of the

---

* No. 4.

United States' Prize Court, and that which they consider to be taken "by the British Admiralty in their 'Manual on Naval Prize Law' of 1866."

Before examining the doctrine thus put forward by the German Government, it will be desirable to remove some errors of fact in regard to the authorities which they cite.

It is not the case that the British Government in 1863 raised any claim or contention against the Judgment of the United States' Prize Court in the case of the "Springbok." On the first seizure of that vessel, and on an ex parte and imperfect statement of the facts by the owners, Earl Russell, then Secretary of State for Foreign Affairs, informed Her Majesty's Minister at Washington that there did not appear to be any justification for the seizure of the vessel and her cargo, that the supposed reason, namely, that there were articles in the manifest not accounted for by the captain, certainly did not warrant the seizure, more especially as the destination of the vessel appeared to have been bona fide neutral, but that, inasmuch as it was probable that the vessel had by that time been carried before a Prize Court of the United States for adjudication, and that the adjudication might shortly follow, if it had not already taken place, the only instruction that he could at present give to Lord Lyons was to watch the proceedings and the Judgment of the Court, and eventually transmit full information as to the course of the trial and its results.

The Prize Court of the United States, in a long and considered Judgment, decreed confiscation both of the vessel and the cargo. The owners applied for the intervention of Her Majesty's Government, and forwarded in support of their application an opinion by two English Counsel of considerable eminence.

The real contention advanced in this opinion was that the goods were, in fact, bona fide consigned to a neutral at Nassau. It cannot, therefore, be adduced in support of the doctrine now advanced by the German Government. But Her Majesty's Government, after consulting the Law Officers of the Crown, distinctly refused to make any diplomatic protest or enter any objection against the decision of the United States' Prize Court, nor did they ever express any dissent from that decision on the grounds on which it was based.

The volume which is described in Count Hatzfeldt's note as "The Manual of Naval Prize Law of the British Admiralty," and from which Count Hatzfeldt quotes certain phrases as expressing the view of the Lords Commissioners on this subject, is, in fact, a book originally compiled by Mr. (now Sir Godfrey) Lushington, which was published under the authority of the Lords Commissioners as stating in a convenient form the general principles by which Her Majesty's officers are guided in the exercise of their duties; but it has never been asserted and cannot be admitted to be an exhaustive or authoritative statement of the views of the Lords Commissioners. The preface to the book states that it does not treat of questions which will ultimately have to be disposed of by the Prize Court, but which do not concern the officer's duty of the place and hour. The directions in this Manual, which for practical purposes were sufficient in the case of wars such as have been waged by Great Britain in the past, are quite inapplicable to the case which has now arisen of war with an inland State, whose only communication with the sea is over a few miles of railway to a neutral port. In a portion of the Introduction the author discusses the question of destination of the cargo, as distinguished from destination of the vessel, in a manner by no means favourable to the contention advanced in Count Hatzfeldt's note. Moreover, Professor Holland, who edited a revised edition of this Manual in 1880, in a recent letter published in *The Times* has expressed an opinion altogether inconsistent with the view which the German Government endeavour to found upon the words of the Manual.

In the opinion of Her Majesty's Government, the passage cited from the Manual, "that the destination of the vessel is conclusive as to the destination of the goods on board," has no application to such circumstances as have now arisen.

It cannot apply to contraband of war on board of a neutral vessel if such contraband was at the time of seizure consigned or intended to be delivered to an agent of the enemy at a neutral port, or, in fact, destined for the enemy's country.

The true view in regard to the latter category of goods is, as Her Majesty's Government believe, correctly stated in paragraph 813 of Professor Bluntschli's "Droit International Codifié," as follows (I cite from the French translation of 1874, 2nd edition, of the work of this eminent German jurist) :—

> "Si les navires ou marchandises ne sonte expédiés à destination d'un porte neutre que pour mieux venir à l'ennemi il y aura contrebande de guerre et la confiscation sera justifiée."

Her Majesty's Government are unable therefore to agree that there are grounds for ordering the release of the "Bundesrath" without examination by the Prize Court as to whether she was carrying contraband of war belonging to or destined for, the South African Republics. But they fully recognise how desirable it is that this examination should be carried through at the earliest possible moment, and that all proper consideration should be shown for the owners and for the innocent passengers and merchandise on board of her. Repeated and urgent instructions have been sent by telegraph for this purpose, and arrangements have been made for the transmission of the mails.

Your Excellency will address a note to the German Minister for Foreign Affairs containing the above observations.

I am, etc.,
(Signed) SALISBURY.

No. 14.

The Marquess of Salisbury to Sir F. Lascelles.

Sir, Foreign Office, January 11, 1900.

Baron von Eckardstein called on me yesterday, and in the course of conversation on the subject of the recent seizures of German mail steamers, informed me that in view of the protest which I had made against the position taken up by the German Government that there could not be any question of contraband in trade between neutral ports, they had decided to abstain from pressing or discussing their opinion for the present in order to facilitate a speedy and amicable settlement.

I am, etc.,
(Signed) SALISBURY.

No. 15.

Sir F. Lascelles to the Marquess of Salisbury.

(Telegraphic.) Berlin, January 12, 1900.

I saw Baron von Richthofen this afternoon and read to him your Lordship's despatch of the 10th instant; I told him that I was going to embody it in a note which I would send to Count von Bulow.

In reply Baron von Richthofen remarked that even if for the moment the question of trade between neutral ports were put on one side, it was nevertheless maintained by the Imperial Government that as a preliminary search of the "Bundesrath" did not give any indication of there being contraband on board, there was no justification for the delivery of that vessel to a Prize Court.

No. 16.

The Marquess of Salisbury to Sir F. Lascelles.

(Extract.) Foreign Office, January 13, 1900.

Baron von Eckardstein called at the Foreign Office yesterday and stated to Mr. Bertie, for my information, that the German Government had received with satisfaction the assurance which I had given him on the 10th instant that I would do everything in my power to avoid, if possible, the recurrence of such incidents as those of the German ships recently seized.

With regard to the question discussed between Baron von Eckardstein and myself as to a parallel of latitude down to which all ships should be exempt from search, the German Government would be greatly obliged if I could see my way to fix some point other than parallel 10, as that parallel appeared, in my opinion, not to be suitable owing to steamers when south of Mambasa hugging the Portuguese coast so close as to be within territorial limits.

No. 17.

The Marquess of Salisbury to Sir F. Lascelles.

(Telegraphic.) Foreign Office, January 14, 1900.

I have given to Baron von Eckardstein, for transmission to Count Bulow, the following verbal message:—

"Orders have been given to discontinue the search of vessels at Aden.

"The question of the instructions that can be sent to British naval officers to show special consideration for mail steamers is under consideration. Orders have meanwhile been given that no German mail steamers shall be arrested on suspicion alone until the examination of the 'Bundesrath' is completed and the result known."

No. 18.

Sir F. Lascelles to the Marquess of Salisbury.

(Telegraphic.) Berlin, January 15, 1900.

I have the honour to inform your Lordship that the instructions which have been sent to-day to Count Hatzfeldt have been communicated to me by Count Bulow through Baron von Richthofen.

His Excellency's most earnest desire is to obtain the following modifications in the statement made to Baron Eckardstein by your Lordship :—

Firstly, that the orders forbidding the arrest of mail steamships until the completion of the examination of the "Bundesrath" may be prolonged ; and,

Secondly, that the orders which have been issued for the discontinuance of the search of vessels at Aden may be made applicable to any place situated at a similar distance from the seat of war.

No. 19.

The Marquess of Salisbury to Sir F. Lascelles.

(Telegraphic.) Foreign Office, January 16, 1900.

Baron von Eckardstein informed me to-day, with reference to the search of mail steamers for contraband of war, that considerable anxiety was expressed in Berlin that some arrangement should be come to on this question.

I said that there were many difficulties regarding this question, which I was ready to discuss with the German Government, but that orders had been given for the present that no more mail steamers were to be arrested on suspicion alone until further orders.

I observed that the term mail steamer could not safely be applied to any steamer that had a bag of letters on board, and that it required definition. We understood by mail steamers steamers of subsidized lines, and consequently owned by persons whom the German Government considered as respectable.

He further urged that we should extend the arrangement of giving up the examination of ships at Aden to all places equidistant with Aden from Delagoa Bay.

I said we did not object to this proposal.

With this information he appeared satisfied

No. 20.

The Marquess of Salisbury to Sir F. Lascelles.

Sir, Foreign Office, January 17, 1900.

I transmit to your Excellency herewith translation of a note* which I received on the 5th instant from the German Ambassador at this Court, stating that, according to a communication received by his Government, the mail steamer "General," of the German East African line, had been stopped at Aden, occupied by force by British troops, and ordered to land her cargo. Count Hatzfeldt proceeds to request that orders may be given for the immediate release of the steamer and her cargo, for that portion of her cargo which had already been landed being replaced on board, and for the vessel being permitted to continue her voyage to the places mentioned in her itinerary. His Excellency further requests that explicit instructions be sent to the Commanders of British ships in African waters to respect the rules of international law, and to place no further impediments in the way of trade between neutrals.

---

* No. 7.

I received with some surprise a communication from the Representative of a Power with whom Her Majesty's Government believe themselves to be on the most friendly terms—worded in so abrupt a manner, and couched in language which imputed to Her Majesty's Naval Commanders that they had shown a disrespect to international law, and placed unnecessary impediments in the way of neutral commerce. There is no foundation for these imputations.

I at once requested the Lords Commissioners of the Admiralty and the Secretary of State for India to make inquiries whether the facts were as reported to the German Government.

From reports which have reached Her Majesty's Government by telegraph the following appear to be the facts of the case.

Before the arrival of the vessel at Aden it was already known that she had on board among her passengers thirty-one men of German and Flemish nationality who had all the appearance of their being on their way to the South African Republic for the purposes of military service there. On her arrival, information reached the British Resident that there were suspicious articles on board destined for Delagoa Bay, and that boxes of ammunition were buried under the reserve store of coal. The Senior Naval Officer at Aden thereupon boarded her on the ground of strong suspicion of her carrying contraband of war destined for the enemy and commenced to search her.

The Lords Commissioners of the Admiralty on being informed of the detention of the vessel, telegraphed to the Senior Naval Officer that such detention on suspicion only was undesirable if the vessel carried mails, unless contraband of war was found on board. The Senior Naval Officer was at the same time called upon to carry out the necessary search as quickly as possible, and there can be no doubt that in this respect he did his utmost to avoid any unnecessary delay; the crew of Her Majesty's ship "Marathon," assisted by 100 coolies, having worked day and night The vessel having arrived on the 4th January, he reported on the 6th that the search had been completed. The cargo was restored with the greatest possible rapidity and the vessel sailed on the morning of the 10th instant.

The Senior Naval Officer reported that he had found on board several large cases of rifle ammunition for Mauser, Mannlicher, and sporting rifles consigned to Mombasa; these were entered on the manifest, and he believed them to be destined bona fide as consigned. He had found also on board consignments of axle-trees for waggons and chloride of lime for Delagoa Bay, both of which appeared on the manifest. The captain of the vessel gave an undertaking that these should be handed over to Her Majesty's Consul at Delagoa Bay. At the bottom of the hold was a cargo of food for Delagoa Bay. Heavy machinery and boilers appear to have been stowed on the top of the store of coals in which it was reported that ammunition was concealed. The search for the cases, therefore, must have been conducted under great difficulties.

There seems reason to believe that among the passengers on board going to the Transvaal were a number of trained artillerymen, but there was no sufficient evidence as to their destination to justify further action on the part of the officers conducting the search.

Until they receive the detailed reports, which will reach them by mail, Her Majesty's Government cannot decide whether the British naval officers in any respect exceeded the right of search accorded by international practice to belligerents. They recognise, however, that in the case of steamers carrying mails, that right should be exercised with all possible consideration, and only resorted to when the circumstances are clearly such as to justify the gravest suspicion.

They regret the inconvenience which has been caused on the occasion.

Your Excellency will read this despatch to the German Minister for Foreign Affairs and leave him a copy of it.

I am, etc.,
(Signed) SALISBURY.

No. 21.

The Marquess of Salisbury to Sir F. Lascelles.

(Telegraphic.) Foreign Office, January 18, 1900.

"Bundesrath" and cargo released.

No. 22.

Sir F. Lascelles to the Marquess of Salisbury.

My Lord, Berlin, January 19, 1900.

Your Lordship's despatch of the 17th instant on the subject of the capture of the German mail steamer "General" reached me last night, and as I was aware that Count von Bulow was to reply to-day to an interpellation in the Reichstag on the subject of the seizure of German ships by Her Majesty's naval authorities, I called upon Baron von Richthofen this morning, and begged him to communicate the substance of your Lordship's despatch, and more especially the passage in which your Lordship animadverts on the abrupt language of Count Hatzfeldt's note of the 5th instant, before Count Bulow should make his speech, and at the same time to request his Excellency to give me an opportunity later of carrying out your Lordship's instructions to read the despatch to him and leave him a copy of it.

Baron von Richthofen argued that, in the opinion of the German Government, the action of Her Majesty's naval officers in arresting the German ships had, in fact, been a violation of international law and an undue interference with neutral commerce, to which I replied that Her Majesty's Government did not share this view, and as there was a difference of opinion on the subject, it seemed to me that the German Government were going very far in asking that definite instructions should be sent to Her Majesty's Naval Commanders before even an inquiry had been instituted into the merits of the case. It was evident that your Lordship resented the tone and language of Count Hatzfeldt's note, and I was anxious that this fact should be brought to Count Bulow's notice before he made his speech in the Reichstag.

At Baron von Richthofen's request, I left with him your Lordship's despatch, of which I had not then had time to cause a copy to be made, and I have no doubt that he communicated it at once to Count Bulow. He has now returned it to me, and I shall take an early opportunity of formally carrying out your Lordship's instructions by reading it to Count Bulow, and leaving a copy of it with his Excellency.

I have, etc.,
(Signed) FRANK C. LASCELLES.

No. 23.

Sir F. Lascelles to the Marquess of Salisbury.

My Lord, Berlin, January 20, 1900.

With reference to my telegram of the 15th instant, I have the honour to transmit to your Lordship herewith copy and translation of a speech which Count von Bulow delivered in the Reichstag yesterday, in answer to an interpellation bearing the signatures of members from all parts of the Imperial Diet, asking for information concerning the steps taken by the German Government in the matter of the recent seizures of German mail steamers by British ships of war.

Count von Bulow, after recapitulating the views of the German Government upon the question of the circumstances under which a belligerent ship has the right to stop a neutral vessel, announced that the "General," "Herzog," and "Bundesrath" had all been released by the British Government, after representations had been addressed to them by the German Government. His Excellency also sketched the outlines of the understanding come to between the two Governments with regard to the future stopping of German vessels.

I have, etc.,
(Signed) FRANK C. LASCELLES.

Inclosure in No. 23.

Speech by Count von Bulow in the Reichstag on January 19, 1900.

(Translation.)

The proposer of this motion laid stress at the commencement of his speech upon the profound concern which has been caused throughout the whole of Germany by the seizure of German steamers by British warships. Out of consideration for the legitimate agitation of public opinion, I have gladly expressed my readiness to reply to the interpellation which has just been made. On the other hand, the House will readily understand, if, in view of the gravity of the whole political situation, I confine myself to a strict statement of the questions involved. The facts of the case have been so admirably stated by the previous speaker that I have nothing to add to his remarks on this head. Before I deal with our attitude towards the events in question, I would wish to make the following observations with regard to the affair from the point of view of international law. I followed the learned exposition of the previous speaker with the greatest interest. But he himself laid stress on the fact that there are as yet no legal principles fixed and binding on all the Maritime Powers respecting the rights of neutrals to trade with a belligerent, or the rights of belligerents in respect of neutral commerce. Proposals have repeatedly been made to regulate by way of international agreements the disputed points of international law with regard to maritime warfare. Attempts at a settlement have so far invariably failed, owing to the obstacles created by the divergent views of the different Powers. An endeavour was made to include this question in the deliberations of the Peace Conference at the Hague. The sole result was that the Conference gave expression to the wish that an attempt should be made by means of subsequent international Conferences to regulate, on the one hand, the rights and duties of neutrals, and, on the other, the question of private property at sea. The German Empire would not withhold its concurrence and support if a prospect were to arise of defining, more distinctly than heretofore, in conjunction with other Powers, the lines for an international settlement of the disputed points of maritime law. For the moment, however, the speaker was only too right when he observed that maritime law is still in a liquid, elastic, and imperfect state. There are still many gaps in maritime law, which, as matters now stand, are only too frequently apt to be supplemented by armed force at critical junctures—in other words, in the domain of maritime law the standard of might has as yet been by no means superseded by the standard of right. I should like to lay down the following propositions, drawn up in conjunction with other competent Departments, as a system of law which shall be operative in practice, and a disregard for which would, in our opinion, constitute a breach of international treaties and customs :—

1. Neutral merchant ships on the high seas or in the territorial waters of the belligerent Powers (apart from the right of convoy, which does not arise in the case in point) are subject to the right of visit by the warships of the belligerent parties. This undoubtedly applies to waters which are not too remote from the seat of war. No special agreement exists at present as regards mail steamers.

2. The right of visit is to be exercised with as much consideration as possible, and without undue molestation.

3. The procedure in visiting a vessel consists of two or three acts, according to the circumstances of each case : stopping the ship, examining her papers, and searching her. The two first acts may be undertaken at any time, and without other preliminary proceeding. If the neutral vessel resists the order to stop, or if irregularities are discovered in her papers, or if the presence of contraband is revealed, then the belligerent vessel may capture the neutral, in order that the case may be investigated and decided upon by a competent Prize Court.

4. By the term "contraband of war" only such articles or persons are to be understood as are suited for war, and at the same time are destined for one of the belligerents. The class of articles to be included in this definition is a matter of dispute, and, with the exception of arms and ammunition, is determined, as a rule, with reference to the special circumstances of each case, unless one of the belligerents has expressly notified to the neutrals in a regular manner what articles it intends to treat as contraband, and has met with no opposition.

5. Discovered contraband is liable to confiscation, whether with or without compensation depends on the circumstances of each case.

6. If the seizure of the vessel was not justified, the belligerent State is bound to order immediate release of ship and cargo, and to pay full compensation.

According to the above, and in view of the present practice of nations, it would not have been possible to lodge a protest against the stopping on the high seas of the three steamers of the East African line, or against the examination of their papers. On the other hand, by the same standard, the seizure and conveying to Durban of the "Bundesrath" and "Herzog," and the discharging of the cargoes of the "Bundesrath" and the "General" were undertaken upon insufficiently founded suspicion, and do not appear to have been justified.

I should wish to take this opportunity for observing that we strove from the outset to induce the English Government, in dealing with neutral vessels consigned to Delagoa Bay, to adhere to that theory of international law which guarantees the greatest security to commerce and industry, and which finds expression in the principle that, for ships consigned from neutral States to a neutral port, the notion of contraband of war simply does not exist. To this the English Government demurred. We have reserved to ourselves the right of raising this question in the future, in the first place because it was essential to us to arrive at an expeditious solution of the pending difficulty, and secondly, because in point of fact, the principle here set up by us has not yet met with universal recognition in theory and practice.

I should like to sum up in the following words the position which we have taken up on the strength of the above theoretic view, which we believe corresponds with the general opinion of the civilised world. We recognise the rights of neutral vessels and neutral trade and traffic. We do not ignore the duties imposed by a state of war upon the shipowners, merchants, and vessels of a neutral State, but we require the belligerents that they shall not extend the powers they possess in this respect beyond the strict necessities of the war. We demand of the belligerents that they shall respect the inalienable rights of legitimate neutral commerce, and we require above all things that the right of search and of the eventual capture of neutral ships and goods shall be exercised by the belligerents in a manner conformable to the maintenance of neutral commerce, and of the relations existing between friendly and civilised nations.

Proceeding from this principle we at once made a strong representation in London respecting the action of the British naval authorities. We demanded in the first place the immediate release of the steamers.

In compliance with our demand the steamers "General" and "Herzog" were released forthwith. The "Bundesrath" was released yesterday.

In the second place we demanded the payment of compensation for the unjustified detention of our ships and for the losses thereby incurred by the German subjects whose interests were involved. The obligation to payment of compensation has been recognised in principle by England, and the British Government have declared their readiness to give every legitimate satisfaction.

Thirdly, we drew attention to the necessity for issuing instructions to the British Naval Commanders to molest no German merchantmen in places not in the vicinity of the seat of war, or, at any rate, in places north of Aden. The English Government thereupon issued an instruction, according to which the stopping and searching of vessels shall in future take place neither in Aden nor at any point at an equal or greater distance from the seat of war.

Fourthly, we stated it to be highly desirable that the English Government should instruct their Commanders not to arrest steamers flying the German mail-flag.

The English Government hereupon issued an order that in future German mail steamers are not to be stopped and searched upon suspicion only. This order will remain in force until another arrangement has been arrived at between the two Governments.

Fifthly, we proposed that all the points in dispute should be submitted to arbitration. The English Government have expressed the hope that there will be no necessity for arbitration, but have declared their concurrence in the institution of a Tribunal, if necessary, to arbitrate upon the claims for compensation.

Lastly, the English Government have given expression to their regret for what has occurred. We cherish the confident hope that such regrettable incidents will not be repeated. We trust that the English naval authorities will not again proceed, without sufficient cause, in an unfriendly and precipitate manner against our ships.

The genuineness and honesty of the German Shipping Companies, which have again been demonstrated on this occasion in the case of the German East African line, ought to be a sufficient guarantee against this ; a far greater should be found in the consideration due from one friendly State to another. It is just because we are honestly desirous to maintain good and friendly relations between Germany and England that we do not wish incidents to occur which are eminently destined to hamper the maintenance of such relations, which are only possible when founded on a basis of complete equality of treatment and mutual consideration. The German Empire, which for thirty years—since its first foundation—has so often proved how free it is from all aggressive tendencies, has the right to be treated in the most considerate manner by all the other States. The grateful circumstance that the present motion has been supported by the very large majority of this House is a fresh proof that whenever there is a question of vindicating the cause of law and the legal rights of Germans, there subsists that accord between this House and the Confederated Governments which lends a firm support to our foreign policy.

EXERCISE V.

CORRESPONDENCE RESPECTING THE CONSTITUTIONAL RELATIONS OF THE AUSTRALIAN COMMONWEALTH AND STATES IN REGARD TO EXTERNAL AFFAIRS.

No. 1.

Lieutenant-Governor Sir S. J. Way (South Australia) to Mr. Chamberlain.

(Received 9.50 a.m., September 18, 1902.)

Telegram.

My Ministers request me to inform you that they have been requested by Commonwealth Government to furnish report to them as to conduct of

South Australian officials relative to refusing to arrest crew of Dutch vessel "Vondel," concerning which Governor-General was requested by you, at the instance of Foreign Office, to enquire and report result; but my Ministers hold that constitutional means of obtaining information on the matter is through the Governor of South Australia, and that Commonwealth Government have not jurisdiction as to conduct of South Australian officials. (While) declining to furnish report to Commonwealth Government, my Ministers are in immediate readiness to report to you, through me, if desired.

No. 2.

Mr. Chamberlain to Lieutenant-Governor Sir S. J. Way (South Australia).

(Sent 12.55 p.m., September 19, 1902.)

Telegram.

Should be glad to have information desired by Dutch Government as to "Vondel," and also to have full statement of views of Ministers as to channel of communication in matters affecting external affairs and position of Consuls.

No. 3.

Acting Governor-General Lord Tennyson to Mr. Chamberlain.

(Received 11.25 a.m., September 22, 1902.)

Telegram.

Re "Vondel," Lieutenant-Governor of South Australia informs me that he has telegraphed to you refusal of his Government to report to you through my Responsible Advisers. My Ministers advise that case in point is within the provisions of Constitution in relation to first, external affairs; second, trade and commerce with foreign states; third, navigation and shipping. As treaty obligations involved my Responsible Advisers consider that they should have been originally approached by the Consular representative at Adelaide. They would be grateful if the Consular representatives could be advised to come to Governor-General directly in future through the Consul-General.

In view of refusal of Government of South Australia, Government of Commonwealth propose to appoint Royal Commission of enquiry into circumstances of "Vondel" incident; I presume there is no objection.

No. 4.

Mr. Chamberlain to Acting Governor-General Lord Tennyson.

(Sent 5.40 p.m., September 25, 1902.)

Telegram.

Referring to your telegram of 22nd September,* on receipt of telegram from Lieutenant-Governor, South Australia, informing me of attitude of his Government, I telegraphed to him as follows, in order to obtain information required without delay:—

---

* No. 3.

Telegram begins: See No. 2. *Telegram ends.*

Presume Royal Commission could not compel witnesses attend and give evidence. Very desirable to have final decision as to proper channel of communication in such matters as soon as possible. Pending such decision by High Court, would not suggested instructions to Consuls in view of attitude of South Australian Government be likely to lead to delay and inconvenience in dealing with representations from Consuls?

As at present advised I agree with your Ministers, but desire to await statement from South Australian Government before giving definite expression of my views. Binding decision can, of course, only come from High Court.

No. 5.

Acting Governor-General Lord Tennyson to Mr. Chamberlain.

(Received 10.15 a.m., September 27, 1902.)

Telegram.

Government of South Australia publicly interprets your telegram* to them equivalent to your acceptance of their views. Government of Commonwealth, which has acted throughout at your request, much embarrassed. See copy of correspondence sent by post of 27th August. My Responsible Advisers request that you should send telegram for publication correcting statement of Government of South Australia.

My Ministers advise that their Royal Commissioners have power to compel witnesses (to) attend and give evidence. Delay need not arise. Consuls dealing with Commonwealth directly, as they now appeal to their Consul-General in all matters of importance.

No. 6.

Acting Governor-General Lord Tennyson to Mr. Chamberlain.

(Received September 29, 1902.)

Commonwealth of Australia, Governor-General, Melbourne,

Sir, August 21, 1902.

With reference to your despatch of the 18th of April last,† I have now the honour to enclose, for your information, a copy of a letter, which I have received from the Acting Prime Minister, covering a copy of a correspondence which has taken place between the Government of the Commonwealth and the Government of the State of South Australia, on the subject of the arrest at Adelaide of the crew of the Dutch vessel "Vondel."

Dated 18th August, 1902.

I have, etc.
TENNYSON,
Acting Governor-General.

---

* No. 2.

† Not printed.

Enclosure in No. 6.

Department of External Affairs, Melbourne, August 18, 1902.

My Lord,

Referring to the despatch of the Secretary of State for the Colonies, dated 18th April, 1902, in which were transmitted to His Excellency the Governor-General, for the consideration and report of his Ministers, certain papers relating to the arrest at Adelaide of the crew of the Dutch vessel "Vondel," I have the honour to inform you that, as it was believed that the Government of South Australia were in possession of all the knowledge necessary to enable a report to be furnished, a copy of the Secretary of State's despatch, with enclosures, was forwarded to the Premier of South Australia on the 29th May.

As will be seen from copies of the letters which have passed between this Government and that of South Australia, which I forward herewith,* no acknowledgment of, or reply to, that communication was furnished.

On the 5th July the Premier of South Australia was reminded that this Government was anxious to furnish Mr. Chamberlain with the information asked for, at an early date. To that communication, also, no reply was received, and on the 28th July a further letter was sent, again forwarding copies of the Secretary of State's despatch and enclosures. In reply to that letter, one dated the 2nd August was received, and on the 6th idem I had the honour to inform Your Excellency in accordance with the reply which had been received from the Premier of South Australia to the effect that the matter was then in the hands of the Law Officers of that State, who had been asked to take immediate action.

A fresh communication, dated 13th August, was received in this Department on the 15th, and is included in the correspondence forwarded.* From this it will be seen that the Premier of South Australia considers that the Secretary of State has acted in an unconstitutional manner in communicating with the Governor-General of the Commonwealth on the subject referred to in his despatch. The reply made is also attached.

I shall be pleased if copies of the correspondence in this matter can be forwarded to the Secretary of State for the Colonies.

I have, etc.,

ALFRED DEAKIN

His Excellency the Acting Governor-General of Australia.

No. 7.

Mr. Chamberlain to Lieutenant-Governor Sir S. J. Way (South Australia).

(Sent 12.20 p.m., October 1, 1902.)

Telegram.

Governor-General informs me that your Ministers have interpreted my telegram of 19th September† as equivalent to acceptance of their views. Should be glad if you could point out to them that my telegram intended only to avoid delay in obtaining information as to "Vondel," without prejudice to question between your Government and Commonwealth. On general question my present views implied in originally asking Commonwealth Government for information, but pending receipt of views of your Ministers requested in my telegram of 19th September, I reserve further expression of opinion.

---

* Not given in this Exercise—[*Authors*]. † No. 2.

No. 8.

Mr. Chamberlain to Acting Governor-General Lord Tennyson.

(Sent 12.20 p.m., October 1, 1902.)

Telegram.

Referring to your telegram of 27th September,* following telegram sent to Governor, South Australia :—

Telegram begins : See No. 7. *Telegram ends.*

I would deprecate appointment of Royal Commission as likely to embitter discussion of question, and possibly lead to its being in some form brought before State Courts. Would it be possible to arrive at working arrangement with State Governments on such matters, pending final decision by High Court? Present disposition of State Governments seems to call for great caution in pressing rights of Commonwealth before it is in a position to enforce them.

No. 9.

Acting Governor-General Lord Tennyson to Mr. Chamberlain.

Received 2.35 p.m., October 3, 1902.)

Telegram.

My Responsible Advisers much obliged for your telegram of 1st October.† They do not propose any further action. Most anxious to avoid any irritation to the States. At their suggestion views are being exchanged, which will be forwarded shortly. They are quite content to place in your hands whole matter.

No. 10.

Lieutenant-Governor Sir S. J. Way (South Australia) to Mr. Chamberlain.

(Received October 27, 1902.)

Sir, State Government House, Adelaide, September 25, 1902.

In continuation of the correspondence relating to the Dutch ship "Vondel," I have to acknowledge receipt of your cablegram of the 20th instant,‡ informing me that you would be glad to have the information desired by the Dutch Government, and also a full statement of the views of my Ministers as to the channel of communication in matters affecting external affairs and the position of Consuls.

2. I now enclose, as requested, a memorandum signed by Mr. Jenkins, the Premier, stating the views of himself and his colleagues on the general question mentioned in your cablegram.

---

* No. 5. † No. 8. ‡ No. 2.

3. A report as to the matter complained of by the Dutch Government is being prepared with all possible despatch, and it is hoped it will be ready in time for next mail.

4. I telegraphed to His Excellency the Acting Governor-General on September 20th as follows:—

> "My Ministers refuse to report through Commonwealth Government. I telegraphed to Secretary of State for the Colonies to that effect 18th September, intimating that they were ready to furnish report direct to Secretary of State for the Colonies. I received answer from him stating that he would be glad to receive answer from us, and expression of the views of Ministers as to channel communication matters relating to external affairs and position of Consuls."

5. To-day I have informed His Excellency that I am furnishing you with the report and statement of views which you desire.

I have, etc.,
S. J. WAY,
Lieutenant-Governor.

Enclosure in No. 10.

Memorandum from Ministers to His Excellency the Lieutenant-Governor.

Premier's Office, Adelaide, September 23, 1902.

In compliance with the request of the Right Honourable the Secretary of State for the Colonies that Ministers should submit a full statement of their views as to the proper "channel of communication" in matters affecting external affairs and the position of Consuls, that is, whether in such matters this Government should, as Ministers contend, communicate direct with the Imperial Government, or should do so through the Commonwealth Government, Ministers respectfully submit the following propositions in support of the views they take upon this question:—

1. With regard to all matters—
    (A) Connected with Departments actually transferred,
    (B) Upon which the Commonwealth Parliament has power to make laws and has made laws,

Ministers concede that the Commonwealth Government is the proper channel of communication with the Imperial Government.

Upon all other matters the relations which existed between the States and the Imperial Government before federation have been preserved by the Constitution.

The Commonwealth Bill of 1891 contained a clause requiring all communications between the Imperial Government and a State to be made through the Governor-General. But this clause was not adopted by the Convention of 1897-8 which framed the Constitution.

2. It seems to Ministers obvious from the practical side of affairs that the "channel of communication" with the Imperial Government must be one in which some power relative to the subject of communication actually flows; especially where the subject may require action for the protection

of Imperial interests. At present, as Ministers submit, no power exists in the Commonwealth Government regarding either "external affairs" or the position of Consuls.

3. The vague power granted to the Commonwealth to make laws with respect to external affairs (Constitution, Sec. 51, Sub-sec. xxix.) is one which is likely to be the subject of much contention; and in the interests of the State, Ministers do not feel justified in formulating any opinion as to the extent of authority which it may finally be found to confer upon the Commonwealth. It may or it may not mean that the Commonwealth has power to make laws to enforce Imperial Treaties, and to punish State Officers who violate such Treaties. But no such law has yet been made.

If a State Officer is charged with acting in contravention of any Imperial obligation of this kind the Commonwealth Government has no power to even call upon him for an explanation, much less to punish him if he has done wrong. The power to do these things remains at present with the State Government. It would be absurd to make the Commonwealth Government the "channel of communication" in matters in which they are powerless to act; and it would be an indignity to this Government, with whom, at present at least, lies the duty of maintaining Imperial Treaties within its borders, if it were compelled to approach His Majesty's Ministers through the medium of any other Government.

4. It is important to remember with regard to Treaties that the Commonwealth has no more Legislative power than the State.

The Bill of 1891 contained a power to legislate as to "external affairs and Treaties," and in the covering clause it was provided that all Treaties made by the Commonwealth should be binding, and these provisions were repeated in the Adelaide draft of 1897. But ultimately all reference to Treaties under the head of Legislative power was struck out.

It is true the Constitution gives the High Court original jurisdiction of "matters arising under any Treaty" (Sec. 75, Sub-sec. 1), and it has been suggested that this judicial power gives the Federal Government some kind of claim to be the "channel of communication" with the Imperial Government regarding the observance of Treaties in any State of the Commonwealth. This suggestion is, it is submitted, not well founded. If the claim of a Government to be the "channel of communication" can be based upon the jurisdiction possessed by its Courts, this Government has as good a claim to be the "channel of communication" as the Commonwealth Government.

There is no legislation which gives the High Court exclusive jurisdiction of "matters arising under any Treaty," and the State Courts have in such matters equal jurisdiction.

> "State Courts may in the exercise of their ordinary and rightful jurisdiction incidentally take cognizance of cases arising under the Constitution the laws and Treaties of the United States."—Kent Comm. 1, 397.

This doctrine is, it is submitted, as applicable under the Constitution of the Commonwealth as under that of the United States.

No agreement excluding the right of the State to control its own officers in their conduct regarding Imperial Treaties and to communicate direct with the Imperial Government thereon, can be well founded upon the fact of judicial power in such matters having been conferred upon the High Court.

5. The same reasoning applies, *a fortiori*, to the contention of Ministers that in "matters affecting the position of Consuls" the Commonwealth Government should not be the "channel of communication" between this Government and the Imperial Government. Such matters are not within the Legislative power of the Commonwealth, and cannot in any way come within the executive control of the Commonwealth Government.

> "Matters affecting Consuls or other representatives of other countries" are within the original jurisdiction of the High Court (Sec. 75, Sub-sec. ii.).

Such matters are also equally within the jurisdiction of the State Courts. But in the case of the Commonwealth, they do not—and without an alteration of the Constitution cannot—come within the grasp of the Legislative or Executive power. In the case of the State they do.

It would be humiliating to this State if in a matter concerning which the Commonwealth has no legislative or executive power, it was compelled to recognise the Commonwealth Government as the "channel of communication" with the Imperial Government. Nor would it be any accretion to the status of the Commonwealth Government if it were to be made a mere conduit pipe for the conveyance of information regarding matters in which it has neither power nor responsibility.

Ministers exceedingly regret that difficulty should arise in defining the respective positions of the Commonwealth and State Governments relative to the matters under discussion. They desire to be loyal to the Federal compact, and to raise no difficulties regarding mere forms of procedure. But these issues, as Ministers humbly believe, involve matters of substance, regarding which, unless otherwise directed by Parliament, they cannot depart from the views above respectfully set forth.

J. G. JENKINS,
Premier.

No. 11.

Acting Governor-General Lord Tennyson to Mr. Chamberlain.

(Received November 3, 1902.)

Commonwealth of Australia, Governor-General,
Melbourne, October 1, 1902.

Sir,

In continuation of my telegraphic despatch of the 27th September,* I have the honour to transmit to you the accompanying copy of a further correspondence which has taken place between the Governments of the Commonwealth and South Australia, relative to the complaint of the Dutch Government regarding the ship "Vondel."

I have, etc.,
TENNYSON,
Acting Governor-General.

---

* No. 5.

Enclosure 1 in No. 11.

Premier's Office, Adelaide, September 3, 1902.

Sir,

I have the honour to acknowledge the receipt of your letter of the 19th August last upon the question of the arrest of the crew of the Dutch vessel "Vondel" at Adelaide.

With the greatest deference I am unable to agree with your view that there is no reason for objection upon Constitutional grounds to the method which the Right Honourable the Secretary of State has adopted in seeking information as to the conduct of Government Authorities in this State. I submit that the constitutional method of seeking such information is by direct request to this Government through His Excellency the Governor, and I regret that this Government should have been slighted, as I humbly conceive it has been slighted, by a departure from established and Constitutional methods.

In the result I have the honour to say that this Government cannot allow any of its officers to submit their conduct to enquiry by any other Government. I need not say that I shall be most willing to direct full enquiry into the circumstances of this case, should the Right Honourable the Secretary of State intimate to my Government through His Excellency the Governor that he desires that such enquiry shall be made.

I have, etc.,
J. G. Jenkins,
Premier.

The Honourable The Acting Prime Minister of the Commonwealth of Australia, Melbourne.

Enclosure 2 in No. 11.

Department of External Affairs, Melbourne, September 26, 1902.

Sir,

I have the honour to acknowledge the receipt of your letter of the 3rd September, in reply to mine of the 19th August, relating to the enquiry which you were invited to undertake into the circumstances connected with the application of the Consul for the Netherlands in September, 1901, for assistance in the recovery at Adelaide of certain members of the crew of the "Vondel."

It is noted with regret that you conceive the Government of South Australia to have been slighted by the action of the Secretary of State in referring the question to this Government, and that you assert your determination only to comply with the request preferred by him, should he communicate with you through your Lieutenant-Governor.

You will not expect me to discuss the action of the Secretary of State, except so far as may be necessary to show that this Government were in no way parties to any trespass upon the rights of your State or upon the consideration due to your Government as its Executive. For that purpose, it will be necessary to shortly summarise the facts.

On the 8th April last the Ambassador of the Netherlands complained to the Imperial Government of a refusal of the local authorities at Adelaide to provide the assistance to which the captain of the ship named claimed that he was entitled under Article 10 of the Anglo-Netherlands Convention of 1856. The Secretary of State for the Colonies transmitted these representations to the Governor-General with a request that they should be considered and reported upon by this Government. The same course has been pursued in a number of cases in which enquiries of various kinds have been sent through the Government of the Commonwealth to the Governments of the several States; some of them apparently for convenience only, others because of their subject matter. These have invariably been responded to by the States without demur, even when the subject of the enquiry has not been specifically within the Federal charter.

In this instance the matter sought to be investigated appears to me to lie clearly within the sphere of the Commonwealth. The fulfilment of Treaty obligations is obviously one of those "external affairs" peculiarly Federal, which could not be dealt with independently by each State without producing an intolerable condition of confusion prolific in international complications. "Trade and Commerce with other countries" and "Shipping" are also specifically placed under Commonwealth control. The inference, therefore, is, that in strictness any application by the Consul for the Netherlands made under the Convention of 1856 ought to have been directed to the Federal Government, and probably that anything done in consequence must be taken to have been done under its jurisdiction.

For these reasons among others, it appears to me that the application of the Secretary of State to the Governor-General was properly made to the Government responsible for and most concerned as to the validity of the course adopted in respect to the "Vondel." But these views were not pressed, all questions as to the form or channel of communication being waived in order that the information sought by a foreign Government might be secured without further delay. Now, and perhaps for some time to come, until the respective areas of Federal and State authority are more clearly defined, there must often be unintentional trespasses on either side. Hence your Government was simply invited to undertake whatever enquiry was necessary to enable us to reply to the Secretary of State, though up till now we have remained without any assurance of your compliance.

Yesterday, however, the Lieutenant-Governor of your State informed Lord Tennyson that, as desired by the Right Honourable the Secretary of State for the Colonies, he had requested your Government to furnish him, for transmission to Mr. Chamberlain, with a report on the matters complained of by the Dutch Government as to the ship "Vondel." As you are therefore about to furnish the information asked for in my letter of May 29th, it is unnecessary for this Government to take further action at present.

Noting that your Lieutenant-Governor has also requested a statement of the views of your Government "as to the channel of communication in matters relating to external affairs and the position of Consuls," I may be permitted to suggest that probably an exchange of views on these points between our Governments, might contribute to an earlier and more satisfactory agreement. Of course, it must be recognised that neither the Secretary of State for the Colonies nor our respective Administrations can separately or by agreement increase or diminish our mutual rights or obligations where these are granted or necessarily implied in the Constitution of the Commonwealth.

I have, etc.,

ALFRED DEAKIN.

The Honourable The Premier of South Australia, Adelaide.

Enclosure 3 in No. 11.

Premier's Office, Adelaide, September 29, 1902.

Sir,

I have the honour to acknowledge the receipt of your letter of the 26th instant, in reply to mine of the 3rd instant, relating to the question of the complaint by the Netherlands Consul-General against South Australian officials in connection with the crew of the ship "Vondel."

I am unable, with the greatest submission, to agree with your opinion that the fulfilment of Imperial Treaty obligations is one of those "external affairs" contemplated by the Constitution as falling within the Federal power, and "which could not be dealt with independently by each state without producing an intolerable condition of confusion prolific in international complications."

As I construe the Constitution the "external affairs" contemplated by the Constitution are the "external affairs" of the Commonwealth, not those of the Imperial Government. It is not, as I believe, an "external affair" of the Commonwealth whether the officials of any particular State and particularly those of the judiciary of the State, do or do not properly construe the terms of Imperial Treaties and act in accordance therewith. On the contrary, it would, I think, be intolerable if the Commonwealth were to exercise any power of interference in such a matter. No "intolerable condition of confusion prolific in international complications" has heretofore arisen from each State having had the duty of fulfilling Imperial Treaties within its own borders, and your prophecy of the disaster which would follow the continued performance by the States of such obligations finds, I submit, no warrant in the history of Australia.

I accept with pleasure your suggestion that our respective Governments should further exchange views upon the points at issue, and in pursuance thereof I have now the honour to transmit to you a copy of a Memorandum* addressed to the Right Honourable the Secretary of State for the Colonies, which contains the views of this Government as to the "proper channel of communication" upon such matters as that now under discussion.

I have, etc.,

J. G. JENKINS,

Premier.

The Honourable The Acting Prime Minister, Commonwealth of
Australia, Melbourne.

---

* Enclosure in No. 10.

No. 12.

Lieutenant-Governor Sir S. J. Way (South Australia) to Mr. Chamberlain.

(Received November 17, 1902.)

Sir, Government House, Adelaide, October 16, 1902.

Referring to your cablegram of 2nd October,* stating that the Governor-General informed you that my Ministers interpreted your cablegram of 19th September† as equivalent to acceptance of their views, I have, as you requested, pointed out to them that your cable message was only intended to avoid delay in obtaining information as to the "Vondel" without prejudice to the question between this Government and the Commonwealth. This, I may observe, was their, and my, misunderstanding, subject to the following inadvertent error made by the Attorney-General, Mr. Gordon, before he had given full consideration to the effect of your message.

2. The only foundation for the supposition that my Ministers had fallen into such a misunderstanding was an interview by the reporters of the two Adelaide morning papers with Mr. Gordon, in which he undoubtedly fell into the misunderstanding to which you advert. I enclose a copy of the report‡ of the interview with a passage marked in red ink.

3. I also send herewith two leading articles‡ on the subject, which appeared in the *Register* and *Advertiser* of 27th September.

4. I intend to take an early opportunity of submitting my own views on the subject for your consideration.

I have, etc.,
S. J. WAY,
Lieutenant-Governor.

No. 13.

Mr. Chamberlain to Lieutenant-Governor Sir S. J. Way (South Australia).

Sir, Downing Street, November 25, 1902.

I have had under my consideration the Memorandum of your Ministers, forwarded in your despatch of the 25th September,§ in which they state their views as to the proper channel of communication in regard to matters arising in Australia affecting external affairs and the position of Consuls.

I fully recognise the desire of your Ministers to be loyal to the Federal compact, and to raise no difficulties in regard to mere forms of procedure, and I agree in their view as to the importance of the issues involved in this question.

My own views on the subject were indicated, as I have already pointed out in my telegram of the 1st of October last,‖ by the fact that I addressed the Commonwealth upon the subject of the complaint of the

---

* No. 7. † No. 2. ‡ Not printed. § No. 10. ‖ No. 7.

Dutch Government in the first instance, and though I have examined the Memorandum of your Ministers with the closest attention, I have not been able to find any sufficient reason to modify them.

It is due to your Ministers that I should state in as full and frank a manner as that in which they themselves have expressed their views the reasons which have led me to a conclusion different from that which commends itself to them.

In the first place it appears to me that the aim and object of the Commonwealth of Australia Constitution Act was not to create merely a new administrative and legislative machinery for the six states united in the Commonwealth, but to merge the six States into one United Federal State or Commonwealth furnished with the powers essential to its existence as such. Before the Act came into force each of the separate States, subject, of course, to the ultimate authority of the Imperial Parliament, enjoyed practically all the powers and all the responsibilities of separate nations. By the Act a new State or nation was created armed with paramount power not only to settle the more important internal affairs relating to the common interests of the united peoples, but also to deal with all political matters arising between them and any other part of the Empire or (through His Majesty's Government) with any Foreign Power.

That appears to me the obvious meaning of Section 3 of the Act, which declares that on and after a day appointed by Proclamation "the people of New South Wales, Victoria, South Australia, Queensland, and Tasmania, and also, if Her Majesty is satisfied that the people of Western Australia have agreed thereto, of Western Australia, shall be united in a Federal Commonwealth under the name of the Commonwealth of Australia."

On that day Australia became one single entity, and no longer six separate States in the family of nations under the British Crown, and the external responsibility of Australia, except in regard to matters in respect to which a later date was fixed by the Constitution, vested immediately in the Commonwealth, which was armed with the paramount power necessary to discharge it.

The consequence is, that in respect of all matters declared by the Constitution Act to be matters of Federal concern, the immediate responsibility to His Majesty's Government rests upon the Federal Government. Whether the Federal Government and Parliament make special Federal provision for the discharge of any part of that responsibility, or are content to leave it for the time to the State machinery already in existence, is entirely a matter of internal arrangement, and does not warrant His Majesty's Government in ignoring the fact that in the creation of the Commonwealth Parliament has, in compliance with the will of Australia, devolved the responsibility upon the Federal authority.

The sphere within which His Majesty's Government should communicate with the Federal Government is co-extensive with the responsibility and power of the Commonwealth. There does not appear to be anything in the Constitution which would justify them in limiting it, as contended by your Ministers, to matters connected with Departments actually transferred, or matters upon which the Commonwealth Parliament has power to make laws, and has made laws. Nor can I accept the view that in all matters not connected with Departments transferred to the Commonwealth, or upon which the Commonwealth Parliament has not legislated, the relations which existed between the States and the Imperial Government before Federation have been preserved by the Constitution.

The powers of the States have, it is true, been preserved, but the immediate responsibility to His Majesty's Government for their exercise in Federal matters has been transferred to the Commonwealth.

The Constitution has furnished the Commonwealth with paramount power in regard to such matters, power wider in its scope than that vested in any individual State, and with corresponding responsibility; the sphere of action possessed by the Commonwealth Executive extends over the whole area of that power and responsibility, and if the legislative or other machinery provided by the Commonwealth Parliament, or by the States Legislatures for the discharge of that responsibility is inadequate or defective, it is their duty to see that a remedy is provided, either by inviting the State Governments and Legislatures to do so, or by Federal action. The Constitution has, in fact, placed the Commonwealth as an intermediary between the Imperial Government and the States in regard to the matters assigned to it, and if His Majesty's Government were to correspond direct with the States in regard to such matters, it would be tantamount to ignoring the obvious intention of the Act to fix the final responsibility for them on the Commonwealth.

Unless the Federal Government is made the channel of communication for all Federal matters, it will obviously be impossible for it to judge whether the existing arrangements are suitable and sufficient, or whether any special provision is required for dealing with them.

The further argument that "from the practical side of affairs the channel of communication with the Imperial Government, must be one in which some power relative to the subject of communication actually flows, especially where the subject may require action for the protection of Imperial interests," appears to me to be based on the assumption that the power of the Commonwealth and its responsibilities are limited by the actual powers conferred for the time being on the Commonwealth Executive.

The illustration cited by your Ministers in the third paragraph of their Memorandum shows, however, that they are aware that in a State of a Federal or quasi-Federal nature, like the British Empire, the responsibilities of the Executive are not bounded by the powers with which it is for the time being armed. It is the Imperial Government that is immediately and ultimately responsible to a Foreign power if a State Officer in Australia, a Dominion or Provincial Officer in Canada, or an officer in any self-governing Colony violates, or acts in contravention of an Imperial obligation. But in the grant of self-Government to the Colonies, the power to call upon such an officer for explanation of his conduct or to punish him has been placed by Parliament in the hands of the local Executive. It has done so in implicit reliance on the co-operation and good will of the Colonial Executives, and in the confident faith that Imperial obligations are held as sacred by the people and the Ministers of the Crown in the Dominions of His Majesty beyond the Seas as they are by the people and Government of this country.

That confidence has been amply justified by the steadfast loyalty of the Colonies and their Ministers, and I have no doubt that in like manner in the case of Australia when the change made by the Commonwealth Constitution Act is fully understood the position of the Federal authority as an intermediary will not in any way impair that loyalty or the cordiality with which any request for explanation or assistance has been met by the Governments of the several States now merged in the Commonwealth.

I do not gather that your Ministers wish to contend that the question which arose in regard to the "Vondel" was not a "Federal" matter, but that it only contends that as it was one in regard to which the State Executive could, in present circumstances, alone take action, application should have been made direct to them. That contention I have dealt fully with above, and it does not appear to be necessary to enter into the question of the precise meaning to be attached to the words "External affairs" in the Constitution Act; but I concur in the view of the Federal Government that the special provisions of Article 75 in respect to matters "arising under any treaty," and matters "affecting Consuls or other representatives of other countries," imply that such questions are of special Federal concern.

I regret that your Ministers should regard it as humilitating to them that communications on Federal matters should pass through the Federal Government. That feeling does not appear to be shared by the other State Governments, and I am confident that when your Government have further considered the position, they will loyally accept what was undoubtedly the will of Parliament and of the people of Australia.

The question is not one of administrative convenience, but of recognising and respecting the position assigned to the Commonwealth by the Federal Constitution.

I have, etc.,
J. CHAMBERLAIN.

No. 14.

Governor-General Lord Tennyson to Mr. Chamberlain.

(Received December 29, 1902.)

Commonwealth of Australia, Governor-General,

Sir,
Melbourne, November 25, 1902.

Adverting to your telegraphic despatch of the 1st of October last,* I have the honour to transmit, for your consideration, a copy of a communication which I have received from my Prime Minister, covering a copy of a letter from the Premier of South Australia, and of a Memorandum by the Federal Attorney-General, on the subject of the proposed enquiry into certain circumstances connected with the arrest at Adelaide of the crew of the Dutch vessel "Vondel."

Dated 21st November, 1902.
Dated 29th September, 1902.†
Dated 12th November, 1902.

I have, etc.,
TENNYSON,
Governor-General.

---

* No. 8. † See enclosure 3 in No. 11.

Enclosure in No. 14.

My Lord, Melbourne, November 21, 1902.

With reference to former communications respecting the request by the Secretary of State for the Colonies that this Government should make enquiry into certain circumstances connected with the arrest at Adelaide of the crew of the Dutch vessel "Vondel," I have the honour to inform your Excellency that a letter dated the 29th September (copy herewith)* was received from the Premier of South Australia. That letter, together with a Memorandum, copy of which was enclosed, has received the careful attention of this Government, and my colleague, the Attorney-General, has prepared a minute, a copy† of which I forward herewith to your Excellency, which I desire to be considered as expressing the views of this Government on the matter. I shall be pleased if your Excellency will be so good as to forward that communication, together with a copy of this letter, to the Secretary of State for the Colonies, for his consideration.

While I am in general agreement with the views set out by Mr. Deakin, it is not necessary in the present case to push the contentions so ably expressed to their full length, however great a temptation to do so may be afforded by the unlimited contentions of the Government of South Australia.

The question now at issue is whether in matters relating to "External Affairs" arising in one State—for all such must arise in some State—the communications of His Majesty's Government should be addressed to the Governor-General for the consideration of his Ministers, or whether such matters are precisely in the same position as those purely domestic affairs of particular States on which the Secretary of State is admittedly right in continuing to communicate with State Governors.

It is conceded by the Government of South Australia that communications with the Governor-General with respect to matters concerning "External Affairs," which include the relations of the Commonwealth generally with the Government of the United Kingdom, flow in their proper channel when so addressed, if the Commonwealth has already legislated on the subject to which they relate: and the distinction is drawn that such communications are misdirected if sent to the Governor-General before the Commonwealth has legislated. It seems to me that this is a total misconception of the end and functions of the Federal Union.

If the Constitution did not expressly give power to the Commonwealth to legislate on "External Affairs," the Commonwealth, nevertheless, would hold, irrespectively of any express grant, the power to legislate on subjects inseparable from the notion of Federal Union. If this were not so, it would scarcely be possible to conceive of this as the "indissoluble Federal Commonwealth" which the Imperial Parliament and the Australian people have declared it to be.

Considerations are here involved which do not depend on any form of words. The Commonwealth is something more than the addition of a seventh legislative authority, with such executive power merely as arises out of legislation, to the already existing six authorities whose executive competence in relation to all their legislative powers, anterior to the exercise of any of them, has never been questioned. Such a conception excludes the idea of that fusion of many rights and interests which is the necessary consequence of federal union, in whatever terms the mere purpose is expressed.

---

* See enclosure 3 in No. 11. † Not given in this Exercise—[*Authors*].

If the narrow view which I have just quoted is untenable, as its mere statement shows it to be, then there is no half-way house between its abandonment and the acceptance of the view put forward by my colleague so far as it applies to powers and functions inherent in the notion of a federation.

It is true, as stated by Mr. Deakin, that the words "External Affairs" were used in the 51st section of the Constitution with the intention of including such matters as legislation for the observance of Treaties and for the facilitation of the performance of their offices by Consuls. Representations on the subject of these Treaties are constantly being made to me by the gentlemen who have been appointed Consuls-General for Australia by several foreign Powers, and those gentlemen are in the habit of giving directions to the Consuls subordinate to them in the several States. If on subjects covered by political or commercial Treaties it were the accepted practice of the States to enter into communication with the Consuls in the State capitals, apart from the Government of the Commonwealth, a state of things would arise quite foreign to the idea of the incorporation of the six States into a Commonwealth. Half-a-dozen sets of communications would be passing between the six States respectively and the Colonial Office, based on the varying views of a large number of Consuls representing their countries in the different States. It is easy to say that such was the pre-existing state of things, but its continuance cannot be contended for without the necessity of arguing further that the maintenance of any relations whatever between the central power and the Consuls-General, supported by communications between the central power and the Colonial Office, is an additional complication not contemplated by federation. The absurdity of that contention is sufficient warrant for its opposite. Has the Commonwealth six or seven sets of external relations, or only one? If it has six sets of such relations, are the States severally its agents for the purpose of exercising them? If they were, confusion would be inevitable; but as they base their claim on independent, and not adopted, power, confusion must be worse confounded.

The position must be looked at as if the powers claimed on each side were in full exercise. The contemplation of their exercise in the one alternative reveals chaos, but the adoption of the other alternative is the only method by which well-ordered communication can be ensured.

If such a question as the present arose in relation to Canada, His Majesty's Government would, of course, brush it aside at once. It is contended, however, and with truth, that the Provinces of Canada stand in a far weaker relation to the central Government than do the States of Australia. But from the experience gained by the Colonial Department of the working of Federation in Canada, can it be argued that if the Provinces, in relation to the Dominion Government, held as strong a position as do the States of Australia to the Government of the Commonwealth, it would have been possible to administer the affairs of Canada without confusion and endless quarrel if claims like those of the South Australian Government had been admitted? Could such claims have been in the contemplation of the Imperial Parliament as arising, or likely to arise, out of the Australian Constitution Act? If so, would it willingly legislate at this date so as to allow such claims to be generated in the Canadian Provinces? This is, of course, a question of practical politics rather than of constitutionalism, but it throws a side-light on the question at issue.

It is not necessary for the purpose of the present correspondence to ask the Secretary of State to decide between the conflicting claims of the Commonwealth and the State of South Australia to the full extent set down by their respective expounders. The question of the enquiry into the "Vondel" case has now passed by. It is enough here to say that if at any future time the requests of the Colonial Office for information on matters of general Commonwealth concern cannot be courteously complied with by the States, at the instance of Your Excellency's Government, then the desired information can be secured by the exercise of the statutory powers of the Commonwealth in respect of Royal Commissions. Those powers are in reserve, and can be employed with full remembrance that the Federation can exercise its authority over all citizens without distinction.

Nor is it worth while to spend more time upon the obvious arguments that wherever a legislative power is conceded, everything is with it conceded, the withholding of which would tend to make the grant nugatory. It necessarily follows that all executive power is conceded which would enable the Commonwealth to legislate in full knowledge, and after full executive preparation. Probably there is even a greater measure of executive power conceded in respect of those powers of legislation which are necessarily involved in the Federal compact. But that is a question which may now be left for future decision in the light of the very convincing arguments advanced by my colleague.

The method in which the Secretary of State will communicate on any such subject is, of course, a matter in which the Colonial Office is the principal party, and which cannot await the decision of the High Court, even if such a decision could bind the Colonial Office. I have every confidence that its decision will be guided by the very reason of the thing, and that such decision will in no sense tend to exalt the part above the whole, or to impair the necessary collective powers of one federated people who have no intention of challenging the protection due to real State rights, admitted to exist, and never yet the object of attack.

I have, etc.,
EDMUND BARTON.

His Excellency the Acting Governor-General,
Commonwealth of Australia.

No. 15.

The Earl of Onslow (for the Secretary of State) to Governor-General Lord Tennyson.

My Lord, Downing Street, January 8, 1903.

I have the honour to acknowledge the receipt of your Lordship's despatch of the 25th November,* forwarding a copy of a letter from your Prime Minister on the subject of the enquiry requested into certain circumstances connected with the arrest at Adelaide of the crew of the Dutch vessel "Vondel."

2. You will by this time have received a copy of the despatch of the 25th November,† to the Officer Administering the Government of South Australia, in reply to Mr. Jenkins's Memorandum, from which your Ministers will be aware that in substance I agree with their view of the constitutional position.

I have, etc.,
(For the Secretary of State),
ONSLOW.

No. 16.

Lieutenant-Governor Sir S. J. Way (South Australia) to Mr. Chamberlain.

(Received March 23, 1903.)

Sir, State Government House, Adelaide, February 14, 1903.

I have the honour to forward you herewith a Memorandum which I have received from my Ministers in reply to your despatch of the 25th November, 1902,‡ as to the channel of communication in regard to complaints made by Foreign Governments as to the conduct of State officials. The matter is of so much importance, having regard to the sensitiveness of the State Governments as to any interference with their proper functions by the Commonwealth, that I propose to address a despatch to you myself upon the subject, but I send Ministers' Memorandum on at once, in order that you may be placed in possession of their views as early as possible.

I have, etc.,
S. J. WAY,
Lieutenant-Governor.

Enclosure in No. 16.

Memorandum to His Excellency the Lieutenant-Governor.

Premier's Office, Adelaide, February 13, 1903.

1. Ministers have the honour to acknowledge the receipt from His Excellency of the letter of the Right Honourable the Secretary of State for the Colonies, dated 25th November, 1902, in reply to the Memorandum of Ministers of the 25th September, 1902, in which, at the request of the Right Honourable the Secretary of State for the Colonies, they stated

---

* No. 14. † No. 13. ‡ No. 13.

their views as to the proper channel of communication in regard to matters arising in Australia affecting "external affairs," and the position of Consuls.

2. Ministers desire to intimate with great respect that they are unable to agree with the following propositions contained, as they gather from its terms, in the letter of the Right Honourable the Secretary of State for the Colonies:—

A. That there is nothing in the Constitution which limits the responsibility and power of the Commonwealth to matters connected with the Departments actually transferred, or matters upon which the Commonwealth Parliament has power to make laws and has made laws.

B. That the question of the observance of Imperial Treaties by the officials of a State is a matter of Federal concern, as being an "external affair," and that the question which arose in regard to the "Vondel" was a Federal matter.

3. As to these differences of opinion concerning issues, which the Right Honourable the Secretary of State for the Colonies admits to be important, Ministers feel that no apology is needed either for disagreement with his views, or for a plain statement of the reasons for such disagreement. The desire of His Majesty's Imperial Government and of this Government is the same, namely, that the Constitution of the Commonwealth shall be maintained in its integrity; and a clear statement of the differing opinions of those who are for the time being in their respective spheres entrusted with the duty of so maintaining it, is the best way of elucidating and finally ascertaining the true principles by which they should be guided.

4. As to proposition "A," Ministers, with great respect, take exactly the contrary view of the Constitution. They maintain that the power and responsibility of the Commonwealth is limited to matters connected with Departments actually transferred, and upon which the Commonwealth Parliament has power to make laws and has made laws. The pervading misconception of the argument of the Right Honourable the Secretary of State for the Colonies is, as Ministers humbly believe, caused by a contemplation of the general words of Section 3 of the Act, without giving effect to the established rule of construction "that general words and phrases, however wide and comprehensive in their literal sense, must be construed as strictly limited to the immediate objects of the Act." A contemplation of this Section apart from the succeeding parts of the Constitution, which strictly define its scope and objects, has apparently led to the misconception that something in the nature of a Unification, and not a Federation, has been accomplished between the Federating States.

5. The view which ministers take of the Constitution is that the grant of power to the Commonwealth, notwithstanding the general terms of Section 3; is strictly limited to the Departments transferred, and to matters upon which the Commonwealth Parliament has power to make and has made laws. In the distribution of legislative, and consequently

of executive power, made by the Constitution, all powers not specifically ceded to the Commonwealth remain in the States.

6. Ministers cannot agree with the contention that there does not appear to be anything in the Constitution which justifies this limitation. The method of enquiry as to the powers of the Commonwealth implied in this contention, is, as Ministers respectfully submit, incorrect. The validity of any power claimed by the Commonwealth should be tested by enquiring: Does the Constitution specifically confer the power? If it does not, the conclusion should be against the claim. On the other hand as to any power claimed by the States, the enquiry should be: Does the Constitution expressly deny it? If it does not, the claim should be admitted. The idea of an undefined area of legislative and executive power possessed by the Commonwealth, which underlies the argument of the Right Honourable the Secretary of State for the Colonies is, in the opinion ot Ministers, repugnant to the Constitution.

7. The importance to the States, especially to the smaller States, of strictly maintaining the lines of demarcation between Commonwealth and State power is manifest. Already a movement has begun to destroy the Federal element in the Constitution. A remarkable indication of this may be gathered from a speech made by Sir William Lyne, the Commonwealth Minister for Home Affairs, at Kalgoorlie, in Western Australia, on the 2nd day of the present month. Speaking of the Constitution, Sir William Lyne said:—

> "If the population increased in the States as he expected, he did not think three of the larger States would still consent to be governed by four of the smaller ones. He hoped that when the time came there would not be bloodshed, but that things would settle themselves in a manner worthy of the records of the first Parliament."

8. Believing, as Ministers do, that the peaceful and successful working of the Constitution depends upon the strict maintenance of the lines of demarcation between the powers of the Commonwealth and those of the States, and that that line is drawn clearly in the Constitution, they cannot agree to the opinions of the Right Honourable the Secretary of State for the Colonies, which increase, by implication, the power of the Commonwealth, and which seem to Ministers to tend to Unification, and to a sacrifice of the Federal to the National principle.

9. As to proposition "B," Ministers in their Memorandum of the 23rd September, 1902, expressed opinions which they see no reason to modify. While admitting that the question is open to doubt, they do not concede that the power to make laws with respect to "External Affairs," carries with it a power to make laws regarding Imperial Treaties. They believe that the "External Affairs" contemplated by the Constitution are the External Affairs of the Commonwealth itself, and not the "External Affairs" of the Imperial Government. It is, as Ministers have previously pointed out, much in favour of their contention that the power to legislate as to "External Affairs and Treaties," which was contained in the Convention Bill of 1891, and repeated in the Adelaide Draft of 1897, was

ultimately struck out; and that the Commonwealth has no legislative power as to Treaties.

10. Ministers pointed out in their previous Memorandum on this question, that the State Courts have equal jurisdiction with that conferred by the Constitution upon the Federal High Court as to "Matters arising under any Treaty," and that no argument excluding the right of the State to control its own officers regarding Imperial Treaties, and to communicate direct with the Imperial Government thereon, can well be founded upon the fact of judicial power in such matters having been conferred upon the High Court.

11. Where the Commonwealth has no legislative power it has no executive power. If, as Ministers contend, the power to legislate with respect to "External Affairs" does not include the power to legislate for the observance by States or their officials of Imperial Treaties, then the whole subject is outside the bounds of the Commonwealth power.

12. Ministers repeat with much respect that the law, and the facts in connection with the "Vondel" case themselves show, that such an affair ought not to be regarded as a matter coming within the Federal power. The "Vondel" case is not, judged by either its legal or administrative bearings, an "External Affair" at all, as the following facts show:—

(*a*) The Merchant Shipping Act in pursuance of Treaty casts certain duties with respect to deserting seamen from foreign ships upon policemen and magistrates, who were Colonial, and are now State, officials. That Act is still unrepealed and unaltered.

(*b*) Neither the Commonwealth nor the State Legislatures have power to alter Imperial Legislation made applicable to the Colonies.

(*c*) The Commonwealth Act gives no jurisdiction over State officials, nor does it make the Commonwealth liable for their neglect or misconduct.

(*d*) If any responsibility in this matter exists it is in the State, and it would be promptly disavowed by the Federal Government.

(*e*) In the "Vondel" case an unfounded charge was made by the Netherlands Government as to the action of the State police, and the decision of a State Magistrate, both of whom acted under the "Merchant Shipping Act." The matter was one as to which the Commonwealth had no jurisdiction, no knowledge, and no liability. No State, as Ministers believe, will ever tolerate interference with its judiciary, or with any of its officers by the Commonwealth, unless express power to do so is given by the Constitution.

13. For the reasons above set forth Ministers respectfully disagree with the views of the Right Honourable the Secretary of State for the Colonies, which, as they believe, are not in accord with the Constitution. They hold that the proper course was taken by them in the "Vondel"

case, in declining to communicate with the Imperial Government through the Commonwealth Government; and they respectfully decline to acknowledge that Government as an intermediary in such cases for the future.

J. H. Gordon,
Acting Premier.

No. 17.

Mr. Chamberlain to Lieutenant-Governor Sir S. J. Way (South Australia).

Sir, Downing Street, April 15, 1903.

I have the honour to acknowledge the receipt of your despatch of the 14th of February,* forwarding a further Memorandum by your Ministers, on the question of the channel of communication in regard to complaints made by foreign Governments as to the conduct of State officials.

2. I note that you propose to furnish me with your personal views on this matter, and I shall be glad to receive and consider them, but I think it due to your Ministers that I should state at once the reasons why, after full consideration of their further Memorandum, I am still unable to concur in their views.

3. The difference of opinion between your Ministers and myself in regard to this question arises from the widely different points of view from which we approach the question of the object and scope of the Constitution Act.

4. Your Ministers contend "that the grant of power to the Commonwealth, notwithstanding the general terms of Section 3 of the Act, is strictly limited to the Departments transferred, and to matters upon which the Commonwealth Parliament has power to make laws and has made laws," and that "in the distribution of legislative and consequently of executive power, made by the Constitution, all powers not specifically ceded to the Commonwealth remain in the States."

5. They are unable to agree "with the contention that there does not appear to be anything in the Constitution to justify this limitation," and argue that the validity of any claim of the Commonwealth to any particular power, should be tested by enquiring: Does the Constitution specifically confer the power?

6. The view of the Act which I take is that it is a Constitution Act, and creates a new political community. It expressly declares that "the people of New South Wales, Victoria, South Australia, Queensland, and Tasmania, and also, if Her Majesty is satisfied that the people of Western Australia have agreed thereto, of Western Australia, shall be united in a Federal Commonwealth under the name of the Commonwealth of Australia." The object and scope of the Act is defined and declared by the preamble to be to give effect to the agreement of the people of New South Wales, Victoria, South Australia, Queensland, and Tasmania "to unite in one indissoluble Federal Commonwealth under the Crown

---

* No. 16.

of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland, and under the Constitution hereby established."

7. The whole Act must be read in the light of this declaration and the provisions of Section 3. So far as other communities in the Empire or foreign nations are concerned the people of Australia form one political community for which the Government of the Commonwealth alone can speak, and for everything affecting external states or communities, which takes place within its boundaries, that Government is responsible. The distribution of powers between the Federal and State authorities is a matter of purely internal concern of which no external country or community can take any cognizance. It is to the Commonwealth and the Commonwealth alone that, through the Imperial Government, they must look for remedy or relief for any action affecting them done within the bounds of the Commonwealth, whether it is the act of a private individual, of a State official, or of a State Government. The Commonwealth is, through His Majesty's Government, just as responsible for any action of South Australia affecting an external community as the United States of America are for the action of Louisiana or any other State of the Union.

8. The Crown undoubtedly remains part of the constitution of the State of South Australia, and, in matters affecting it in that capacity, the proper channel ot communication is between the Secretary ot State and the State Governor. But in matters affecting the Crown in its capacity as the central authority of the Empire, the Secretary of State can, since the people of Australia have become one political community, look only to the Governor-General, as the representative of the Crown in that community.

9. The view of your Ministers would, if adopted, reduce the Commonwealth to the position of a Federal League, not a Federation, and appears to me to be entirely opposed not only to the spirit but to the letter of the Act.

10. The question of the channel of communication must be determined, not by enquiring whether the particular power which may have been exercised is one which the Australian Constitution Act declares to be a power left to the States exclusively or a power in respect of which the Commonwealth has exclusive or paramount jurisdiction ; it must be determined by the answer to the question whether the particular exercise of the power is a matter in which the Crown is concerned solely in its capacity as part of the constitution of the State, or in which the Crown is concerned as the central authority of the aggregate of communities composing the empire.

11. The contention of your Ministers in paragraph 9 of their memorandum that the power given to the Commonwealth in regard to "external affairs" is limited to the "external affairs" of the Commonwealth itself, and does not extend to the "external affairs" of the Imperial Government is one which I do not quite grasp. The Imperial Government is responsible, as I have stated in my previous despatch, for the whole of the external affairs of every part of the Empire, and I cannot

see that there can be external affairs of the Commonwealth itself which are not external affairs of the Imperial Government.

12. Whether the power given to the Commonwealth Parliament to legislate in regard to external affairs extends to treaties it is unnecessary for me to enquire, as from my point of view, the question at issue between your Ministers and myself is not one as to the powers of the Commonwealth Parliament, but as to the responsibility of the Commonwealth, which is the measure of the sphere of the Commonwealth executive.

13. In regard to the alleged treatment of the "Vondel" your Ministers are no doubt responsible, as they maintain, but their responsibility is to the Commonwealth, which is in turn responsible to His Majesty's Government, with whom rests the ultimate responsibility to the Netherlands Government.

14. If for these reasons I am unable to accept the views of your Ministers, I am sure that they will recognise that my decision is not due to any disrespect towards them, or any desire to detract from or disparage the important and responsible functions with which they are invested, but solely to my desire to be loyal to what, I am convinced, was the intention of the people of Australia and the will of Parliament as declared in the Commonwealth Constitution Act.

I have, etc.,
J. CHAMBERLAIN.

NOTE.—Considerations of space preclude the printing of lengthy exercises, but the student is recommended to practise from actual official letters, as these are always given in examinations. Reprints of official correspondence can be readily obtained for a few pence from H.M. Stationers, Messrs. Eyre and Spottiswoode.

§ 85. Notes on Exercises.

(*a*) EXERCISES I. and II. are very easy. It will be noticed that we have reproduced them exactly as given as examination papers when a *Précis only* was required. For practice, however, the reader should construct both Index and Précis. In Exercise II. the dates and names must be taken from the foot of the letters. [Model Précis of Exercise II. is given on p. 151.]

(*b*) EXERCISE III.

Letter No. 1. Attention called to threatened expulsion of Polynesian labourers from Queensland after their term of service. Urged that representation should be made to the Australian authorities with a view to a speedy and equitable settlement.

(2) *Encl. in No.* 2.—The Secretary of State has no doubt that Commonwealth Government will take precautions to ensure return to their proper villages of deported islanders.

(3) *Encl. in No.* 7.—On the subject of hardships entailed upon islanders by repatriation.

(4) *No.* 9.—Colonial Secretary states in reply to question by Sir B. Gurdon, that necessity for dealing carefully with interests of Pacific Islanders resident in Queensland has been strongly pressed on Commonwealth Government.

(*c*) EXERCISE IV. [Solution is printed on p. 152 *et seq.*]

(1) The substance of Nos. 4 and 7 is given at the beginning of Nos. 13 and 20 respectively.

(2) *No.* 13 is lengthy, but the main point is contained in the last two paragraphs.

(3) *Encl. in* 23 contains the gist of the whole correspondence, and should supply most of the material for the *Précis.*

(*d*) EXERCISE V.

(1) *Encl. in No.* 10 gives views of South Australian Ministers respecting authority of the Commonwealth as to (*a*) legislation affecting "External Affairs" and "Treaties;" (*b*) the position of Consuls. What were these views?

(2) *Encl.* 2 *in No.* 11. The first part of this is a resumé of the matters at issue, and should form the basis of the Précis.

(3) *No.* 13.—Explain reasons which have led Secretary of State to a different conclusion from that arrived at by Government of South Australia.

(4) *Encl. in No.* 14. Especially note paragraphs 5 and 11.

(5) *Encl. in No.* 16.—Memorandum by Mr. Jenkins, the Premier, stating the views of himself and colleagues on general question of channel of communication on external affairs.

(6) *No.* 17. Note particularly paragraphs 6, 8, 9.

NOTE. (1) These notes are in no case intended to form a model Index, but should merely serve as a guide to the more salient points in the longer documents.

NOTE. (2) After solving the above Exercises, the student should work through A. J. Lawford Jones's "Textbook of Indexing and Précis Writing" [Pitman], which treats the subject very fully and contains many additional papers.

NOTE.—The *Précis* test in recent Matriculation Papers has differed somewhat from the exercises usually given in this subject.

Instead of a series of letters, the September, 1903, and January, 1904, papers, contained a number of historical or geographical facts to be framed into a précis. All that we have said in Chapter X. would apply; but instead of having to cull his facts from various letters, the candidate is already provided with them. He is, however, expected to supply additional explanatory details derived from his knowledge of history or geography, and to weave the whole into a succinct, intelligible narrative or précis.

The "summary" given in the September, 1903, and January, 1904, papers, is practically identical with a précis, though the subordinate heads partake somewhat of the nature of an index.

In the June, 1904, précis exercise, and in some subsequent ones, in addition to a heading indicating the general subject, the examiners required an index to each paragraph, and a précis of the whole. In working this, the conventional lines should be followed, except that no columns are required for the index matter.

APPENDIX.

THE LONDON UNIVERSITY MATRICULATION SYLLABUS IN ENGLISH.

(*New Regulations*, 1902).

§ 86. English is an *obligatory* subject, and the Regulations state that

> "The paper will test knowledge and command of English by questions in composition, prêcis-writing, paraphrase, and analysis of sentences. Some of the questions will involve a knowledge of the most salient facts in English History and General Geography."

§ 87. In addition to forming an essential part of the Matriculation Examination, candidates who do not wish to matriculate may take the English Paper alone for "CERTIFICATES IN ENGLISH," which (again to quote the Official Regulations) are granted upon the following conditions—

I.

> "Any person will be admitted to take the English Paper and a *Vivâ-Voce* Test at the Matriculation Examination, on payment of a fee of £2 for each entry, and subject to the General Regulations affecting that Examination.
>
> A Certificate will be issued to each successful Candidate stating that he has submitted himself to an oral and written test in English and has shown an adequate knowledge of the subject."

II.

> "Any person who has obtained the foregoing Certificate will be admitted to take the English Papers at the Intermediate Examination in Arts (Pass) for External Students and a *Vivâ-Voce* Test, on payment of a fee of £3, and subject to the General Regulations affecting that Examination.

A Certificate will be issued to each successful Candidate stating that he has shown an adequate knowledge of the English Language, and of the period of the English Literature and of the Texts prescribed for that Examination."

(*a*) HINTS FOR PREPARATION.

§ 88. From the Regulations given in § 86 it will be seen that the syllabus may be divided roughly into (*a*) Composition; (*b*) Précis-writing; (*c*) Paraphrasing; (*d*) Analysis of Sentences.

§ 89. *Composition.* The candidates' powers in this direction are tested principally by means of an essay upon a topic to be selected from a given list of several, which is generally very varied and affords ample scope for different tastes and degrees of knowledge. We have treated "*Essay Writing*" fully in Chapter VIII. (Specially note § 67: "Practical hints for writing an essay.") It must be borne in mind that though the *essay* constitutes the most important direct test in *composition*, great care should be taken with the wording of the other answers. NOTE that the last few papers have contained tests which the examiners probably include under the general head of "*Composition*," *e.g.*

(*a*) Comments upon sentences with regard to *faults of expression*, *anomalies in syntax*, etc. (See Chapters II. and III., and the Exercises thereon.)

(*b*) Discussion of the ordinary meaning and the original literal significance of *idioms*. (See §§ 32, 33.)

(*c*) Recasting of passages so as to improve their *style* and *arrangement*. (See Chapter II.: "*Style.*")

(*d*) *Punctuation* of matter from which the stops have been omitted. (See § 37, *et seq.*)

§ 90. *Précis-writing.* In Chapter X. we give full and explicit directions for attaining proficiency in this subject, but may remark that the London Matriculation Test in Précis-writing is short and easy compared with that set in examinations when it constitutes a separate subject.

§ 91. *Paraphrasing.* Anyone who masters Chapter IX. will be able to render a good account of himself. Endeavour to grasp mentally vital points such as we have indicated in "Notes to Exercises," § 78.

The Matriculation Examiners usually require—(1) The *general purport* of a passage; (2) a particular explanation of some portion printed in italics; (3) notes explaining historical, geographical, or literary allusions.

(1). The *general purport* simply means a kind of *index*, *e.g.*, in the June, 1903, paper, the general purport of passage (*e*), quest. 6, is "England's welcome to Princess Alexandra of Denmark upon her arrival as the betrothed of the Prince of Wales (now H.M. King Edward VII.)." (2) The *particular explanation* of

> "Welcome her, thunders of fort and of fleet!
> Welcome her, thundering cheer of the street,"

is that Tennyson, using the figure "Apostrophe," metaphorically refers to the cheers of the people lining the streets and to the salutes of the warships and forts in words which liken this welcome to the roar of thunder.

(3) *The notes explaining historical allusions*, etc., should be brief and to the point, *e.g.*

"*The Legend of Good Women*": A collection of stories written by Chaucer about 1385. They were mostly derived from Greek and Roman sources, and deal with women who suffered for love, *e.g.*, Medea, Lucretia, etc.

"*St. Andrew and our right*": The battle-cry of the Scots. Andrew, the patron-saint of Scotland, is invoked to defend the rights of the nation.

§ 92. *Analysis.* We do not regard this as a serious stumbling-block, as the passages given are generally fairly straightforward, and to our mind Analysis is mainly a question of common-sense.

Analysis means the dissection of sentences into their several components, whereas *composition* may be regarded as the building-up of words into sentences, hence the ability to analyse is useful in detecting badly constructed sentences and in determining the inter-dependence of the various parts.

§ 93. *Hints for Analysis.* (1) Read through the piece and note every *finite verb* (expressed or understood), and you will then know how many sentences there are. (See *note* on p. 46, for *kinds* of sentences).

(2) If the sentence is "*principal*," merely define it as such, noting to what other principal sentence it is *co-ordinate* if part of a "*compound*" sentence. (See *a* and *b* in Example II., § 94.)

Be on the watch for contracted compound sentences, *e.g.*, "I read, marked, learnt, and inwardly digested Carlyle's philosophy," comprises four principal sentences, the subject "*I*" being understood in the last three.

(3) The only true test for a "*subordinate clause*" is the question, "Does it do the work of a noun, an adjective, or an

adverb?" Having determined the *kind* of subordinate clause define it more particularly, *i.e.*

If a "*noun*" clause, it will be the *object* of the predicate in some other sentence (*e.g.*, C in Example II.).

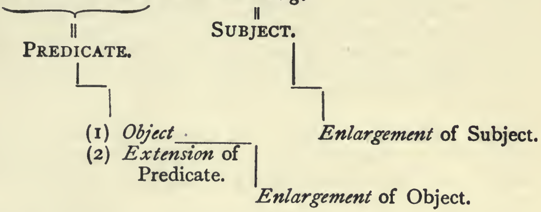
If an "*adjective*" clause, it will be the *enlargement* of the subject or object in another sentence (*e.g.*, B in Example I.).

If an "*adverbial*" clause, it will be the *extension* of the predicate in another sentence—say whether of *time*, *place*, *manner*, *degree*, etc. (*e.g.*, C and D in Example I.).

Note that it is most important to clearly indicate the relation of subordinate clauses to their principal sentence and to each other.

(4) Now consider the different parts of each sentence. The following table will show their mutual relation:—

A sentence is *a statement made* about *something.*



The *predicate* and *subject* are the indispensable parts of a sentence, and though the latter may sometimes be understood (especially in imperative sentences), the former is always expressed, or no statement could be made. (Note, however, that *part* of the predicate in the form of the verb "to be" is sometimes understood, *e.g.* predicate in A., Example I.)

The *predicate* has the force of a *verb* (*i.e.* tells us (*a*) what something—i.e. *the subject*—does; or (*b*) what is done to something—*i.e.* to the *object*; or (*c*) in what state something—*i.e.* the *subject*—exists.

The *subject* and *object* have the force of a *noun* (*i.e.* consist of a word or words used as a name). Note that the predicate tells us *what the subject does* and *what is done to the object.*

The *enlargement* of the subject or object has an *adjectival* force—*i.e.* is descriptive of the subject or object.

The *extension* of the predicate performs the functions of an *adverb* in extending the statement to the *manner*, *time*, *place*, *degree*, etc., of the action.

Conjunctions (or "Connectives") and *interjections* should be indicated last of all.

NOTE.—Personally we are not favourably disposed towards the system of ruled columns, and consider the time spent in ruling might be more profitably devoted to other questions, especially when it sometimes happens that a column (say for "Enlargement" or "Extension") is used for only one entry in the course of three or four sentences. We prefer the method of "*Logical Analysis*" recommended by the late Sir Joshua Fitch in his well-known "Lectures on Teaching" (Cambridge Press) *e.g.*

EXAMPLE I.

§ 94. *Model Solutions.*

> "Ah! sad and strange as in dark summer dawns
> The earliest pipe of half-awaken'd birds
> To dying ears, when unto dying eyes
> The casement slowly grows a glimmering square;
> So sad, so strange, the days that are no more."

A. "Ah! sad and strange . . . . days that are no more."

Complex Sentence—

(1) *Subj.:* "the days."
(2) *Enl. subj.:* Clause B.
(3) *Pred.:* (are) "sad and strange."
(4) *Exten. pred.:* (*a*) "so" (*degree*).
(*b*) Clause C.
Interjection: "Ah!"

B. "That are no more."

Subordinate Clause (Adjectival to "*days*" in A.)

(1) *Subj.:* "that."
(2) *Pred.:* "are."
(3) *Exten. pred.:* "no more" (*negation*).

C. "Sad and strange . . . . glimmering square."

Subordinate Clause (Adverbial—*degree*—to pred. of A).

(1) *Subj.:* "pipe."
(2) *Enl. subj.:* (*a*) "the earliest."
(*b*) "of half-awaken'd birds."
(3) *Pred.:* (*is*) "sad and strange to dying ears."
(4) *Exten. pred.:* (*a*) "in dark summer dawns" (*time*).
(*b*) Clause D.
Connective: "as."

D. "When unto dying eyes . . . . glimmering square."

Subordinate Clause (Adverbial—*time*—to pred. of C).

(1) *Subj.:* "the casement."
(2) *Pred.:* "grows a glimmering square."
(3) *Exten. pred.:* (*a*) "unto dying eyes" (*manner*).
(*b*) "slowly" (*manner*).
Connective: "when."

EXAMPLE II.

"I am alone the villain of the earth,
And I feel I am so most. O Antony,
Thou mine of bounty, how would'st thou have paid
My better service, when my turpitude
Thou dost so crown with gold."

A. "I am alone . . . . of the earth."

Principal sentence—

(1) *Subj.:* "I."
(2) *Enl. subj.:* "alone."
(3) *Pred.:* "am villain of the earth."

B. "And I feel most" (I am so).

Principal sentence—(co-ordinate to A).

(1) *Subj.:* ("I").
(2) *Pred.:* "feel."
(3) *Exten. Pred.:* "most" (*degree*).
(4) *Object:* Clause "C."
Connective: "and."

C. "I am so."

Subordinate Clause (*Noun*—object of "feel" in B).

(1) *Subj.:* "I."
(2) *Pred:* "am so."

D. "O Antony . . . . my better service."

Principal sentence—

(1) *Subj.:* "thou."
(2) *Enl. subj.:* "O Antony, thou mine of bounty."
(3) *Pred.:* "would'st have paid."
(4) *Exten. pred.:* (1) "how" (*manner*).
(2) Clause E (*reason*).
(5) *Obj.:* "my better service."

E. "When my turpitude . . . . gold."

Subordinate Clause (Adverbial—*reason*—to pred. in D)

(1) *Subj.:* "thou."
(2) *Pred.:* "dost crown."
(3) *Exten. pred.:* (1) "with gold." } (*manner*).
(1) "so." }
(4) *Obj.:* "my turpitude."
Connective: "when."

§ 95. *Extracts for Analysis.*

1.

"If I could find example
Of thousands that had struck anointed kings,
And flourish'd after, I'd not do't; but since
Nor brass, nor stone, nor parchment, bears not one,
Let villainy itself for swear 't."

2.

"A substitute shines brightly as a king,
Until a king be by; and then his state
Empties itself, as doth an inland brook
Into the main of waters."

3.

"So eager was the queen that her story should be believed, that nothing so much pleased her as an indication that credit attached to it."

4.

"So please your Majesty, I would I would
Quit all offences with as clear excuse
As well as I am doubtless I can purge
Myself of many I am charged withal."

(The above were all given at London Matriculation.)

5.

"Poor naked wretches, whereso'er you are,
That bide the pelting of this pitiless storm,
How shall your houseless heads, and unfed sides,
You loop'd and window'd raggedness, defend you
From seasons such as these?"
(*Shakespeare:* "King Lear.")

6.

"I remember, I remember,
The fir-trees dark and high;
I used to think their slender tops
Were close against the sky;
It was a childish ignorance,
But now 'tis little joy
To know I'm further off from heaven
Than when I was a boy."
(*Hood:* "I Remember.")

7.

"Power, like a desolating pestilence,
Pollutes whate'er it touches; and obedience,
Bane of all genius, virtue, freedom, truth,
Makes slaves of men, and of the human frame
A mechanised automaton."
(*Shelley:* "Queen Mab.")

8.

"And last of all an admiral came,
A terrible man with a terrible name—
A name which you all know by sight very well
But which no one can speak, and no one can spell."
(*Southey:* "March to Moscow.")

The following selections from the *Extracts for Paraphrase* given in § 76 may also be analysed—

No.	I.	lines	1—4.
,,	II.	,,	1—5; 14—20.
,,	V.	,,	1—5; 11—15.
,,	VI.	,,	1—5; 10—14.
,,	IX.	,,	1—4.
,,	XI.	,,	1—8.
,,	XIII.	,,	1—4; 11—14.
,,	XVI.	,,	1—5.

§ 96. The statement that questions will be set involving a knowledge of the *salient facts of English History and General Geography* need not alarm anyone, for they usually take the form of an essay upon some historical or geographical subject and the elucidation of historical allusions, etc., in the passages given for paraphrase. Anyone who follows our advice for the "*Acquisition of Matter*," Chap. VI., will be able to render a good account of this portion of the paper.

OF THE
UNIVERSITY
OF
CALIFORNIA

NOTE that our list of essay titles for practice (§ 69) contains many historical and geographical subjects, and candidates who feel weak in this respect should select these, and, after looking up sufficient facts, should outline the essay and afterwards write it fully *without assistance.* The essays required by the examiners generally deal with topics like (*a*) descriptions of the courses of rivers famous for their scenery or importance commercially, *e.g.*, the Rhine, Danube, Volga, Nile, Mississippi, etc., (*b*) descriptions of prominent regions such as India, Canada, Egypt, Germany—short historical sketch, the chief physical, political, industrial, and climatic features; (*c*) biographies of famous personages like Shakespeare, Cromwell, Pitt, Nelson; (*d*) facts of commercial history and general "historical cameos," such as "The English Carrying-trade: its History and Present Extension"; "Rise and Development of the Chartered Companies"; "The Conflict of England with Napoleon the First."

NOTE in § 97 we give some additional titles of a somewhat easier character than those contained in § 69, hence they will prove useful for introductory practice.

§ 97. *Essay Titles* for Matriculation preparation. The following should be worked up upon the lines indicated on *p.* 72, *Note to* (*e*).

A. (*Geographical.*)

(1) Descriptive sketches of Australia, British South Africa, United States of America, Russia, France, or Japan.

(2) Account of a railway journey from (*a*) London to Brindisi, *or* (*b*) Paris to Constantinople, *or* (*c*) Paris to Moscow, *or* (*d*) New York to San Francisco, *or* (*e*) Montreal to Vancouver, *or* (*f*) London to Edinburgh—noting principal physical features, chief towns, staple industries, and climatic anomalies of the regions traversed.

(3) Descriptions of ocean voyage from (*a*) London to Sydney, *viâ* Suez Canal, *or* (*b*) Liverpool to New York, *or* (*c*) Southampton to Cape Town—noting oceans and seas traversed, winds and currents encountered, ports of call.

(4) Take *one* of the following commodities—wheat, cotton, tea, sugar, rice, frozen meat, wool, gold, coal—mention the principal regions producing it, conditions of its production, facilities for export and countries to which exported.

(5) Causes, characteristics, and distribution of

(*a*) Glaciers, *or*
(*b*) Ocean Currents, *or*
(*c*) Winds, *or*
(*d*) Volcanoes, *or* (*e*) Earthquakes.

B. *Biographical* sketches of one of the following—

(*a*) Alfred the Great, Simon de Montfort, John Wyclif, Warwick the King-maker, Cardinal Wolsey, Raleigh, Walpole, Wellington, Sir Robert Peel, Gladstone.

(*b*) Chaucer, Milton, Dryden, Johnson, Scott, Dickens, Macaulay, Tennyson, R. L. Stevenson.

(*c*) Columbus, Drake, Captain Cook, Sir John Franklin, Livingstone.

(*d*) Washington, Napoleon Buonaparte, Bismarck.

(*e*) Bacon, Galileo, Newton, Watt, Sir H. Davy, Faraday, George Stevenson.

C. (*Historical.*)

(*a*) General outline of any noteworthy reign, *e.g.*, Edward III., Elizabeth, George III., or Victoria (avoid mere dates and dry details).

(*b*) Magna Charta—its Cause and Effect.

(*c*) Wars of the Roses.

(*d*) The Reformation.

(*e*) Rise and Development of the English Parliament.

(*f*) The American War of Independence.

(*g*) English Parliamentary Reform in the 19th Century.

(*h*) The Indian Mutiny.

(*i*) Imposition and Repeal of the Corn Laws.

D. (*Scientific.*)

(*a*) Effects of heat upon various bodies.

(*b*) The botany of any wood, hedgerow, or public park with which you are acquainted, expressed in non-technical language.

(*c*) Water, the atmosphere, or carbon—its composition, production, and economic uses.

(*d*) The wild animals of England.

(*e*) A popular account of the firmament on a starry evening.

E. *Descriptions* of

(*a*) Any district famous for its peculiar or beautiful scenery, *e.g.*

(1) Lakes of Killarney.
(2) English Lake District.
(3) The Trossachs.
(4) Devonshire.
(5) Switzerland.
(6) The Norwegian Coast.

(*b*) Any important city or town, *e.g.*

(1) London.	(3) Dublin.	(5) New York.
(2) Edinburgh.	(4) Paris.	(6) Berlin.

(*c*) Any noteworthy public building, *e.g.*, any Museum, Picture Gallery, Cathedral, College, etc.; the Houses of Parliament, the Guildhall.

(*d*) Any trade or industry, *e.g.*, coal-mining, weaving, glass-making, market-gardening, etc.—materials employed or procured, various processes, life from workpeople's point of view.

(*e*) (1) A sunset, (2) a storm at sea, or (3) a snowstorm.

(*b*) EXAMINATION PAPERS.

LONDON UNIVERSITY MATRICULATION EXAMINATION PAPER IN ENGLISH.—(SEPT. 1902.)

REVISED REGULATIONS.

[*Candidates may take any two, but not more than two, of the three sections* (A), (B), *and* (C).]

A.—COMPOSITION.

1. What faults of expression are there in any four of the following:—

(*a*) Being his sole companion he naturally addressed himself to me.

(*b*) He gave his parting directions to a youth who had come with him in a tone of mild authority.

(*c*) The lark warbles its cheery song, goading on the tired labourer.

(*d*) There has lately appeared the life of Cromwell, not Oliver, but he who was Henry the Eighth's minister.

(*e*) Nothing has or could be more unfortunate.

(*f*) I have lost not only my customers, but Mrs. Rachel herself is gone also.

(*g*) I am sorry not to subscribe to your cause. No one yields to me in appreciation of its importance.

(*h*) Men who started on a wrong tack, and instead of grappling with the facts lost themselves in a maze of misty speculation.

2. Discuss the syntax of any *four* of these sentences:—

(*a*) Henceforward, squall nor storm
Could keep me from that Eden where she dwelt.

(*b*) When or you or I are made
A fable, song, or fleeting shade.

(*c*) And . . . . they all murmured, saying, That He was gone to be guest with a man that is a sinner.

(*d*) The French Press know little or nothing of the actual facts.

(*e*) To the natives of India, the name and personality of Gladstone was something sacred.

(*f*) For a man to endure more was impossible.

(*g*) It lies between the three.

3. Give the ordinary meaning conveyed by each of the following expressions, and connect it with the original literal signification of the words in italics:—

(*a*) A *threadbare* argument.

(*b*) He reckons without his *host*.

(*c*) He is just in his *element*.

(*d*) He is out of his proper *sphere*.

(*e*) I *endorse* all that he has said.

(*f*) To *sum* up the arguments.

4. Show in what various ways emphasis may be obtained by departure from the normal order of words, in an English sentence.

5. Write a concise Essay, of about two-and-a-half pages, on some *one* of the subjects given below:—

(*a*) An important English Colony or Dependency (*e.g.* India, Canada, or Australia); its history, political and physical geography, climate, etc.

(*b*) The balance of Power among European States, (i) in Europe, (ii) in other parts of the World.

(*c*) Ocean High-roads.

(*d*) The Course of the Rhine, Danube, or Nile.

B.—PARAPHRASING, ANALYSIS, ETC.

1. Enlarge the sentence, *Tyrrell shot Rufus*, by additions (i) to the subject, of (*a*) a participial phrase, and (*b*) an adjectival sentence; (ii) to the predicate, of (*a*) an adverbial sentence of time, and (*b*) an adverbial phrase of place; and (iii) to the object, of a noun in apposition. Distinguish each adjunct by its appropriate term, or by the marks i (*a*), i (*b*), etc.

2. Analyse, and punctuate, giving reason for each stop:—

> Ah sad and strange as in dark summer dawns
> The earliest pipe of half-awaken'd birds
> To dying ears when unto dying eyes
> The casement slowly grows a glimmering square
> So sad so strange the days that are no more.

3. In the above passage, explain the peculiar appropriateness of the epithet *glimmering*. Show how completely out of place *glittering* would be here. Explain how the substitution of *sweet* for *still* would ruin the effect of Wordsworth's lines:

> "Let beeves and home-bred kine partake
> The sweets of Burn-mill meadow;
> The swan on still St. Mary's lake
> Float double, swan and shadow!"

4. Select *one* of the following passages, and

(i) State its general purport;

(ii) Explain, particularly, the meaning of each portion printed in italics;

(iii) Write *short* notes upon any historical and personal allusions in it. [N.B.—Those who do not take the Essay in Section A. are requested, instead of writing short notes, to write a concise Essay of about two-and-a-half pages, explaining the historical allusions in the passage they select.]

(*a*) I read, before my eyelids dropt their shade,
"The Legend of Good Woman," long ago
Sung by the morning star of song, who made
His music heard below;
Dan Chaucer, the first warbler, whose sweet breath
Preluded those melodious bursts that fill
The spacious times of great Elizabeth
With sounds that echo still.

(Can you justify Tennyson's making a star *sing*

(*b*) Old men forget; yet all shall be forgot,
But he'll remember *with advantages*
What feats he did that day: then shall our names,
Familiar in his mouth as household words,
Harry the king, Bedford and Exeter,
Warwick and Talbot, Salisbury and Gloucester,
Be in their flowing cups freshly remembered.

(*c*) What checks the fiery soul of James?
Why sits that champion of the dames
Inactive on his steed,
And sees, between him and his land,
Between him and Tweed's southern strand,
His host Lord Surrey lead?

. . . .

O for one hour of Wallace *wight*
Or well-skill'd Bruce, to rule the fight,
And cry—'*Saint Andrew and our right!*'
Another sight had seen that morn,
From Fate's dark book a leaf been torn,
And Flodden had been Bannockbourne!

(*d*) Stop!—for *thy tread is on an Empire's dust!*
An earthquake's spoil is sepulchred below!
Is the spot marked with no colossal bust?
Nor column trophied for triumphal show?
None; but the moral's truth tells simpler so,
As the ground was before, thus let it be;—
How that red rain hath made the harvest grow!
And is this all the world has gained by thee,
Thou first and last of fields! king-making Victory?

C.—PRÉCIS-WRITING.

[Write out in your own words a *précis* of the following letters, which relate to the appointment of Lord Malmesbury, in 1796, as our plenipotentiary in Paris, and to his negotiations with the Directory.

The *précis* should give in a concise form a continuous narrative, readily intelligible without reference to the original documents, embracing the essential facts and those only].

(1)

Lord Malmesbury, who is appointed by the King to treat with the French Government for a just and equitable peace, calculated to restore repose to Europe, and to ensure the public tranquillity for the time to come, will have the honour of delivering this letter from me to M. Delacroix. The distinguished rank and merit of the Minister of whom His Majesty has made choice on this occasion makes it unnecessary for me to say anything in his recommendation; at the same time that it furnishes a fresh proof of the desire of his Majesty to contribute to the success of this negotiation; for which object I entertain the most sanguine wishes.

Monsieur Delacroix will have the goodness to accept from me the assurance of my most perfect consideration.

(Signed) GRENVILLE.

Westminster, Oct. 13, 1796.
To the Minister for Foreign Affairs at Paris.

(2)

Lord Malmesbury, named by His Britannic Majesty as his plenipotentiary to the French Republic, has the honour to announce, by his secretary, to the Minister for Foreign Affairs his arrival at Paris ; and to request of him, at the same time, to be so good as to appoint the hour at which he may wait upon him, for the purpose of communicating to him the object of his mission.

Paris, Oct. 22, 1796.
To the Minister for Foreign Affairs

(3)

The Minister for Foreign Affairs has the honour to apprise Lord Malmesbury, commissioner plenipotentiary of His Britannic Majesty, that he has received from the Executive Directory the necessary powers for negotiating and concluding peace between the Republic and His Majesty.

To-morrow, if Lord Malmesbury pleases, the respective powers shall be exchanged. The Minister for Foreign Affairs will then be ready to receive the propositions which Lord Malmesbury is commissioned to make to the Republic on the part of His Britannic Majesty.

The Minister for Foreign Affairs requests Lord Malmesbury to accept the assurances of his high consideration.

(Signed) CH. DELACROIX.

2 Brumaire, An. 5.
(Oct. 22, 1796.)

(4)

Lord Malmesbury has the honour to present his acknowledgments to the Minister for Foreign Affairs for the communication which he has just made to him, and he will have the honour to wait upon him to-morrow, at the hour which he shall have the goodness to appoint, to receive the copy of the full powers with which he is furnished on the part of the Executive Directory ; and as soon as they shall have been exchanged, he will be ready to commence the negotiation with which he is charged.

He requests the Minister for Foreign Affairs to accept the assurances of his high consideration.

(Signed) MALMESBURY.

Paris, Oct. 23, 1796.

(5)

Extract from the Register of the Decrees of the Executive Directory.

The Executive Directory having heard the report of the Minister for Foreign Affairs,

The citizen Charles Delacroix, Minister for Foreign Affairs, is charged to negotiate with Lord Malmesbury, commissioner plenipotentiary of His Britannic Majesty, furnished with full powers to prepare and negotiate peace between the French Republic and that Power, and to conclude it definitely between them. The Directory gives to the said minister all powers necessary for concluding and signing the treaty of peace to take place between the Republic and His Britannic Majesty. He shall conform himself to the instructions which shall be given him. He shall render a regular account, from time to time, of his progress, and of the issue of the negotiation.

A true copy. (Signed) L. R. Reveillere Lepeaux.

(6)

Memorial.

His Britannic Majesty, desiring, as he has already declared, to contribute, as far as depends on him, to the re-establishment of public tranquillity, and to ensure, by means of just, honourable, and solid conditions of peace, the future repose of Europe, is of opinion that the best means of attaining that salutary end will be to agree, at the beginning of the negotiation, on the general principle which shall serve as a basis to the definitive arrangements.

The first object of negotiations for peace generally relates to the restitutions and cessions which the respective parties have mutually to demand, in consequence of the events of the war.

Great Britain, from the uninterrupted success of her naval war, finds herself in a situation to have no restitution to demand of France, from which, on the contrary, she has taken establishments and colonies of the highest importance, and of a value almost incalculable.

But, on the other hand, France has made on the continent of Europe conquests to which His Majesty can be the less indifferent, as the most important interests of his people, and the most sacred engagements of his Crown, are essentially implicated therein.

The desire of the King to restore repose to so many nations induces him to consider this situation of affairs as affording the means of procuring for all the belligerent Powers just and equitable terms of peace, and such as are calculated to insure for the time to come the general tranquillity.

It is on this footing, then, that he proposes to negotiate, by offering to make compensation to France, by proportionable restitutions, for those arrangements to which she will be called upon to consent, in order to satisfy the just demand of the King's allies, and to preserve the political balance of Europe.

(Signed) Malmesbury,
Minister Plenipotentiary from His
Britannic Majesty.

Paris, 24 October (5 Brumaire) 1796.

(7)

Extract from the Register of the Deliberations of the Executive Directory.

Paris, 5 Brumaire, 5 year of the Republic, one and indivisible.

The Executive Directory sees with pain, that at the moment when it had reason to hope for the speedy return of peace between the French Republic and His Britannic Majesty, the proposal of Lord Malmesbury offers nothing but dilatory or very distant means of bringing the negotiations to a conclusion.

[The document goes on to state that Lord Malmesbury's words point to the necessity of holding a general congress, a proceeding that might involve interminable delay. It hints that the British Government has a double object in the negotiations—to prevent, by means of general propositions, the partial propositions of other Powers, and to obtain from the people of England the means of continuing the war, by throwing upon the French Government the odium of a delay for which English ministers are responsible. Finally, the Directory considers the principle laid down by the British Government as inadequate.]

(8)

[In a Note addressed to the Executive Directory Lord Malmesbury, passing over the "offensive and injurious insinuations" contained in the foregoing document, answers that the delay complained of was unavoidable, being due to the necessity of ascertaining from home the views of the allies of Great Britain ; that he had never led the French authorities to believe that he had power to do anything more than to negotiate and conclude the peace, the form and conditions of which could only be prescribed by a general congress of the allied forces. It was to prepare the way for such a congress that he had laid down the principle of compensations, in regard to which principle he complains that the French Government had returned him no answer of any kind. *En passant* he affirms that the English King had, at the beginning of the campaign, given the French Government a striking proof of his disposition to treat with it on a just and equitable basis.]

(9)

The undersigned is charged by the Executive Directory to invite you to point out, without the smallest delay, and expressly, the objects of reciprocal compensation which you propose.

He is moreover charged to demand of you, what are the dispositions to treat, on a just and equitable basis, of which His Majesty, the Emperor and King, gave to the French Government so striking a proof, at the very commencement of the campaign. The Executive Directory is unacquainted with it. It was the Emperor and King who broke the armistice.

(Signed) CH. DELACROIX.

Paris, 22 Brumaire (Nov. 12).

(10)

The undersigned does not hesitate a moment to answer the two questions which you have been instructed by the Executive Directory to put to him.

The memorial presented this morning by the undersigned proposes, in express terms, on the part of His Majesty the King of Great Britain, to compensate France, by proportionate restitutions for the arrangements to which she will be called upon to assent, in order to satisfy the King's allies, and to preserve the political balance of Europe.

Before the formal acceptation of this principle, or the proposal on the part of the Executive Directory of some other principle, which might equally serve as the basis for a negotiation for a general peace, the undersigned cannot be authorised to designate the objects of reciprocal compensation.

As to the proof of the pacific dispositions given to the French Government by His Majesty, the Emperor and King, at the opening of the campaign, the undersigned contents himself with a reference to the following words contained in the note of Baron D'Engleman on the 4th of June last :—

"The operations of the war will in no wise prevent His Imperial Majesty from being ever ready to concur, agreeably to any form of negotiation which shall be adopted, in concert with the belligerent powers, in the discussion of proper means for putting a stop to the further effusion of blood."

This note was presented after the armistice was broken.

Paris, Nov. 12, 1796. MALMESBURY.

(11)

Note.

The Court of London, having been informed of what has passed, does not think it necessary to add anything to the answer made by the undersigned to the two questions which the Directory thought proper to address to him.

That Court waits therefore for an explanation of the sentiments of the Directory with regard to the principle it has proposed as the basis of the negotiations.

The undersigned has, in consequence, received orders to renew its demand of a frank and precise answer on this point, in order that his Court may know with certainty whether the Directory accepts that proposal ; or desires to make any change or modification in it ; or lastly, whether it would wish to propose any other principle that may promote the same end.

Nov. 26, 1796. MALMESBURY.

(12)

In answer to the note delivered yesterday the undersigned Minister for Foreign Affairs is instructed by the Directory to observe that the answers made on the 5th and 22nd of last Brumaire contained an acknowledgment of the principle of compensation, and that the undersigned now makes a formal and positive declaration of such acknowledgment.

In consequence, Lord Malmesbury is again invited to give a speedy and categorical answer to the proposal made to him on the 22nd of last Brumaire, which was conceived in these terms : "The undersigned is instructed by the Executive Directory to invite you to designate without the least delay, and expressly, the objects of reciprocal compensation which you have to propose.

Paris, Nov. 27. CH. DELACROIX.

(13)

The undersigned Minister Plenipotentiary of His Britannic Majesty, in answer to the note dated this morning, which was sent to him by the Minister for Foreign Affairs, hastens to assure him that he will not delay in communicating it to his Court, from which he must necessarily wait for further orders, before he can explain himself upon the important points which it contains.

Paris, 27th Nov. 1796. (Signed) MALMESBURY.

[A "Confidential Memorial," dealing with the points upon which the French Minister had asked for information, having been received from England by Lord Malmesbury and forwarded by him to the Directory, the French Foreign Minister replies as follows :—]

(14)

The undersigned Minister for Foreign Affairs is charged by the Executive Directory to answer Lord Malmesbury that the Executive Directory will listen to no proposals contrary to the constitution, to the laws, and to the treaties which bind the Republic.

And as Lord Malmesbury announces at every communication that he is in want of the opinion of his Court, from which it results that he acts a part merely passive in the negotiations, which renders his presence in Paris useless ; the undersigned is further charged to give him notice to depart from Paris in eight-and-forty hours, with all the persons who have accompanied him, and to quit, as expeditiously as possible, the territory of the Republic. The undersigned declares, moreover, in the name of the Executive Directory, that if the British Cabinet is desirous of peace, the Executive Directory is ready to follow the negotiations by the reciprocal channels of couriers.

Paris, 19th Dec. (Signed) CH. DELACROIX.

(15)

Lord Malmesbury hastens to acknowledge the receipt of the note of the Minister of Foreign Affairs, dated yesterday. He is preparing to quit Paris to-morrow, and demands in consequence the necessary passports for himself and his suite.

He requests the Minister for Foreign Affairs to accept the assurances of his high consideraton.

Paris, 20th Dec., 1796.

LONDON UNIVERSITY MATRICULATION EXAMINATION, PAPER IN ENGLISH, JUNE, 1903.

REVISED REGULATIONS.

[*Not more than* SIX *questions are to be attempted. Candidates are advised to take at least* TWO *from Section* **B.**]

A.—PUNCTUATION.

1. (i) How would you punctuate the following passages? State clearly by what considerations you are guided in the punctuation of each:

(*a*) The influence of the literary class in England during the generation which followed the Reformation was very great. [Also the same transposed: "Very great was the influence of . . . . Reformation."]

(*b*) Books of quick interest that hurry on for incident are for the eye to glide over only. A newspaper read out is intolerable.

(*c*) In time however the judgment of the many was over-ruled by that of the few and before the book was reprinted it was so eagerly sought that it sold for five times the original price. It is still read with pleasure the style is pure and flowing the classical quotations and allusions are numerous and happy and we are now and then charmed by that singularly humane and delicate humour in which Addison excelled all men.

(ii) Mention, and illustrate by examples, the various uses of the *dash* in punctuation.

ERRORS IN EXPRESSION.

2. (i) Rewrite, omitting words that seem superfluous and condensing:

After he had successfully overcome all the various obstacles which, when he was a young man setting out on life's uneven road, had at many different points in his career opposed his onward progress, he pursued unchecked for many successive years a course of uniform prosperity, until at last he reached the ultimate goal towards which from the outset all his steps had been unswervingly directed.

(ii) Express more clearly:

(*a*) Some girls at school make friends and remain so all their life.

(*b*) The first day at school seems very funny to anyone not used to going there.

(*c*) The daily walk is essential for every school-girl, as if not her lessons become very dull.

(*d*) We arrive at the school, which, by the way, is situated next door to the Museum.

(*e*) Brian the hermit stood by the fire, which had been made barefooted and in cap and hood.

(*f*) Hardly had he said this than the man mentioned appeared.

(iii) Recast the following short account of life in the country, so as to improve the style and arrangement without adding or omitting anything material:

> The people who live in the country are always up early and at work, and those who keep farms have plenty of work to do in feeding the poultry and cows, etc., and in getting a good crop of corn and hops. The people in the country bring in their poultry to town on market days and are busy selling them. You can go for beautiful walks and drives in the country. Everything is so pleasant and kept so nice. The wild flowers smell so sweet and the fruit is so nice to eat. The country drives are good. Plenty of people always take a drive in the country. The birds sing so sweet in the woods and the squirrels are nice things to watch playing about. It is very healthful to reside in the country, there is nothing to blow about, no smoke, as there is in a town. The tradesmen have nice drives to take their goods into town, or generally send them by carriers' carts which run nearly every day. The poultry which country people keep is interesting to watch. Country people do a lot of work and are always busy.

IDIOMS FOR DISCUSSION.

3. Discuss the grammar of

(*a*) He talks like Brunswick did.

(*b*) A reward was offered to whomsoever should restore the watch.

(*c*) For not to have been dipped in Lethe's stream
Could save the son of Thetis from to die.

(*d*) I'll bring mine action on the proudest he
That stops my way in Padua.

(*e*) Every person has a right to defend themselves.

(*f*) Who are you talking about?

(*g*) Where there are plenty of boys there is plenty of fun.

(*h*) What is the good of me learning this?

(*i*) The reasons that dissuade us are as follow.

(*k*) These growing feathers plucked from Cæsar's wing
Will make him fly an ordinary pitch.

SYNTAX AND ANALYSIS.

4. (i) Comment on the syntax of the word, or phrase, in italics in:

(*a*) I think *it* right to say.

(*b*) It will last for *ever*.

(*c*) Let me see *you do* that again.

(*d*) I would be *friends* with you.

(*e*) They spent *four weeks* at Karlsbad, *which* is one of the most popular *health* resorts in Europe.

(*f*) *You*, sir, what *trade* are you?

(*g*) The whole thing, *lock*, *stock and barrel*, isn't worth one big yellow *sea poppy*.

(ii) Analyse:

> As waggish boys in games themselves foreswear,
> So the boy Love is perjur'd everywhere:
> For ere Demetrius look'd on Hermia's eyne,
> He hail'd down oaths that he was only mine.

POETIC DICTION.

5. Paying particular attention to the words in italics, trace as well as you can the working of the poet's mind in the composition of the following lines: in other words, say what thoughts came to him, and how they were suggested by the flight and song of the Skylark:

> *Ethereal minstrel! pilgrim* of the sky!
>   Dost thou despise the earth where cares abound?
> Or, while the wings *aspire*, are *heart* and *eye*
>   Both with thy nest upon the dewy ground?
> Thy nest which thou canst drop into at will,
>   Those quivering wings *composed*, that *music* still!
> Leave to the nightingale her shady wood;
>   A *privacy of glorious light* is thine:
> Whence thou dost pour upon the world a *flood*
>   *Of harmony*, with instinct *more divine*:
> *Type* of the wise who soar, but never roam;
>   True to the *kindred points* of Heaven and Home.

B.

PASSAGES FOR ANNOTATION.

6. Select one (but ONE only) of the following passages, and

(i) State its general purport;

(ii) Explain particularly the meaning of each portion printed in italics;

(iii) Write notes explaining, with as much fulness as you can, in a period of not more than half-an-hour, all historical allusions in it:

(*a*) O Walter, I have shelter'd here
Whatever maiden grace
The good old Summers, year by year,
Made ripe in Summer-chace.

Old Summers, when the monk was fat,
And, issuing shorn and sleek,
Would twist his girdle tight, and pat
The girls upon the cheek,

Ere yet, in scorn of Peter's-pence,
And *number'd bead, and shrift,*
Bluff Harry broke into the spence,
And *turn'd the cowls adrift:*

And I have seen some score of those
Fresh faces, that would thrive
When his *man-minded off-set* rose
To chase the deer at five.
(*Tennyson:* "Talking Oak.")

(*b*) It is not to be thought of, that *the Flood*
Of British freedom, which, to the open sea
Of the world's praise, from dark antiquity
Hath flowed, "with pomp of waters, unwithstood—"
Roused though it be full often to a mood
Which spurns the check of salutary bands,
That this most famous Stream in bogs and sands
Should perish, and to evil and to good
Be lost for ever.

(*c*) Cromwell, our chief of men, *who* . .

. . . .

. . *on the neck of crowned Fortune proud*
Hast reared God's trophies, and His work pursued,
While Darwen stream with blood of Scots imbrued,
And Dunbar field resounds thy praises loud,
And *Worcester's laureate wreath,* yet much remains
To conquer still; *Peace hath her victories*
No less renowned than War.

(*d*) The king that loved him, *as the state stood then,*
Was, force perforce, compelled to banish him:
And then that Henry Bolingbroke and he,
Being mounted and both roused in their seats

. . . .

Then, then, when there was nothing could have stay'd
My father from the breast of Bolingbroke,
O, when the king did throw his warder down,
His own life hung upon the staff he threw.
Then threw he down himself and all their lives
That, by indictment, and by dint of sword,
Have since miscarried under Bolingbroke.

(*e*) Sea-kings' daughters from over the sea,
. . . . Alexandra!
Welcome her, thunders of fort and of fleet!
Welcome her, thundering cheer of the street!

. . . .

. . welcome her, *welcome the land's desire,*
The sea-kings' daughter, as happy as fair,
Blissful bride of a blissful heir,
Bride of the heir of the kings of the sea—
O joy to the people and joy to the throne,
Come to us, love us and make us your own!
For Saxon or Dane or Norman we,
Teuton or Celt, or whatever we be,
We are each *all Dane* in our welcome of thee,
Alexandra!

SUBJECTS FOR AN ESSAY.

7. Write an essay of about 500 words upon ONE of the following subjects:

(*a*) The Influence of Rivers upon Human Intercourse.

(*b*) Triumphs of Navigation during the Tudor Period.

(*c*) The Chief Railways of Continental Europe and Asia.

(*d*) The English Carrying-trade: its history and present extension.

(*e*) The Conflict of England with Napoleon the First.

(*f*) The Influence of Climate and Geographical Position upon a people, as illustrated by the cases of India, England, and Scotland, respectively.

PRÉCIS OR ABSTRACT.

8. Write a PRÉCIS, or an ABSTRACT, of the following correspondence, in such a manner as to give, in a concise form, an

account readily intelligible without reference to the original documents, embracing the essential facts, and those only:

(1)

Leeward Islands.
Acting-Governor Melville to Mr. Chamberlain.
August 10, 1899. Telegram.

Regret to report have received information from Montserrat, stating island completely devastated by hurricane, 7th August; every church and chapel completely destroyed; all buildings destroyed or damaged; 74 deaths reported up to the present time; whole country people homeless. Suggest Mansion House Relief Fund should be started at once.

(2)

Colonial Office to Treasury.

August 11.

SIR,—I am directed by Mr. Secretary Chamberlain to transmit to you, to be laid before the Lords Commissioners of the Treasury, a copy of a telegram which has been received from the Officer Administering the Government of the Leeward Islands, reporting that the Colony under his government has been visited by a hurricane which has caused much loss of life and property.

As their Lordships are aware, under ordinary circumstances Mr. Chamberlain is most desirous of holding to the rule that the expenditure in these Islands should be kept as low as possible, in order to lighten the burden on the Imperial Exchequer, but, in the circumstances disclosed by this telegram, he feels that it is necessary to make an exception, if great suffering and possibly even loss of life are to be avoided. He, therefore, proposes, with their Lordships' concurrence, to authorise the Officer Administering the Government by telegram to expend a sum not exceeding £500 for relief in Montserrat, and, if absolutely necessary, a further sum not exceeding £500 for relief in the other islands visited by the hurricane.

I am to request the favour of a reply at their Lordships' earliest convenience.

Mr. Chamberlain is not yet in a position to decide whether or not the Acting Governor's suggestion, that a Mansion House Fund should be opened, should be conveyed to the Lord Mayor.

I am, etc.,
C. P. LUCAS.

(3)

Treasury to Colonial Office.

August 12.

SIR,—As requested by Mr. Secretary Chamberlain in Mr. Lucas's letter of the 11th instant, the Lords Commissioners of Her Majesty's Treasury concur in the proposal to authorise the Officer Administering the

Government of the Leeward Islands by telegram to expend a sum of £500 for relief in Montserrat, and (if absolutely necessary) a further sum not exceeding £500 for relief in the other islands visited by the recent hurricane.

I am, etc.,
FRANCIS MOWATT.

(4)

Mr. Chamberlain to Acting Governor Melville.
Telegram. August 12.

In answer to your telegram of 10th August, deeply regret to learn distress and loss of life caused by hurricane in Montserrat and other islands. You are authorised to expend sum not exceeding £500 for relief Montserrat, and, if absolutely necessary, equal amounts for relief other islands. Fear it might be of little avail to suggest Mansion House Fund unless necessity most urgent, as to which I await further information.

(5)

Acting-Governor Melville to Mr. Chamberlain.
Telegram. August 14.

Further intelligence received from Montserrat. £10,000 required to feed destitute population. 1,000 want medical assistance.

(6)

Mr. Chamberlain to the Lord Mayor.

August 14.

MY LORD MAYOR,—Your Lordship will have already noticed, through telegrams which have been communicated to the newspapers, that some of the West Indian Islands have been visited by a hurricane, and that among the islands which have suffered are British Colonies in the Leeward Islands group, and especially the island of Montserrat.

A week has passed since the disaster took place, and, though the first telegram received from the Acting-Governor on the 10th instant asked that a Mansion House Relief Fund should be started at once, I deferred communicating with Your Lordship in the hope that later news might indicate that it would not be necessary to repeat the appeal which you made on behalf of the West Indian Colonies in September last. There is no submarine cable to the island of Montserrat, and up to date full particulars have not been received, but such details as have been given point to great loss of life, and to want of food and clothing for several thousands, while in the island of St. Kitts it is stated that 3,000 people are homeless.

Under these circumstances, I do not feel justified in further postponing an appeal to you to invite public subscriptions on behalf of the sufferers in the Leeward Islands, and I would wish to emphasise the fact, that the islands which have suffered this year, as much as, or even more than, those which suffered last year, were already from other causes impoverished and distressed; that their administration has only been carried on with Imperial aid; and that poor relief has been a growing charge against falling revenues. Montserrat, in particular, has been year after year subject to visitations of various kinds, and I have already on a previous occasion been forced to enlist the aid of the Mansion House on its behalf.

Should your Lordship see fit to open a fund on the present occasion, I venture to hope that, in view of the pitiful succession of calamities which have befallen our West Indian Colonies, the appeal may meet with a speedy and a liberal response.

I remain, etc.,
J. CHAMBERLAIN.

LONDON UNIVERSITY MATRICULATION EXAMINATION PAPER IN ENGLISH.—(SEPT. 1903.)

[*Not more than* SIX *questions to be attempted, amongst which the Essay, and either the Précis or the Summary, must be included.*]

ANALYSIS AND SYNTAX.

1. (*a*) Analyse into clauses, stating the grammatical function and connection of each:—

'Tis a common proof
That lowliness is young ambition's ladder,
Whereto the climber-upward turns his face;
But when he once attains the upmost round,
He then unto the ladder turns his back,
Looks in the clouds, scorning the base degrees
By which he did ascend.

(*b*) Give a full classification of Adverbial Clauses, with one example of each class.

SYNTHESIS AND PUNCTUATION.

2. (*a*) Rewrite as a continuous passage, avoiding repetitions and the use of too many sentences:—

There are passages of Homer or Horace, which to a boy are but rhetorical commonplaces. To him they are neither better nor worse than a hundred others which any clever writer might supply. He gets them by heart. He thinks them very fine. He imitates them in his own flowing versification. He thinks he imitates them successfully. At length they come home to him. They come home to him when long years have passed. They come home to him when he has had experience of life. They pierce him with their sad earnestness. They pierce him with their vivid exactness. They pierce him as if he had never before known them.

(*b*) Comment on the differences between Masson's and Beeching's punctuation of this passage from *Paradise Lost*, and show how the sense has been variously understood by these editors:—

> These were the prime* in order and in might:
> The rest were long to tell; though far renowned
> The Ionian gods—of Javan's issue held
> Gods, yet confessed later than Heaven and Earth,
> Their boasted parents; *Titan*, Heaven's first-born,
> With his enormous brood. . . *Saturn*. . . *Jove*.
>
> MASSON.

> These were the prime in order and in might;
> The rest were long to tell, though far renowned:
> The Ionian gods, of Javan's issue held
> Gods, yet confessed later than Heaven and Earth
> Their boasted parents; *Titan* Heaven's first-born
> With his enormous brood. . . *Saturn*. . . *Jove*.
>
> BEECHING

CONSTRUCTIONS, USES, MEANINGS.

3. (*a*) Mention adjectives which are followed, respectively, by the propositions *of* and *to*, arranging your examples, so far as possible, in classes.

(*b*) Distinguish between the uses or meanings of: few, a few—with, by—beside, besides—assent, consent—precise, exact—aphorism, proverb—physician, physicist—obsolete, archaic—fresh, new—dissimulation, deceit.

ERRORS AND IDIOMS.

4. (*a*) Point out and correct any faults of expression in the following:—

(i) Fleet Street and the Strand with Trafalgar Square was one mass of seats on Coronation Day.

(ii) I am not one of those who believe everything I hear.

(iii) Many thanks for your letter, which I have forwarded to Mr. S., and asked him to write direct to you.

(iv) From the pier you can see all the large merchantmen coming and going from all parts of the world.

(v) After a long and prosperous reign of sixty-three years, we heard the sad news of the death of Queen Victoria.

(*b*) Without assuming any incorrectness, discuss the grammar of these idioms, with special reference to the words italicised:—

---

* Namely, of the Rebel Angels.

(i) His constancy *as a defender* of the truth was unalterable.
(ii) *No less a person* than the Archbishop was present.
(iii) They saw *each other* frequently.
(iv) We gazed upon that *gem of a building*, the Taj Mahal.
(v) He had no boy of his own age to play *with*.

PASSAGES FOR PARAPHRASING.

5. Distinguish between the diction of Poetry and Prose, and express as completely as you can in Prose the sense of any *five* of the following:—

(i) As long as skies are blue and fields are green,
Evening must usher night, night urge the morrow.

(ii) One touch of nature makes the whole world kin.

(iii) And on the tossing sea of steel
To and fro the standards reel.

(iv) The boast of heraldry, the pomp of power.
And all that beauty, all that wealth e'er gave,
Awaits alike the inevitable hour.

(v) Hope springs eternal in the human breast :
Man never is, but always to be blest.

(vi) Fame is the spur that the clear spirit doth raise
(That last infirmity of noble mind)
To scorn delights and live laborious days.

(vii) Day set on Norham's castled steep.

(viii) Yet the lark's shrill fife may come
  At the day-break from the fallow,
And the bittern sound his drum,
  Booming from the sedgy shallow.

(ix) Turn, Fortune, turn thy wheel with smile or frown ;
With that wild wheel we go not up or down ;
Our hoard is little, but our hearts are great.

(x) The Child is father of the Man ;
And I could wish my days to be
Bound each to each by natural piety.

PRÉCIS.

6. Throw into the form of a Précis, or continuous narrative, the following summary of events; and add a short note, explaining the circumstances in which the Long Parliament met :—

A.D. 1640.—The Long Parliament meets in November. Attack on King's Ministers. Impeachment of Strafford, Arrest of Archbishop Laud.

1641. Feb.—Triennial Bill passed.
March.—Trial of Strafford.
April—May.—The charges against Strafford not amounting to high treason, he is charged under a Bill of Attainder and executed.
Bill providing against adjournment or dissolution of Parliament without its own consent.

1641. June.—Ship money declared illegal. Courts of Star Chamber and High Commission abolished.
Sept.—Oct.—Recess of Parliament.
Nov.—Grand Remonstrance presented to the King. Division between Cavaliers and Roundheads first apparent.

1642. Jan.—Attempted arrest of five members. Commons demand control of militia.
May.—Falkland, Hyde, and a number of peers and members of the Commons secede to the King.
July 12.—Army raised for the "defence of King and Parliament." Essex made Captain-General.
Aug. 22.—Charles raises Royal Standard at Nottingham.

SUMMARY.

7. Write a very concise summary of the following passage arranging the matter in sections under suitable headings; and in a brief note, explain what two series of events are alluded to in the first paragraph. (N.B.—The plays of Shakespeare referred to are "Richard II.," "Henry IV.," "Henry V.," "Richard III."; and the novels of Scott are "Waverley," "Rob Roy," "Old Mortality," "A Legend of Montrose," "The Abbot," "Peveril of the Peak," "Redgauntlet," and "Woodstock.")

Scott and Shakespeare are the two poets of English history, standing out by themselves in strong relief, dealing each with a particular series of events starting from the same cause, a disputed succession to the crown, and both equally well adapted for poetic treatment.

Scott's execution of this labour of love is a masterpiece of art, and it is, we think, in these novels that posterity will recognise his greatest work. We do not mean to say that his best novels are to be found among the number, but that, regarded as the presentation of one long drama, complete within itself and capable of being detached from the rest of the series without injury to any part of it, they remain the most brilliant and enduring monument of his genius Scott made this great story his own, and has stamped upon it the impress of his own mind in characters which will never fade. The House of Stewart, like one of the old royal houses of ancient Greece, seemed to lie under the curse of some avenging Deity, with which the virtues of individuals, the gallantry and self-devotion of knights and gentlemen, contended in vain. Scott has worked up these elements into one great poem with skill and tact, with breadth of sympathy and warmth of imagination.

In glancing briefly at the general characteristics of these novels, we should prefer to take them in their historical order, beginning with "The Abbot" and ending with "Redgauntlet." The career of Mary strikes the keynote of the whole; and her embarkation on board the vessel which conveys her out of Scotland seems in a manner to foreshadow and to typify the embarkation of Charles Edward and Redgauntlet on board the vessel that was to carry them to France: the beginning and the end of "an auld sang." In the story of "The Abbot" Scott had perhaps a more difficult task to perform than in any of the Stewart series. What he himself thought about the Queen has long been the common property of all his admirers. He refused to write her Life because he did not like to tell what he thought the truth about it. Yet in the pages of "The Abbot" he is at little trouble to conceal it; though the manner of its revelation is one of the most wonderful monuments of Scott's literary skill which he has bequeathed to us.

SUBJECTS FOR AN ESSAY.

8. Write an essay of about 500 words upon *one* of the following subjects:—

(i) The place of England in the history of European civilisation.
(ii) The Colonial tour of the Prince and Princess of Wales.
(iii) The growth of the English Parliament.
(iv) The Revival of Learning in the Sixteenth Century.
(v) A railway journey from London to Edinburgh by one of the great lines.
(vi) A boating-tour on the Severn and the Avon, from Shrewsbury to Stratford.

LONDON UNIVERSITY MATRICULATION EXAMINATION PAPER IN ENGLISH, JANUARY, 1904.

[*Not more than* SIX *questions are to be attempted. The essay must be taken by* EVERY *candidate. When a question contains two or more parts, the answers must be given consecutively.*]

1. Write an essay of not more than *three* pages (about 500 words) upon any *one* of the following subjects:—

(i) The Mountain-ranges of Europe.
(ii) Submarine cables.

(iii) The great lakes of America.
(iv) The Colonial Expansion of England.
(v) The development of Religious Toleration in England.
(vi) The history of our relations with France in the fifteenth century.

ANALYSIS AND SYNTAX.

2. (*a*) Analyse into clauses *merely* :—

> O brother, I have seen this yew-tree smoke,
> Spring after spring, for half a hundred years :
> For never have I known the world without,
> Nor ever stray'd beyond the pale : but thee,
> When first thou camest—such a courtesy
> Spake thro' the limbs and in the voice—I knew
> For one of those who eat in Arthur's hall ;
> For good ye are and bad, and like to coins,
> Some true, some light, but every one of you
> Stamp'd with the image of the King.

(*b*) Discuss the sense and the syntax of the preposition OF in any *five* of the following expressions :—

(i) The city of Rome.
(ii) His love for me was wonderful, passing the love of women.
(iii) All of a sudden.
(iv) What a day we had of it !
(v) He died of a fever.
(vi) What of that ?
(vii) It was very good of you.
(viii) Upwards of five hundred pounds.

PUNCTUATION, REPORTED SPEECH, ERRORS IN EXPRESSION.

3. (*a*) Write a short passage, consisting of two or three sentences, to show the use of the various marks of punctuation.

(*b*) Convert the following passage, from a speech by Lord Macaulay in the House of Commons, into Reported Speech :—

> "If we are afraid that the people may attempt to accomplish their wishes by unlawful means, let us give them a solemn pledge that we will use in their cause all our high and ancient privileges, so often victorious in old conflicts with tyranny ; those privileges which our ancestors invoked, not in vain, on the day when a faithless king filled our house with his guards, took his seat, Sir, on your chair, and saw your predecessor kneeling on the floor before him. The Constitution of England, thank God, is

not one of those constitutions which are past repair, and whicl must, for the public welfare, be utterly destroyed."

(*c*) Comment on any errors of expression in the following:—

(i) This was said by Macbeth in one of his soliloquies to his wife.

(ii) One should always give an action a moment's thought before putting it into execution, and so saving a great deal of unpleasantness.

(iii) If it were possible to get near when one of these eruptions take place, we should have a grand sight.

(iv) A suit of armour that could be identified as worn at the battle of Agincourt would be priceless, and certainly ought to be deposited at the Tower.

(v) The meaning of the phrase, "Look before you leap," is that before attempting to do anything to think over the best way, and then to give those thoughts practical experience.

(vi) Although everyone has heard this maxim, we still find that not ninety-nine in a hundred practise it.

FUNCTIONS AND MEANINGS.

4. (*a*) State and exemplify the various grammatical functions in which relative clauses can be used.

(*b*) Distinguish between the meanings of: beneficent—benevolent; judicious—judicial; sensuous—sensual; continuous—continual; expedient—expeditious; deficient—defective; efficient—effective; exceedingly—excessively; presumptive—presumptuous; stimulus—stimulant.

USE OF WORDS, SENSE OF PHRASES.

5. (*a*) Write short sentences, containing, respectively, *one* of the following words, and explain precisely the meaning you attach to each: — scope — prohibitive — limbo — crucial — reciprocity.

(*b*) Explain the meaning of:—

(i) Are you content . . . . to make a virtue of necessity?

(ii) In notes, with many a winding bout
Of linked sweetness long drawn out.

(iii) The rank is but the guinea's stamp,
The man's the gowd for a' that.
[gowd=gold. a'=all.]

(iv) The dread of something after death,
The undiscover'd country from whose bourn
No traveller returns, puzzles the will,
And makes us rather bear those ills we have,
Than fly to others that we know not of.

(v) Where ignorance is bliss 'tis folly to be wise.
(vi) The loud laugh that spoke the vacant mind.

PARAPHRASE.

6. Paraphrase *two* of the following passages, and add notes sufficient to show that you fully understand the historical allusions:—

(i) The armaments which thunderstrike the walls
Of rock-built cities, bidding nations quake,
And monarchs tremble in their capitals,
The oak leviathans, whose huge ribs make
Their clay creator the vain title take
Of lord of thee and arbiter of war;
These are thy toys, and, as the snowy flake,
They melt into thy yeast of waves, which mar
Alike the Armada's pride, or spoils of Trafalgar.

(ii) It was a night of lovely June,
High rode in cloudless blue the moon,
Demayet smiled beneath her ray;
Old Stirling's towers arose in light,
And, twined in links of silver bright,
Her winding river lay.
Ah, gentle planet! Other sight
Shall greet thee, next returning night,
Of broken arms and banners tore,
And marshes dark with human gore,
And piles of slaughtered men and horse,
And Forth that floats the frequent corse,
And many a wounded wretch to plain
Beneath thy silver light in vain.

(iii) It was the time when England's Queen
Twelve years had reigned, a Sovereign dread;
Nor yet the restless crown had been
Disturbed upon her virgin head;
But now the inly-working North
Was ripe to send its thousands forth,
A potent vassalage to fight
In Percy's and in Neville's right.
Two Earls fast leagued in discontent,
Who gave their wishes open vent,
And badly urged a general plea,
The rites of ancient piety
To be triumphantly restored
By the stern justice of the sword.

(iv) Ere you were queen, yea, or your husband king,
I was a pack-horse in his great affairs.

. . . .

In all which time you and your husband Grey
Were factious for the house of Lancaster,
And, Rivers, so were you. Was not your husband
In Margaret's battle at Saint Alban's slain?

. . . .

Poor Clarence did forsake his father, Warwick;
Yea, and forswore himself—which Jesu pardon—
To fight on Edward's party for the Crown;
And for his meed, poor lord, he is mew'd up.

(v) Weave the warp and weave the woof
The winding-sheet of Edward's race
Give ample room, and verge enough
The characters of hell to trace.
Mark the year and mark the night,
When Severn shall re-echo with affright
The shrieks of death, through Berkeley's roof that ring,
Shrieks of an agonizing king!
She-wolf of France, with unrelenting fangs
That tear'st the bowels of thy mangled mate,
From thee be born, who o'er thy country hangs
The scourge of heaven!

PRÉCIS.

7. Construct from the following notes, as well as from your own knowledge, as good an account, as you can, of the geography of Austria-Hungary:—

Austria-Hungary, a monarchy. Largest country in Europe, except Russia. Remarkable for great variety of configuration, climate, races, languages and governments.

Boundaries: Russia, Germany, the Adriatic, etc.

Mountain Systems: Alps, Carpathians, Bohemian, and Moravian ranges.

Plains: Lower Austria, Hungary, and Slavonia.

Rivers: Danube, Dniester, Adige, Vistula, Elbe.

Gulfs: Trieste, Quarnero, Cattaro.

Population: Germans, Slavonians, Roumanians, Magyars, etc.

Cities—Resources—Trade—Internal Communications.

SUMMARY.

8. Summarise the contents of the following, under a main, and under subordinate heads, and add brief historical notes

showing that you apprehend clearly the circumstances of the case set forth :—

The wide popularity which was so rapidly won by the Genevan Bible [1560] had two important results: it undermined the titular authority of the Great Bible [1539], which, beyond all doubt, was inferior to it as a translation; and it forced Archbishop Parker into the endeavour to supersede it by a Bible whose excellence might deserve to be stamped with the hall-mark of Church and State. To have silently acquiesced in the free circulation of the Genevan Bible, side by side, not only with the Great Bible, but with Coverdale's and Matthew's Bibles, would have been to condone a medley of authorities that fell but little short of spiritual chaos. It must be borne in mind that our great Tudor Queen, whose sagacity was always alert to discern and recognise

> The limits of resistance, and the bounds
> Determining concession,

differed altogether from Henry the Eighth in her attitude, during the first period of her reign, towards the current English versions of the Scriptures. Firmly opposed to whatever she considered dangerous to the cause of order, or to the supremacy of the crown, she saw no reason to interfere between one Bible and another. She would have no version "either abled or disabled." She would be the leader of no particular section of her subjects, but the Queen of England. Left to itself, it was inevitable that the Genevan should, on its merits, dethrone the Great Bible; yet it was plainly impossible for Convocation to erect the Puritan book into a standard version, or to obtain the Queen's authorisation of an annotated Bible so undisguisedly associated with the names of Calvin, whom she detested, and of Knox, whom she detested still more.

His own love of uniformity, if nothing else, would sooner or later have caused Parker to address himself to a task which, if there was to be any finality in the interpretation of, and the appeal to, Scripture, must inevitably be undertaken. Accordingly, about the year 1563-4, he set himself to organise a select revision committee, and inasmuch as the majority of them were taken from the Episcopal bench, the version for which they were responsible became known to history as the Bishops' Bible [1568].

LONDON UNIVERSITY MATRICULATION EXAMINATION PAPER IN ENGLISH, JUNE, 1904.

[*The Essay and the Précis are to be done by all candidates, and must have the first places in the Answer-book Of the remaining questions only* FOUR *are to be attempted. Answers to a question containing two or more parts must be given consecutively.*]

ESSAY.

1. Write an essay of not more than *three* pages (about 500 words) upon any *one* of the following subjects :—

(i) The growth of popular representation in England.
(ii) The routes to Shanghai from London.
(iii) The Jacobite rebellions.
(iv) The battlefields of Europe.
(v) Religious movements in England since the Reformation.
(vi) Scientific advance in the nineteenth century.

PRÉCIS.

2. (i) Make an Abstract of the following passage, indicating in a form suitable for a title or heading, (*a*) its general subject, (*b*) the particular subject of each paragraph.

(ii) Upon the lines of this Abstract write a Précis, or account in brief, giving the substance of the passage without anything superfluous.

> Grotius [1583-1645] gives in his book *De Jure Belli* a very definite statement as to the prevailing* sentiment. At the devastation of a province or the capture of a city, he thinks it right that children, women, old men, clergy, farmers, merchants, and other non-combatants, should be spared. He allows that tradition and sentiment are against him, but he claims to be speaking of the newer spirit. Speaking as a lawyer, bound by tradition, he has to admit the right of the victor to slay all prisoners taken in arms, but he thinks that if heathen they might be more wisely enslaved, and if Christian they ought to be only held to ransom. It was not till another century had gone by that the feeling of Europe was absolutely clear and definite about the matter, and that Montesquieu [1689-1755] was able to say without reserve that "slaughter of prisoners made after the heat of action is now condemned by every civilised nation."
>
> If one wishes to see clearly how far the new sentiments had travelled, let him compare the civil war of Cavalier and Roundhead with the war of Stephen and Matilda five centuries before, or even with the Wars of the Roses half-way between. He will find an almost complete absence of the earlier ferocity. Men make war with grave regret; it is not the aim and object of life, but a sad necessity reluctantly complied with. Non-combatants are as little as possible molested, and property is rarely destroyed in wantonness or in malice.
>
> On the Continent the progress was somewhat slower; still, it went forward; and Niebuhr says that the devastation of the Palatinate by the troops of Louis the Fourteenth was the last instance of the old practice whereby the houses, crops, and every kind of property throughout a fertile province was burnt, and the inhabitants turned out as homeless wanderers.

---

* *Viz.* respecting the treatment of a conquered people.

But, of course, the greatest contrast between the seventeenth century and the seventh is found in the growth of a huge civil population. Every man of the seventh century was trained to arms. He had to be so trained. It was his only chance of prospering, and thus it became his only pride. In the seventeenth century not one man in a dozen had been in any way trained to arms or taken part in warfare. Great bodies of men had learnt to live in absolute peacefulness among themselves; and this alone was a clear mark of a huge alteration in warlike sentiments effected in the intervening thousand years.

Now make the final transition to the England of our own time. For two and a half centuries her soil has been practically free from war; for a century and a half it has been absolutely free from it. Scotland and Ireland have been very nearly as long undisturbed by conflicts. It now appears that forty millions of people can live at absolute peace among themselves in a land where, ten centuries ago, our ancestors of the Heptarchy spent their whole lives in fighting each other, till, as Milton says in his history of those unlovely times, the tangle of feuds and wars, murders and devastations, became too sickening to be recorded. If we contrast the present habit of going unarmed and never dreaming of the need of arms, with the dire necessity of those days, when his weapons were a man's constant companions, we can see how far the race has travelled on the road to peace. So, if we wish to see how far it has travelled on the way to humanity, think with what gusto our ancestors slew the wounded on the field of battle, and then consider how the army-surgeon—an invention of the last two centuries—cares for the wounded of the enemy, with almost as much solicitude as for his own.

ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

3. (*a*) Analyse into clauses merely, stating the grammatical function and connection of each clause:—

Say ye, who, with less prudence than of old
Jotham ascribed to his assembled trees
In politic convention, put your trust
In the shadow of a bramble, and reclined
In fancied peace beneath his dangerous branch,
Rejoice in him, and celebrate his sway,
Where find ye passive fortitude?

(*b*) Rewrite as a continuous passage, avoiding repetitions and the use of too many sentences:—

The Umbrians gazed in wonder on the slingers from the Balearian islands. The slingers were in Hannibal's army. The Umbrians gazed in wonder on the regular African infantry. The African infantry had not yet exchanged their long lances for the stabbing

> sword of the Roman soldier. They had not yet exchanged their small shields for the long shield of the Roman soldier. They gazed in wonder on the heavy Carthaginian cavalry. The heavy Carthaginian cavalry were mounted on horses superior to those of Italy. Above all they gazed in wonder on the bands of wild Numidians. The Numidians rode without saddle or bridle. They rode as if the rider and his horse were one creature. They scoured over the country with a speed and impetuosity defying escape and defying resistance.

SYNTAX.

4. (*a*) Discuss the grammatical uses of the words *what*, *nothing*, *both* in the following:—

(i) I'll tell you what: we will go and see him.
(ii) What news have you brought?
(iii) What with one thing and what with another.
(iv) Nothing good can come of that.
(v) Both my friends saw it.
(vi) We both of us were present.
(vii) Both the two cities were Roman colonies.
(viii) Both the king and the queen spoke.
(ix) The name set both our thoughts anxiously wandering.

(b) Write sentences, illustrating the different uses of:—

(i) I come — I am coming.
(ii) I came — I have come.
(iii) Will he come? — Shall he come.

Explain fully, in the case of each pair, why the forms cannot be used interchangeably. Why is it incorrect to say: "Mr. Gladstone has been Prime Minister," but correct to say: "Lord Rosebery has been Prime Minister?"

EXPLANATION OF TERMS.

5. (*a*) Explain and illustrate: antithesis, climax, personification, paradox, euphemism, ellipsis, alliteration.

(*b*) With regard to any *one* of the words: *post*, *line*, *foot*, say (i) in what various senses it is used; (ii) how these senses may be connected with each other. Add sentences in illustration.

PASSAGES FOR EXPLANATION AND COMMENT.

6. Explain the italicised portions of *one* of the following passages, and write notes on the historical allusions in it:—

(i) At this time the king began again to be haunted with spirits by the magic and curious arts of the Lady Margaret, who raised up the ghost of Richard, Duke of York, second son to King Edward the Fourth, to walk and vex the king. *This was a finer counterfeit stone than Lambert Simnel, better done and worn upon greater hands, being graced after with the wearing of a king of France and a king of Scotland, not of a Duchess of Burgundy only.* And for Simnel, there was not much in him more than that he was a handsome boy, and did not shame his robes. *But this youth of whom we are now to speak was such a mercurial as the like hath seldom been known, and could make his own part if at any time he chanced to be out.*

(ii) *You ask me why, tho' ill at ease,*
Within this region I subsist,
Whose spirits falter in the mist,
And languish for the purple seas.

It is the land that freemen till,
That sober-suited Freedom chose,
The land, where girth with friends or foes
A man may speak the thing he will;

A land of settled government,
A land of just and old renown,
Where Freedom slowly broadens down
From precedent to precedent:

Where faction seldom gathers head,
But, by degrees to fulness wrought,
The strength of some diffusive thought
Hath time and space to work and spread.

(iii) *Now borne upon the wings of truth sublime,*
Review thy dim original and prime.
This island, spot of unreclaimed rude earth,
The cradle that received thee at thy birth,
Was rocked by many a rough Norwegian blast,
And Danish howlings scared thee as they passed.

. . . .

The Roman taught thy stubborn knee to bow,
Though twice a Caesar could not bend thee now:

. . . .

Thy language at this distant moment shows
How much the country to the conqueror owes:
Expressive, energetic, and refined,
It sparkles with the gems he left behind:
He brought thy land a blessing when he came,
He found thee savage, and he left thee tame:
Taught thee to clothe thy pinked and painted hide,
And grace thy figure with a soldier's pride.

ERRORS AND AMBIGUITIES.

7. (*a*) Comment on any errors of expression in the following, but do not transcribe the sentences:—

(i) The capture of Cape Town from the Dutch sowed the seed of our South African possessions, and paved the way for future administration.

(ii) Compared with the Continents of Asia and America, the mountains of Europe are rather low.

(iii) The ransom of a man's life are his riches. [Prov. xiii. 8].

(iv) As White remarks, the *Midsummer Night's Dream* has no prototype in ancient or modern story.

(v) In a word, he apes the worst behaviour of the mule.

(*b*) Say how the following sentences are ambiguous, and how you would punctuate in accordance with each of the two meanings that can be assigned to them:—

(i) Among other [prisoners] were these Mordake Earl of Fife son to the governor Archibald Earl Douglas Thomas Earl of Murray and the Earls of Athol and Menteith.

(ii) I have said it it is true I deny it it is false.

(iii) Which would you rather that the lion should eat you or the tiger?

(iv) I accomplished my business and returned the day after.

(v) Next door to us there was a public-house which was a great nuisance.

STYLE AND DICTION.

8. (*a*) Express in a more simple style, but, as far as possible, in the same words, the substance of the following sentence from Milton's speech to Parliament "For the Liberty of unlicenc'd Printing":—

> If therefore ye be loth to dishearten utterly and discontent, not the mercenary crew of false pretenders to learning, but the free and ingenuous sort of such as evidently were born to study and love learning for itself, not for lucre or any other end but the service of God and of truth, and perhaps that lasting fame and perpetuity of praise which God and good men have consented shall be the reward of those whose published labours advance the good of mankind, then know, that so far to distrust the judgement and the honesty of one who hath but a common repute in learning and never yet offended, as not to count him fit to print his mind without a tutor and examiner, lest he should drop a schism or something of corruption, is the greatest displeasure and indignity to a free and knowing spirit that can be put upon him.

(*b*) Discuss the diction of the following stanzas, and account for the great difference between them in poetic effect:—

Then rose from sea to sky the wild farewell—
  Then shrieked the timid, and stood still the brave—
Then some leaped overboard with dreadful yell,
  As eager to anticipate their grave;
And the sea yawned around her like a hell,
  And down she sucked with her the whirling wave,
Like one who grapples with his enemy,
And strives to strangle him before he die.

. . . .

The boats, as stated, had got off before,
  And in them crowded several of the crew;
And yet their present hope was hardly more
  Than what it had been, for so strong it blew
There was slight chance of reaching any shore;
  And then they were too many, though so few—
Nine in the cutter, thirty in the boat,
Were counted in them when they got afloat.

LONDON UNIVERSITY MATRICULATION EXAMINATION PAPER IN ENGLISH, SEPT., 1904.

[*The Essay and the Précis are to be written by all candidates, and must have the first places in the Answer-book. Of the remaining questions only* FOUR *are to be attempted. Begin each answer on a fresh page.*]

ESSAY.

1. (i) A railway journey from London to Penzance.
   (ii) The Mines and Manufactures of Great Britain.
   (iii) A description of *either* China *or* the Italian Peninsula, with reference to physical features, products, and population.
   (iv) Influence of rivers and mountains on commerce.
   (v) The effect on Scotland of the Union with England.
   (vi) The Tudor and the Stuart dynasties contrasted.

PRÉCIS.

2. (i) State (*a*) the main purport of the following passage under one title or heading; and (*b*) the purport of each paragraph in the same way.

(ii) Write a *précis* of the passage, giving the substance of it, without anything superfluous.

The impulse given to the study of Greek by exiles during the half century preceding the Conquest of Constantinople, and by the enthusiasm of a series of scholars from Petrarch and Boccaccio down to 1453, was greatly stimulated by the increase of fugitives consequent on the capture of the city.

The arrival of numbers of scholars in Italy shortly before and shortly after 1453 is contemporaneous with the full spring-time of the great revival of learning. A series of remarkable efforts had been made to restore ancient Roman and Greek glory as seen in literature and architecture. Learning was regarded as a new and improved example. The learning of the ancients was compared with the ignorance of the Churchmen. The new movement marked a great reaction and went to unjustifiable extremes. Some of the advocates for classical influence went to the extent of discarding Christian in favour of Pagan morality. . . . Paganism, because it was contemporaneous with the classical period, invaded the Church itself. All the architecture, art, and literature of Christianity was bad except in so far as it approximated to Pagan models. . . . The careful study of the Latin classics, the marvellous development of painting, architecture, and sculpture, but, above all, the keen interest felt in the newly developed study of Greek, were all to produce wonderful fruit within a generation after 1453, and to culminate in Italy in an age of singular intellectual brilliancy.

The study of Greek, at first almost confined to Florence, gradually spread over the whole of the peninsula, and finally passed north of the Alps into Germany, where it was taken up with great earnestness. . . . In 1485 a Greek professor was appointed in Paris, and one in Rome. In the reign of Henry VII., Oxford consented to receive Grocyn and Linacre as teachers of Greek.

The movement known as "The Revival of Learning" was accomplished before the end of the fifteenth century, and all investigators are agreed that it had been very largely contributed to by Greek exiles during the half century preceding and following the Moslem conquest.

Its paganisation of Christianity proved temporary. But the critical examination of the text of the Greek New Testament had more durable results. It called attention to the contents of a book which had hitherto been taken as outside controversy. When the study of Greek passed north of the Alps, the examination of the sacred writings was no longer in the hands of *dilettanti* who looked upon the text with the contempt of scholars disposed to accept Paganism as the complement of a higher form of civilisation, and who had no patience with what they regarded as trivialities, but in those of religious and earnest German students, with results, in Erasmus, Luther, Melancthon, Calvin, and others, the end of which is not yet visible.

While it is beyond doubt that the dispersion of students from Constantinople aided the intellectual movement in Western Europe, there is no ground for the belief that, if the city had not been captured, Greek influence would not have made itself felt in the Renaissance. The dispersion hastened the development of a movement which had already begun, awakened a spirit of inquiry, and conducted scholars into new fields of thought earlier than they would have arrived if not thus aided. In this sense, and to this extent, it may be claimed as a beneficial result of the capture of Constantinople. (*Pears:* "Destruction of the Greek Empire.")

SYNONYMS, METRE AND PUNCTUATION.

3. (*a*) Construct *six* sentences, using each of the following words in an appropriate sense:—

(i) Docile, tractable, ductile.
(ii) Satire, irony, sarcasm.

(*b*) Write the following passage in blank verse with suitable punctuation:—

Thoughts whither have ye led me with what sweet compulsion thus transported to forget what hither brought us hate not love nor hope of paradise for hell hope here to taste of pleasure but all pleasure to destroy save what is in destroying other joy to me is lost.

CORRELATIVE EXPRESSIONS.

4. Express the following ideas by changing some of the parts of speech into others, and state your reasons for the alteration in each instance:—

(*a*) The result would be a hopeless confusion of thought by such a statement of the theory of evolution without any modification.

(*b*) His assertion that the combination of the two elements would be the effect of extreme pressure was a manifestation of his ignorance of recent discoveries.

(*c*) The King's favouring the extreme party, in spite of their declaration against the war, gave deep offence to his well wishers.

(*d*) Humble origin is no bar to the attainment of greatness, while pride of birth is a frequent cause of humiliation.

ANALYSIS AND REPORTED SPEECH.

5. (*a*) Analyse into clauses merely, stating the grammatical function and connection of each clause:—

Let thy voice
Rise, like a fountain, for me night and day,
For what are men better than sheep or goats,
That nourish a blind life within the brain,
If, knowing God, they lift not hands of prayer
Both for themselves and those who call them friends?

(*b*) Turn the following passage into a Reported Speech:—

As to the wealth which the Colonies have drawn from the sea by their fisheries, you had all that matter fully opened at your bar. You surely thought those acquisitions of value, for they seemed even to excite your envy; and yet the spirit by which that enterprising employment has been exercised ought rather, in my opinion, to have raised your esteem and admiration. And pray, Sir, what in the world is equal to it? Pass by the other parts, and look at the manner in which the people of New England have of late carried on the whale fishery. Whilst we follow them among the tumbling mountains of ice, and behold them penetrating into the deepest frozen recesses of Hudson's Bay and Davis's Strait; whilst we are looking for them beneath the Arctic Circle, we hear that they have pierced into the opposite region of polar cold, that they are at the antipodes. —BURKE.

SYNTAX.

6. (*a*) Explain the Demonstrative Pronouns in:—

(i) The busy sylphs surround their darling care;
These set the head, and those divide the hair.

(ii) Two principles in human nature reign:
Self-love, to urge, and Reason, to restrain;
Nor this a good, nor that a bad we call,
Each works its end, to move or govern all.

(*b*) Illustrate the use of *whose* as a Relative Pronoun, and state to what class of nouns its use is chiefly confined.

(*c*) Discuss the correctness of *whom* in the following sentences:—

(i) Tell me whom you saw.
(ii) He could name politicians whom he knew were above such considerations.
(iii) Whom do they say the agent represents?
(iv) Belial came last, than whom a spirit more lewd
Fell not from heaven.

PARAPHRASE.

7. Paraphrase *one* of the following passages, and give an account of the historical events to which it refers:—

(*a*) "Sweet is the holiness of youth"—so felt
Time-honoured Chaucer, when he framed the lay
By which the prioress beguiled the way,
And many a pilgrim's rugged heart did melt.
Hadst thou, loved Bard! whose spirit often dwelt
In the clear land of vision, but foreseen
King, child, and seraph, blended in the mien
Of pious Edward kneeling as he knelt
In meek and simple infancy, what joy
For universal Christendom had thrilled
Thy heart! What hopes inspired thy genius, skilled
(O great Precursor, genuine morning star)
The lucid shafts of reason to employ,
Piercing the papal darkness from afar!

(*b*) Know that when made Archbishop I was freed,
Before the Prince and chief Justiciary,
From every bond and debt and obligation
Incurr'd as Chancellor.
Hear me, son.
As gold
Outvalues dross, light darkness, Abel Cain,
The soul the body, and the Church the Throne,
I charge thee, upon pain of mine anathema,
That thou obey, not me, but God in me,
Rather than Henry. I refuse to stand
By the King's censure, make my cry to the Pope,
By whom I will be judged; refer myself,
The King, these customs, all the Church, to him,
And under his authority—I depart.

STYLE AND DICTION.

8. Compare the style of the following passages with regard to—

(*a*) The structure of the sentences.

(*b*) The choice of words.

(i) That which was organized by the moral ability of one has been executed by the physical efforts of many, and DRURY LANE THEATRE is now complete. Of that part behind the curtain, which has not yet been destined to glow beneath the brush of the varnisher, or vibrate to the hammer of the carpenter, little is thought by the public, and little need be said by the committee. Truth, however, is not to be sacrificed for the accommodation of either; and he who should pronounce that our edifice has received its final embellishment would be disseminating falsehood without incurring favour, and risking the disgrace of detection without participating the advantage of success.

(ii) Remember that. Never forget that. Read it to your children, and to your children's children! And now, *most thinking people*, cast your eyes over my head to what the builder (I beg his pardon, the architect) calls the *proscenium*. No motto, no slang, no popish Latin, to keep the people in the dark. Nothing in the dead languages, properly so called, for they ought to die. The Covent Garden manager tried that, and a pretty business he made of it! When a man uses Latin phrases he is called a man of letters. Very well, and is not a man who cries O.P.* a man of letters too? You ran your O.P. against his Latin, and pray which beat? I prophesied that, though I never told anybody.

(iii) Finding on enumeration that they have, with a with-two-hands-and-one-tongue-to-be-applauded liberality, contracted for more gunpowder than they want, they have parted with the surplus to the mattock-carrying and hustings-hammering high-bailiff of Westminster, who has, with his own shovel, dug a large hole in the front of the parish-church of St. Paul, Covent Garden, that, upon the least symptom of ill-breeding in the mob at the general election, the whole of the market may be blown into the air. This, ladies and gentlemen, may at first make provisions *rise*, but we pledge the credit of our theatre that they will soon *fall* again, and people be supplied, as usual, with vegetables, in the in-general-strewed-with-cabbage-stalks-but-on-Saturday-night-lighted-up-with-lamps market of Covent Garden.

---

* O.P. refers to the Old Price Riot, caused by the rise in the price of admission to the new Covent Garden Theatre.

LONDON UNIVERSITY MATRICULATION EXAMINATION PAPER IN ENGLISH, JANUARY, 1905.

[*The Essay and the Précis are to be written by all candidates, and must have the first places in the Answer-book. Of the remaining questions only* FOUR *are to be attempted. Begin each answer on a fresh page.*]

ESSAY.

1. (i) The political and social aspects of the nineteenth century.
   (ii) The chief factors of modern civilisation.
   (iii) Geographical discoveries during the last fifty years.
   (iv) The seaports of Southern Europe.
   (v) The Later Plantagenets.

PRECIS.

2. (i) State under one heading or title the main purport—
   (*a*) Of the following extract;
   (*b*) Of each paragraph of the extract.

(ii) Write a *précis* of the extract, giving the substance of it without any superfluous details.

What, say some, can give us a more contemptible idea of a large state, than to find it mostly governed by custom; to have few written laws, and no boundaries to mark the jurisdiction between the senate and the people? Among the number who speak in this manner is the great Montesquieu, who asserts that every nation is free in proportion to its written laws, and seems to hint at a despotic and arbitrary conduct in the present King of Prussia, who has abridged the laws of his country into a short compass.

As getting the ancients on our side is half a victory, it will not be amiss to fortify the argument with an observation of Chrysostom's: "The Enslaved are the fittest to be governed by laws, and free men by custom." Custom partakes of the nature of parental injunction; it is kept by the people themselves, and observed with a willing obedience. The observance of it must, therefore, be a mark of freedom, and coming originally to a state from the reverenced founders of its liberty, will be an encouragement and assistance to it in the defence of that blessing. But a conquered people, a nation of slaves, must pretend to none of this freedom, or these happy distinctions. . . And the fixing a conquest must be done by giving laws, which may every moment serve to remind the people enslaved of their conquerors, nothing being more dangerous than to trust a lately subdued people with old customs that presently upbraid their degeneracy, and provoke them to revolt.

The wisdom of the Roman republic in their veneration for custom, and backwardness to introduce a new law, was perhaps the cause of their long continuance, and of the virtues of which they have set the world so many examples. But to show in what that wisdom consists, it may be proper to observe that the benefit of new written laws is merely confined to the consequences of their observance; but customary laws, keeping up a veneration for the founders, engage men in the imitation of their virtues as well as policy. To this may be ascribed the religious regard the Romans paid to their forefathers' memory, and their adhering for so many ages to the practice of the same virtues, which nothing contributed more to efface than the introduction of a voluminous body of new laws over the neck of venerable custom.

SYNTAX AND FAULTS OF EXPRESSION.

3. (*a*) Account fully for the construction of the words in italics:—

(i) The *king's* flatterers.
(ii) Knock *me* at this gate.
(iii) To go on board *a ship*.
(iv) He is a great friend of my *father's*.
(v) They heard her *come*.

(*b*) Correct any faults of expression in not more than *four* of the following sentences, and give reasons for your corrections:—

(i) I never remember having met his equal.
(ii) His failure was rather due to his stupidity than from the neglect of his teachers.
(iii) Neither in writing for the learned or for the general reader was he very successful.
(iv) The reason why the disaster occurred was on account of an error by the signalman.
(v) There are people at whom we all smile yet secretly like.
(vi) He much preferred trudging through the mud than to take the Tube.

ANALYSIS AND REPORTED SPEECH.

4. (i) Write three Complex Sentences containing the following Clauses in the order indicated by the letters (*a*), (*b*), (*c*).

First Sentence: (*a*) Principal Clause; (*b*) Adjectival Clause; (*c*) Adverbial Clause of Consequence.

Second Sentence: (*a*) Adverbial Clause of Condition; (*b*) Principal Clause; (*c*) Adjectival Clause.

Third Sentence: (*a*) Substantival Clause; (*b*) Adjectival Clause; (*c*) Principal Clause.

(ii) Turn the following Reported Speech into the Direct Form (*oratio recta*):—

Mr. RITCHIE congratulated the Chancellor of the Exchequer upon the great ability with which he had discharged what he rightly described as a heavy duty. The right hon. gentleman had succeeded in making his proposals perfectly plain and simple to the Committee, a task which he knew from experience to be by no means easy. He very much regretted that his right hon. friend was placed in the difficult position of having to face a falling revenue, and he regretted it still more because it had been contended in many quarters that it was his (Mr. Ritchie's) proposals of last year that had landed the right hon. gentleman in his present difficulties. He had had many congratulations from his friends that it was not his duty this year to introduce the Budget; but although these congratulations were well grounded, he should have been glad if he could have done anything to relieve his right hon. friend of his difficulties. In preparing his Budget last year he made full inquiry into all the circumstances that were likely to affect the revenue, and he did not feel justified in making any material reductions on the estimates of income which his advisers laid before him.

FIGURES OF SPEECH, PUNCTUATION, SYNTHESIS.

5. (*a*) Name and define the figures of speech employed in the following passages:—

(i) Stars fade out and galaxies—street-lamps of the city of God.

(ii) Hope, the balm of life, darts a ray of light through the thickest gloom.

(iii) Men must work and women must weep.

(iv) Let a deeper knell in the heart be knolled.

(v) He lost his wife, his daughter, his sons and his watch—all at one fell swoop.

(*b*) Punctuate and paragraph:—

The Vice-chancellor entered and such a wretched pale object I have seldom beheld he seemed crippled and writhing with rheumatic pains hardly able to walk after a few minutes had passed Mr. Smedley came round to me and whispered have you made up your mind yes quite thank you now for the beauty of Cambridge the beauty of beauties King's College Chapel on the first entrance I felt silenced by admiration.

(*c*) Combine into a single sentence the following group of sentences:—

This race is called the Iberian, Ivernian, or Silurian. It was probably sallow, dark-haired, and dark-eyed. It underlies the population of all Western Europe. It came from Asia. It travelled along the northern slopes of the Caucasus. It passed through South Russia. It left its monuments in the Crimea.

USES AND MISUSES OF WORDS.

6. (i) Show by means of short sentences in what different senses the following words may be used, and account for their being so used:—

Prevent, nice, minute, simple.

(ii) Illustrate the common misuse of the following words:—

Future, decimate, lay, antiquarian, mutual.

POETIC DICTION.

7. Apply one of the terms—Graceful, Pedantic, Bombastic, Elevated, Bathos—to each of the following quotations. State your reasons in each instance.

(*a*) No! rather let the fountain of your valour
Spring through each stream of enterprise,
Each petty channel of conducive daring,
Till the full torrent of your foaming wrath
O'erwhelm the flats of sunk hostility!

(*b*) And like the baseless fabric of this vision,
The cloud-capp'd towers, the gorgeous palaces,
The solemn temples, the great globe itself,
Yea, all which it inherit, shall dissolve.

(*c*) Mark him of shoulders curved, of stature tall,
Black hair and vivid eye and meagre cheek,
His prominent feature like an eagle's beak.

(*d*) Graced as thou art with all the power of words,
So known, so honoured at the House of Lords.

(*e*) It haunted me, the morning long
With weary sameness in the rhymes,
The phantom of a silent song,
That went and came a thousand times.

PARAPHRASE.

8. State in a few words the general sense of *one* of the following passages, and write notes on the historical allusions in it:—

(*a*) Those gracious words revive my drooping thoughts,
And give my tongue-tied sorrows leave to speak.
Now, therefore, be it known to noble Lewis,
That Henry, sole possessor of my love,
Is of a king become a banish't man,
And forced to live in Scotland a forlorn;
While proud ambitious Edward Duke of York
Usurps the regal title and the seat
Of England's true-anointed lawful king.
This is the cause that I, poor Margaret,
With this my son, Prince Edward, Henry's heir,
Am come to crave thy just and lawful aid;
And if thou fail us, all our hope is done.

(*b*) Time was when it was praise and boast enough
In every clime, and travel where we might,
That we were born her children; praise enough
To fill the ambition of a private man,
That Chatham's language was his mother-tongue,
And Wolfe's great name compatriot with his own.
Farewell those honours, and farewell with them
The hope of such hereafter. They have fallen,
Each in his field of glory; one in arms
And one in Council. Wolfe upon the lap
Of smiling victory that moment won,
And Chatham, heart-sick of his country's shame,
They made us many soldiers. Chatham, still
Consulting England's happiness at home,
Secured it by an unforgiving frown,
If any wronged her. Wolfe, where'er he fought,
Put so much of his heart into his act,
That his example had a magnet's force,
And all were swift to follow whom all loved.

LONDON UNIVERSITY MATRICULATION EXAMINATION PAPER IN ENGLISH, JUNE, 1905.

[*The Essay and the Précis are to be written by all candidates, and must have the first places in the Answer-book. Of the remaining questions only* FOUR *are to be attempted. Begin each answer on a fresh page.*]

ESSAY.

1. (i) The inland Seas of Europe.
   (ii) A description of the Balkan Peninsula.

(iii) The historic towns of England.
(iv) A sketch of British rule in India.
(v) The Norman Dynasty.

PRECIS.

2. (i) State under one heading or title the main purport (*a*) of the following extract; (*b*) of each paragraph of the extract.

(ii) Write a Précis of the extract, giving its substance without any superfluous details.

It was not from want of perceiving the beauty of external nature, but from a different way of perceiving it, that the Greeks have not turned their genius to portray, either in colour or in poetry, the outlines, the hues, and contrasts of all the fair valleys, and bold cliffs, and golden noons, and rosy dawns, which their beautiful country affords in lavish abundance.

Primitive people never, so far as I know, enjoy what is called the picturesque in nature. Wild forests, beetling cliffs, reaches of Alpine snow, are with them great hindrances to human intercourse, and difficulties in the way of agriculture. They are furthermore the homes of the enemies of mankind, of the eagle, the wolf, or the tiger, and are most dangerous in times of earthquake or tempest. Hence the grand and striking features of nature are at first looked upon with fear and dislike . .

I do not suppose the early Greeks differed in this respect from other people, except that the frequent occurrence of mountains and forests made agriculture peculiarly difficult, and intercourse scanty, thus increasing their dislike for the apparently reckless waste in nature. We have even in Homer a similar feeling as regards the sea—the sea that proved the source of all their wealth, and the condition of most of their greatness. Before they had learned all this, they called it "the unvintageable brine," and looked upon its shore as merely so much waste land. We can, therefore, easily understand how, in the first beginning of Greek art, the representation of wild landscape would find no place, whereas fruitful fields did not suggest themselves as more than the ordinary background. Art in those days was struggling with material nature, to which it felt a certain antagonism.

There was nothing in the social circumstances of the Greeks to produce any revolution in this attitude during their greatest days. The Greek republics were small towns, where the pressure and fatigue of city life was not felt. The Greeks themselves were essentially townsmen, who never desired to see more of the country than its olives and its grapes. . . . But as soon as the days of the Greek republics were over, and men began to congregate for imperial purposes into Antioch, or Alexandria, or, lastly, into Rome, then we see the effect of noise, and dust, and smoke, and turmoil, breaking out into the natural longing for rural rest and retirement, so that from Alexander's day . . . we find all kinds of authors—epic poets, lyrists, novelists, and preachers—agreeing in the praise of nature, its rich colours, and its varied sounds.

[*Mahaffy's* "Rambles in Greece."]

ANALYSIS AND REPORTED SPEECH.

3. (i) Name the various clauses in the following sentences:—

(*a*) What everyone wanted to know was, why he behaved so ill that he was always in disgrace.

(*b*) This being so, when I have leisure, I will do as you desire.

(*c*) That he might win the esteem of those he served, he was always punctual.

(ii) Convert into a compound sentence:

To everyone's surprise, the project completely failed.

Into a simple sentence:

He gained no honours, and he lost no friend.

Into a complex sentence:

Do this, or you will be punished.

(iii) Turn the following passage into a Reported Speech:—

I know of no way of judging the future but by the past. And judging by the past, I wish to know what there has been in the conduct of the British ministry for the last ten years to justify those hopes with which gentlemen have been pleased to solace themselves in the House? Is it that insidious smile with which our petition has been lately received? Trust it not, Sir; it will prove a snare. Suffer not yourselves to be betrayed with a kiss. Are fleets and armies necessary to a work of love and reconciliation? Let us not deceive ourselves, Sir. These are the implements of war and subjugation, the last arguments to which kings resort.

DICTION.

4. Point out the characteristic differences between Prose and Poetic Diction.

ERRORS IN EXPRESSION.

5. Comment on any errors in the following sentences:—

(*a*) His chief among many responsible duties was to provide for the welfare of the staff.

(*b*) The index to the book is very imperfect. The editor has paid little attention to such matters as indices and dates.

(*c*) He resembles one of those animals that has been forced from its forest to gratify human curiosity.

(*d*) They hoped to procure the original document which had been mislaid, but which they have not been able to do.

(*e*) His sister was the best letter writer in the family, him only excepted.

(*f*) In a short time he succeeded in mastering the three first books of "Paradise Lost."

USES OF WORDS.

6. (i) Illustrate the various uses of:
Estate, depreciate, quarry, relation.

(ii) What prepositions should follow:
Averse, compatible, incident, amenable, patient.

(iii) Distinguish the meanings of:

Officious—official; fictitious—factitious; pathos—bathos; precipitate—precipitous.

CONSTRUCTION OF SENTENCES AND PUNCTUATION.

7. (i) Alter, where necessary, the order of the clauses or phrases in the following sentences so as to express the ideas more clearly, and indicate why the order is faulty:—

(*a*) Some years afterwards I had an editoral successor, who had all the wit for which I toiled in vain, without making any pretention to it.

(*b*) He erected a pavilion in the garden, around which he kept the air always cool by artificial showers.

(*c*) You will find the world, which you imagine smooth and quiet as the lake in the valley, a sea foaming with tempests and boiling with whirlpools.

(ii) Write three sentences to illustrate, in the specified order, the use of—

(*a*) A dash, a comma, a note of interrogation.

(*b*) A semi-colon, a parenthesis, and a note of exclamation.

(*c*) A colon, quotation marks, and a period.

PARAPHRASE.

8. Paraphrase *one* of the following passages, and write an account of the historical events to which reference is made:—

(*a*) Fairfax, whose name in arms through Europe rings,
Filling each mouth with envy or with praise,
And all her jealous monarchs with amaze,
And rumours loud, that daunt remotest kings,
Thy firm unskaken virtue ever brings
Victory home, though new rebellions raise
Their hydra-heads, and the false North displays
Her broken league to imp their serpent wings.
O yet a nobler task awaits thy hand,
(For what can war, but endless war still breed?)
Till truth and right from violence be freed,
And public faith cleared from the shameful brand
Of public fraud

(*b*) Wrap them together in a purple cloak,
And lay them both upon the waste sea-shore
At Hastings, there to guard the land for which
He did forswear himself—a warrior—ay,
And but that Holy Peter fought for us,
And that the false Northumbrian held aloof,
And save for that chance arrow which the Saints
Sharpened and sent against him—who can tell ?—
Three horses had I slain beneath me ; twice
I thought that all was lost. Since I knew battle,
And that was from my boyhood, never yet—
No, by the splendour of God—have I fought men
Like Harold and his brethren, and his guard
Of English.

LONDON UNIVERSITY MATRICULATION EXAMINATION PAPER IN ENGLISH, SEPT. 1905.

[*The Essay and the Précis are to be written by all candidates, and must have the first places in the Answer-book. Of the remaining questions only* FOUR *are to be attempted. Begin each answer on a fresh page.*]

ESSAY.

1. Choose *one* of the following subjects :—

   (i) The development of English industries and commerce.
   (ii) The Hundred Years' War.
   (iii) The Peasant Revolts in England.
   (iv) The mountain ranges and rivers of Scotland and Ireland.
   (v) The products, manufactures, and towns of Hindustan.
   (vi) The great lakes of Europe.

PRÉCIS.

2. (i) State under one heading or title the main purport—
   (*a*) Of the following extract ;
   (*b*) Of each paragraph of the extract.

   (ii) Write a Précis of the extract, giving the substance of it without any superfluous details.

In the case of the late Bribery Committee, it seemed to be the conclusion of the soundest practical minds that Bribery could not be put down ; that Pure Election was a thing we had seen the last of, and must now go on without, as we best could. A conclusion not a little startling ; to which it requires a practical mind of some seasoning to reconcile yourself at once ! It seems, then, we are henceforth to get ourselves constituted Legislators not according to what merit we may have, or even what merit we may seem to have, but according to the length of our purse, and our frankness, impudence, and dexterity in laying out the contents of the same. Our theory, written down in all books and law-books, spouted forth from all barrel-heads, is perfect purity of Tenpound Franchise, absolute sincerity of question put and answer given :—and our practice is irremediable bribery; irremediable, unpunishable, which you will do more harm than good by attempting to punish!

A Parliament, one would say, which proclaims itself elected and eligible by bribery, tells the Nation that is governed by it a singular piece of news. Bribery: have we reflected what bribery is? Bribery means not only length of purse, which is neither qualification nor the contrary for legislating well; but it means dishonesty, and even impudent dishonesty:—brazen insensibility to lying and to making others lie; total oblivion, and flinging overboard, for the nonce, of any real thing you can call veracity, morality; with dexterous putting-on the cast-clothes of that real thing, and strutting about in them! What Legislating can you get out of a man in that fatal situation? None that will profit much, one would think! A Legislator who has left his veracity lying on the door threshold, he, why verily *he*—ought to be sent out to seek it again!

SYNTAX.—CORRECTION OF ERRORS.

[*Not more than* NINE *questions in all to be attempted.*]

3. (*a*) Comment on the construction of the words in italics:—

(i) We hoped this for *both their* sakes.
(ii) He passed the examination, *which* pleased his friends.
(iii) On his return *home*, he recovered his health.
(iv) The game is not worth the *candle*.
(v) *Do* what he may, he will not succeed.
(vi) There was one point which they considered *it* important to answer.

(*b*) Point out and correct any errors of expression:—

(i) He disliked books and all those sort of things.
(ii) This happened in William's and Mary's reign.
(iii) Nobody in their senses could do such a thing.
(iv) He was of as great use, and even greater than his father.
(v) He was kind, but lacked either prudence or cleverness.
(vi) Some one or other, I don't know whom, struck the blow.

ANALYSIS AND REPORTED SPEECH.

4. (i) Specify the clauses of the following paragraph and the function of each:—

By this time, my Lord, I doubt not but that you wonder why I have run off from my bias so long together, and made so tedious a digression from satire to heroic poetry. But if you will not excuse it by the tattling quality of age, which, as Sir William Davenant says, is always narrative, yet I hope the usefulness of what I have to say on this subject will qualify the remoteness of it; and this is the last time I will commit the crime of prefaces, or trouble the world with my notions of anything that relates to verse.

(ii) Turn the preceding paragraph into Reported Speech.

USES OF WORDS. PASSAGES FOR COMMENT.

5. (*a*) Frame short sentences containing, respectively, one of the following words, and say exactly what meaning you attach to each :—

Category, implicit, retaliation, parody, paraphernalia.

(*b*) Comment on anything which you think noteworthy in these passages :—

(i) Whate'er our household gods protect of dear
Are gathered round us.

(ii) For words, like nature, half reveal
And half conceal the soul within.

(iii) New presbyter is but old priest writ large.

(iv) My song, its pinions disarrayed of might,
Drooped.

(v) High and majestic was his look,
At which the fellest fiends had shook.

STYLE. DICTION. PUNCTUATION.

6. (*a*) Criticise the style or the diction of the following extracts :—

(i) A truly interesting son of earth and son of heaven. A great shock of rough dusty-dark hair, bright, laughing, hazel eyes, massive aquiline face, most massive yet most delicate, of sallow brown complexion, almost Indian-looking; clothes cynically loose, free and easy; smokes infinite tobacco. One of the finest-looking men in the world.

("Carlyle on Tennyson.")

(ii) Shocks and the splintering spear, the hard mail hewn,
Shield-breakings, and the clash of brands, the crash
Of battle-axes on shatter'd helms.

(iii) And she bent o'er him, and he lay beneath
Hush'd as a babe upon its mother's breast,
Droop'd as the willow when no winds can breathe,
Lull'd like the depth of ocean when at rest,
Fair as the crowning rose of the whole wreath,
Soft as the callow cygnet in its nest :
In short, he was a very pretty fellow,
Although his woes had turn'd him rather yellow.

(*b*) Arrange in metre and punctuate this passage :—

> "My own Œnone beautiful-brow'd Œnone my own soul behold this fruit whose gleaming rind engraven for the most fair would seem to award it thine as lovelier than whatever Oread haunt the knolls of Ida loveliest in all grace of movement and the charm of married brows."

PHRASEOLOGY AND CONSTRUCTION OF SENTENCES.

7. (*a*) Write the following passage, substituting simpler words and phrases as far as possible :—

The power of speech in the direction of public affairs becomes more and more obvious, developed, and irresistible as we advance towards the culminating period of Grecian history—the century preceding the battle of Chæroneia. That its development was greatest among the most enlightened sections of the Grecian name, and smallest among the more obtuse and stationary, is matter of notorious fact ; and it is not less true, that the prevalence of this habit was one of the chief causes of the intellectual eminence of the nation generally.

(*b*) Express with greater clearness the main ideas in the following extract by changing (i) the sentence into a paragraph, and (ii) the phraseology as well as the order of the words, so far as is necessary :—

To this succeeded the licentiousness which entered with the Restoration, and, from infecting our religion and morals, fell to corrupt our language : which last was not like to be much improved by those who at that time made up the court of King Charles II. ; either such who had followed him in his banishment, or who had been altogether conversant in the dialect of those fanatic times ; or young men who had been educated in the same company : so that the court which used to be the standard of propriety and correctness of speech was then, and I think hath ever since continued, the worst school in England for that accomplishment.

PARAPHRASE.

8. Paraphrase *one* of the following passages, and write notes on the historical allusions in *both* of them :—

(*a*) Again their ravening eagle rose
In anger, wheel'd on Europe-shadowing wings,
And barking for the thrones of kings ;
Till one that sought but Duty's iron crown
On that loud Sabbath shook the spoiler down ;
A day of onsets of despair !
Dash'd on every rocky square
Their surging charges foam'd themselves away ;
Last, the Prussian trumpet blew ;
Thro' the long tormented air
Heaven flashed a sudden jubilant ray,
And down we swept and charged and overthrew.

(*b*) He was a scholar, and a ripe and good one;
Exceeding wise, fair-spoken, and persuading;
Lofty and sour to them that loved him not;
But to those men that sought him sweet as summer.
And though he were unsatisfied in getting—
Which was a sin—yet in bestowing, madam,
He was most princely. Ever witness for him
Those twins of learning that he rais'd in you,
Ipswich, and Oxford! one of which fell with him,
Unwilling to outlive the good that did it;
The other, though unfinished, yet so famous,
So excellent in art, and still so rising,
That Christendom shall ever speak his virtue.

LONDON UNIVERSITY MATRICULATION EXAMINATION PAPER IN ENGLISH, JANUARY, 1900.

[*The Essay and the Précis are to be written by all candidates, and must have the first places in the Answer-book. Of the remaining questions only* FOUR *are to be attempted. Begin each answer on a fresh page.*]

ESSAY.

1. (i) The Peninsula of Scandinavia, its physical features, population, and recent political history.
   (ii) The distribution of races, their characteristics and achievements.
   (iii) Imperial expansion during the Victorian era.
   (iv) Some effects upon England of the Dissolution of the Religious Houses.
   (v) The period of Henry VII.—its importance in our national history.
   (vi) Magna Charta—its origin and its effects.

PRÉCIS.

2. (i) State (*a*) the main purport of the following passage under one title or heading; and (*b*) the purport of each paragraph in the same way.
   (ii) Write a Précis of the passage, giving its substance, without anything superfluous.

Many an empire has come and gone, and left behind it a less interesting history than that of the little republic of Florence. It appeals to two classes of students. . . . The annals of a State which produced a Dante and a Petrarch, an Arnolfo and a Giotto, a Cosimo and a

Lorenzo de' Medici, a Boccaccio and a Machiavelli, a Donatello and a Michaelangelo, must needs be fascinating; and those of one which experimented in every form of government, from an absolute despotism to an undiluted ochlocracy, must needs be deserving of study.

And yet the story of Florence, in spite of her brilliant artistic and literary triumphs, is a sad one. It is the story of intellectual success and of moral failure; of noble ideals unrealised; and of an unceasing struggle for freedom without the qualities essential for its existence. There was a grasping egoism about the Florentine character which was ineradicable. Each citizen desired ascendancy over his neighbours in some form or other; if not for himself individually, then for the family, the clique, or the class to which he belonged. Hence the rivalries, feuds, factions, and conspiracies which wrecked successive governments.

The struggle between Individualism and Collectivism, common to almost every nation at some period or other of its history, was in Florence never ending. . . . There Individualism struggled so fiercely and so long for expression that it at length made Collectivism impossible. It is the gradual extinction of public spirit, the slow deterioration of national character, the sapping of an energy which was once felt all over the civilised world, under the continuous pressure of "Pride, Hate, Greed, and Ambition," that tinges with melancholy the later pages of Florentine history.

ANALYSIS; SYNTHESIS.

3. (*a*) Analyse, by clauses merely, the following passage:—

> Sir King, I closed mine eyelids, lest the gems
> Should blind my purpose, for I never saw,
> Nor shall see, here or elsewhere, till I die,
> Not tho' I live three lives of mortal men,
> So great a miracle as yonder hilt.
> Then with both hands I flung him, wheeling him;
> But when I look'd again, behold an arm,
> Clothed in white samite, mystic, wonderful,
> That caught him by the hilt, and brandish'd him
> Three times, and drew him under in the mere.

(*b*) Combine into *two* sentences only the following group of sentences, omitting all superfluous expressions, and substituting simpler words where necessary:—

His reign had had a duration of nearly four decades. At last, at their conclusion, it chanced accidentally that on one day he called all his people collectively together. He convened them in the Field of Mars. The Field of Mars is in close proximity to the Goat's Pool. Thereupon, there arose all on a sudden a storm. It was a dreadful storm. All was dark—as dark as night. So terrible was the rain, so terrible the thunder, so terrible the lightning, that the whole mass of the people took their flight from the field. They each ran away to their several homes. At last the storm was over. They came back. They returned to the Field of Mars. Romulus was not there. He was nowhere to be found.

Mars, his father, had carried him up to heaven. He had taken him away with him in his chariot.

PARAPHRASE; HISTORICAL AND GEOGRAPHICAL ALLUSIONS.

4. (*a*) Paraphrase:—

> Ah, Leicester, weigh how hardly I can brook
> To lose my crown and kingdom without cause;
> To give ambitious Mortimer my right,
> That like a mountain overwhelms my bliss,
> In which extreme my mind here murdered is.
> But that the Heavens appoint, I must obey.
> Here, take my crown; the life of Edward too;
> Two kings in England cannot reign at once—
> But stay awhile, let me be king till night,
> That I may gaze upon this glittering crown;
> So shall my eyes receive their last content,
> My head the latest honour due to it,
> And jointly both yield up their wished right.

(*b*) State what you know of the event referred to.

(*c*) Write a brief account of the country mentioned in 6 (*b*).

[N.B.—*Only* TWO *of the following questions should be attempted.*]

SYNTAX; CORRECTION OF SENTENCES.

5. (*a*) Give examples of the constructions with *as*, *but*, *like*, and *than*. State the rules that apply to each.

(*b*) Correct or justify the following sentences:—

(i) He need have no fear about his future prospects, though he needs both time and money to complete his inventions.

(ii) Fortunately I had given away a couple of my last books, one of which was returned to me, or I should not have a copy left.

(iii) There is no hope that ever I will stay,
If the first hour I shrink and run away.

(iv) Whose wraths to guard you from,
Which here in this most desolate isle else falls
Upon your heads, is nothing but heart-sorrow.

POETIC DICTION; METRE.

6. Point out in detail the similarities and differences in the following verses:—

(*a*) When you've shouted "Rule Britannia"—when you've sung
"God Save the Queen"—
When you've finished killing Kruger with your mouth—
Will you kindly drop a shilling in my little tambourine
For a gentleman in *kharki* ordered South?
(RUDYARD KIPLING.)

(*b*) When *Rule Britannia* rings through hut and hall,
And men have sung *God Save the Queen* withal;
When has been whet the keen invective's sword
Against Meridian Afric's tyrant lord;
Spare not your largess for his kin who plies
The legionary's task in tan-hued guise.
(OWEN SEAMAN.)

PUNCTUATION AND SYNONYMS.

7. (*a*) Punctuate the following passage:—

That moribund and discredited body might have been allowed to expire quietly on the appointed day or as his Lordship put it to wrap its robe round it and die with dignity if it had not resolved to flout its successor to insult Parliament to outrage public opinion and to defy the executive government the good works that it did in the days of its ingenuous youth will be forgotten amid the misdeeds of its unhonoured age and the disgrace of its sudden and ignominious extinction.

(*b*) Classify in groups the nearly synonymous terms in the above passage, and state the difference in their meanings. The terms in the same group may be of various parts of speech.

USE OF WORDS; SENSE OF PHRASES.

8. (*a*) Write short sentences, containing, respectively, *one* of the following words, and explain precisely the meaning you attach to each:—ascetic, cyclopædic, asperse, reactionary, opportunist.

(*b*) Explain the meaning of:—

(i) He was a very thunderbolt of war.
(ii) The boast of heraldry, the pomp of power.
(iii) What Exile from himself can flee?
(iv) He through sin's long labyrinths had run.
(v) With that wild harp, whose magic tone
Is wakened by the winds alone.
(vi) Not unseen
Before the spirit-sighted countenance
Of Milton didst thou pass.

LONDON UNIVERSITY MATRICULATION EXAMINATION PAPER IN ENGLISH, JUNE, 1906.

[*The Essay and the Précis are to be written by all candidates, and must have the first places in the Answer-book. Of the remaining questions only* FOUR *are to be attempted. Begin each answer on a fresh page.*]

ESSAY.

1. Choose *one* of the following subjects:—

(i) The Danish invasions of England.

(ii) The political institutions of the Saxons and the Normans.

(iii) The relations between England and Scotland in the 13th Century.

(iv) The Cotton and Woollen Manufactures in the United Kingdom.

(v) The Mountains and Rivers in the West of Europe.

(vi) The chief Exports and Imports of Canada and Australia.

PRÉCIS.

2. (i) State (*a*) the main purport of the following passage under one title or heading; and (*b*) the purport of each paragraph in the same way.

(ii) Write a Précis of the passage, giving its substance, without anything superfluous.

The Company had, in childish reliance on the word of an enthusiastic projector, and in defiance of facts known to every educated man in Europe, taken it for granted that emigrants born and bred within ten degrees of the Arctic circle would enjoy excellent health within ten degrees of the Equator. Nay, statesmen and scholars had been deluded into the belief that a country which, as they might have read in books so common as those of Hakluyt and Purchas, was noted even among tropical countries for its insalubrity, was a Montpelier. Nor had any of Paterson's dupes considered how colonists from Fife or Lothian, who had never in their lives known what it was to feel the heat of a distressing mid-summer day, could endure the labour of breaking clods and carrying burdens under the fierce blaze of a vertical sun.

The provisions which the Scotch had brought out had been of no good quality, and had not been improved by lapse of time, or by change of climate. The yams and plantains did not suit stomachs accustomed to good oatmeal, and supplies were not to be expected from any foreign settlement. During the cool months, however, which immediately followed the occupation of the isthmus, there were few deaths, but before the equinox, disease began to make fearful havoc. The cry of the whole community was that death was all around them, and that they must, while they still had strength to weigh an anchor or spread a sail, fly to some less fatal region. The men and provisions were equally distributed among three ships, the Caledonia, the Unicorn, and the St. Andrew, and the vessels stood out to sea.

The voyage was horrible. Scarcely any Guinea slave ship has ever had such a middle passage. Of two hundred and fifty persons who were on board of the St. Andrew, one hundred and fifty fed the sharks of the Atlantic before Sandy Hook was in sight. The Unicorn lost almost all its officers, and about a hundred and forty men. The Caledonia, the healthiest ship of the three, threw overboard a hundred corpses. The squalid survivors, as if they were not sufficiently miserable, raged fiercely against one another. Paterson was cruelly reviled, and was unable to defend himself. He had been completely prostrated by bodily and mental suffering. His inventive facilities and his plausible eloquence were no more, and he seemed to have sunk into second childhood.

ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

3. (*a*) Analyse into clauses only:—

> To hear the restless multitudes for ever
> Around the base of that great Altar flow,
> As on some mountain islet burst and shiver
> Atlantic waves; and solemnly and slow
> As the wind bore that tumult to and fro,
> To feel the dreamlike music, which did swim
> Like beams through floating clouds on waves below
> Falling in pauses, from that Altar dim
> As silver-sounding tongues breathed an aërial hymn.

(*b*) Write an account of the Crusades comprising the following events in chronological order, or nearly so:—

Richard liberated by the Emperor. Sale of town charters and fortresses. The preaching of St. Bernard. The siege and capture of Acre. Conrad, King of the Romans, and Louis VII. Quarrel between Richard and Philip Augustus. The Holy War and Peter the Hermit. Richard's Captivity. Godfrey elected King of Jerusalem. The siege of Damascus. Frederick Barbarossa I. of Germany. Capture of Jerusalem by the Seljuk Turks.

PARAPHRASE; HISTORICAL AND GEOGRAPHICAL ALLUSIONS.

4. (*a*) Paraphrase the following passage:—

Your words shall be my deeds :
You speak the image of my thought. My friend,
(If kings can have a friend, I call thee so,)
Beyond the large commission which belongs
Under the great seal of the realm, take this :
And, for some obvious reasons, let there be
No seal on it, except my kingly word
And honour as I am a gentleman.
Be—as thou art within my heart and mind—
Another self, here and in Ireland ;
Do what thou judgest well, take amplest licence,
And stick not even at questionable means.
Hear me, Wentworth. My word is as a wall
Between thee and this world thine enemy—
That hates thee, for thou lovest me.

(*b*) State what you know of the event referred to.

(*c*) Describe briefly the country mentioned in the passage.

[N.B.—*Only* TWO *of the following questions should be attempted.*]

SYNTAX. AMBIGUOUS EXPRESSIONS.

5. (*a*) Examine the syntax of these sentences :—

(i) Running up against my friend in the Park, he told me the latest news.

(ii) He declared that this being so, and the days of grace having expired, that it was useless to prosecute the matter further.

(iii) While digging the foundations for a new house, a piece of the Roman wall was discovered.

(iv) There was nothing in the speech very notable, and which called for comment.

(*b*) Point out and correct the ambiguity of the following :—

(i) He had a certain claim to the estate.

(ii) The last thing he thought about at night was the way in which he had misspent the day.

(iii) Between each of the houses there ran a strip of garden.

(iv) The son the father slew.

(v) He was not less desirous of gaining that prize than the others.

PASSAGES FOR COMMENT.

6. Give, with comments, the sense of the following passages :—

(i) Where the bleak Swiss their stormy mansion tread,
And force a churlish soil for scanty bread.

(ii) When the yellow woods shake down the ripen'd mast
(iii) Stillness accompanied with sounds so soft
Charms more than silence. Meditation here
May think down hours to moments.
(iv) Dark though be it, hovering o'er us,
Love shall spread his sun-lit wing.
(v) The meteor-flag of England
Shall yet more glorious burn.
(vi) But look, the morn in russet mantle clad
Walks o'er the dew of yon high eastern hill.
(vii) The wroth sea's waves are edged
With foam, white as the bitter lip of hate.

USES OF WORDS.

7. Write sentences illustrating :—

(*a*) The prepositions used after—

Coincident, different, indifferent, preoccupied, derogatory.

(*b*) The various meanings of the prepositions—

After, from, under, through, with.

(*c*) The distinction between—

Nebulous and nebular, corporal and corporate, illusion and hallucination, imaginary and imaginative, luxurious and luxuriant.

DICTION: CORRECTION OF SENTENCES.

8. (*a*) Substitute simpler words and phrases for the following :—

Terminological inexactitude, solar effulgence, a multitudinous assemblage, an inebriated individual, a professor of the tonsorial art.

(*b*) Correct, if necessary, and give reasons for your corrections :—

(i) His hair was parted down the centre.
(ii) The procession passed up the centre aisle.
(iii) So much for what occurred up to this point; the future proceedings were soon disposed of.
(iv) It was quite easy to unravel the obscurities of the speech.
(v) There were present no less than a hundred persons, and quite a quantity of them were foreigners.

(*c*) Say what you consider to be the peculiar merits of any *three* of the following passages :—

(i) God-gifted organ-voice of England,
Milton, a name to resound for ages.
(ii) Myriads of rivulets hurrying thro' the lawn.
(iii) To where beyond these voices there is peace.
(iv) I chatter over stony ways,
In little sharps and trebles,
I bubble into eddying bays,
I babble on the pebbles.

LONDON UNIVERSITY MATRICULATION EXAMINATION PAPER IN ENGLISH, SEPT., 1906.

[*The Essay and the Précis are to be written by all candidates, and must have the first places in the Answer-book. Of the remaining questions ony* FOUR *are to be attempted. Begin each answer on a fresh page.*]

ESSAY.

1. Choose *one* of the following subjects:—
   (i) The struggle for supremacy among the Saxon Kingdoms.
   (ii) The legislative reforms of Henry II. and Edward I.
   (iii) Pretenders to the English Crown.
   (iv) The manufactures and commerce of Germany.
   (v) The physical features and products of North Africa.
   (vi) The political aspects of the South American states.

PRÉCIS.

2. (i) State (*a*) the main purport of the following passage under one title or heading; and (*b*) the purport of each paragraph in the same way.
   (ii) Write a Précis of the passage, giving its substance without anything superfluous.

One hardly knows whether to term it a privilege or a penalty annexed to the quality of princes that, in their intercourse with each other, they are required, by the respect which is due to their own rank and dignity, to regulate their feelings and expressions by a severe etiquette, which precludes all violent and avowed display of passion, and which, but that the whole world are aware that this assumed complaisance is a matter of ceremony, might justly pass for profound dissimulation. It is certain, however, that the overstepping of these bounds of ceremonial, for the purpose of giving more direct vent to their angry passions, has the effect of compromising their dignity with the world in general, and was particularly noted when those distinguished rivals, Francis the First and the

Emperor Charles, gave each other the lie direct, and were desirous of deciding their differences hand to hand, in single combat.

Charles of Burgundy, the most hasty and impatient, nay, the most imprudent prince of his time, found himself, nevertheless, fettered within the magic circle which prescribed the most profound deference to Louis, as his suzerain and liege lord, who had deigned to confer upon him, a vassal of the crown, the distinguished honour of a personal visit. Dressed in his ducal mantle, and attended by his great officers and principal knights and nobles, he went in gallant cavalcade to receive Louis XI. His retinue absolutely blazed with gold and silver, for the wealth of the court of England being exhausted by the wars of York and Lancaster, and the expenditure of France limited by the economy of the sovereign, that of Burgundy was for the time the most magnificent in Europe. The cortège of Louis, on the contrary, was few in number, and comparatively mean in appearance, and the exterior of the King himself, in a threadbare cloak, with his wonted old high-crowned hat stuck full of images, rendered the contrast yet more striking; and as the Duke, richly attired with the coronet and mantle of state, threw himself from his noble charger, and, kneeling on one knee, offered to hold the stirrup while Louis dismounted from his little ambling palfrey, the effect was almost grotesque.

The greeting between the two potentates was, of course, as full of affected kindness and compliment as it was totally devoid of sincerity. But the temper of the Duke rendered it much more difficult for him to preserve the necessary appearances in voice, speech, and demeanour; while in the King every species of simulation and dissimulation seemed so much a part of his nature, that those best acquainted with him could not have distinguished what was feigned from what was real.

ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

3. (*a*) Classify the Adjectival and Adverbial Clauses in the following passage, and state what words they qualify or modify.

> Rightly to be great
> Is not to stir without great argument,
> But greatly to find quarrel in a straw
> When honour's at the stake. How stand I then,
> That have a father killed, a mother stained,
> Excitements of my reason and my blood,
> And let all sleep; while to my shame I see
> The imminent death of twenty thousand men,
> That, for a fantasy and trick of fame,
> Go to their graves like beds, fight for a plot
> Whereon the numbers cannot try the cause
> Which is not tomb enough and continent
> To hide the slain?

(*b*) Construct a Complex Sentence followed by a Compound Sentence out of these expressions;—

And their natural disposition to the marvellous was greatly increased. To which he exposed himself in endeavouring to save her from the blazing castle. The men gave these details with the exaggerations common to vulgar minds. By the satisfaction which their evidence seemed to afford. And his neglect of his personal defence in attending to her safety. Several witnesses were called upon to prove the risks. To the eminent person for whose information it had been delivered. Which have been strongly excited by any remarkable event.

PARAPHRASE; HISTORICAL ALLUSIONS.

4. (*a*) Write a prose version of:—

> If ever from an English heart,
> O *here* let prejudice depart,
> And, partial feeling cast aside,
> Record that Fox a Briton died!
> When Europe crouched to France's yoke,
> And Austria bent, and Prussia broke,
> And the firm Russian's purpose brave
> Was bartered by a timorous slave,
> Even then dishonour's peace he spurned,
> The sullied olive-branch returned,
> Stood for his country's glory fast,
> And nailed her colours to the mast.
> Heaven, to reward his firmness, gave
> A portion in this honoured grave;
> And ne'er held marble in its trust
> Of two such wondrous men the dust.

(*b*) State what you know of the person and events referred to.

[N.B.—*Only* TWO *of the following questions are to be attempted.*]

USES OF WORDS.

5. (*a*) Illustrate by sentences the various uses of the words *point*, *post*, *part*.

(*b*) Write sentences showing the use of each of the following words:—*reflex*, *cognisant*, *presentiment*, *venial*, *mendicity*, *instinctive*, *relevant*, *secular*.

PROSODY.

6. (*a*) Re-arrange the words in the following passage so that they may form metrical lines in octosyllabic rhymed couplets.

He passed by many a mountain stream cast from the tall cliffs in tumult, dashing their dun waters to foam, and sparkling in the summer sun. The wild curlew flew round his grey head in many a fearless circle. Journeying thence slowly onward still, he reached the hill as evening closed.

(*b*) Name the four metrical feet that are chiefly used in English poetry, and quote, or make up, four lines of verse, each line consisting wholly of one of these four kinds.

CORRECTION OF SENTENCES; SYNONYMS.

7. (*a*) Point out the faults in the following sentences, and rewrite the passages in correct form :—

(i) Personally, I made a great point of preparing my own pupils myself, and I do not think that a housemaster ought to give this up, except for very cogent reasons.

(ii) Generally, when one knows the tree is a large tree, yet on coming close up to the trunk it looks twice as large as it did before.

(iii) And Scotland's poet lay there dying, with an incubus of debt gnawing at his vitals.

(iv) The thought of all the gleanings and pickings that will fall to my share, and of the long hours of leisure that I can spend as I like, with no one to question or find fault with me for my ways, make me look forward to my new situation.

(v) He proved that he had read it, because he showed a knowledge of facts that could only be gained by having done so.

(*b*) Name two words that are nearly synonymous with each of the following:—*defame*, *specimen*, *proclivity*, *obvious*, *corroborate;* and illustrate by sentences any difference of usage in the words of each group.

DICTION.

8. Rewrite the following passage, substituting the nearest English equivalents for the French expressions :—

The operatic performances have been resumed after the unfortunate *contretemps* that interrupted them. Having been made *au fait* with the whole affair, I can give you a *résumé* of what occurred. In consequence of the wound to the *amour propre* of one of the *artistes*, the company, showing an admirable *esprit de corps*, resigned *en masse*, but the *amende honorable* having been made, the difficulty was at an end, and the present cast shows few changes of *personnel.* The opera produced last night was not wanting in *jeux d'esprit*, but it will certainly not prove the *chef-d'œuvre* of the composer who has adopted the *nom de plume* of Arion. No fault can be found with the acting, but the new prima donna, though having the *cachet* of the Leipsic Conservatorium, and the *prestige* that belongs to a *protégée* of the Emperor, failed to sing with any *éclat.*

LONDON UNIVERSITY MATRICULATION EXAMINATION PAPER IN ENGLISH, JANUARY, 1907.

[*The Essay and the Précis are to be written by all candidates, and must have the first places in the Answer-book. Of the remaining questions only* FOUR *are to be attempted. Begin each answer on fresh page.*]

ESSAY.

Choose *one* of the following subjects:—

1. (i) Recent colonisation by foreign powers.
   (ii) The historical interest of the Mediterranean Sea.
   (iii) The conflict and blending of races in the British Isles.
   (iv) The state of religion in England in the fourteenth century.
   (v) The products and commerce of Scotland.
   (vi) The causes of differences in climate within the United Kingdom.

PRÉCIS.

2. (i) State (*a*) the main purport of the following passage under one title or heading; and (*b*) the purport of each paragraph in the same way.

(ii) Write a Précis of the passage, giving its substance, without anything superfluous.

The obvious definition of a monarchy seems to be that of a State in which a single person is entrusted with the execution of the laws, the management of the revenue, and the command of the army. But, unless public liberty is protected by intrepid and vigilant guardians, the authority of so formidable a magistrate will soon degenerate into despotism. A martial nobility and stubborn commons, possessed of arms, tenacious of property, and collected into constitutional assemblies, form the only balance capable of preserving a free constitution against the enterprises of an aspiring prince.

Every barrier of the Roman constitution had been levelled by the vast ambition of the dictator; every fence had been extirpated by the cruel hand of the triumvir. After the victory of Actium, the fate of the Roman world depended on the will of Octavianus, surnamed Cæsar, by his uncle's adoption, and afterwards Augustus, by the flattery of the senate. The conqueror was at the head of forty-four veteran legions, conscious of their own strength and of the weakness of the constitution; habituated, during twenty years' civil war, to every act of blood and violence, and passionately devoted to the house of Cæsar, from whence alone they had received, and expected, the most lavish rewards. The provinces, long oppressed by the ministers of the republic, sighed for the government of a single person, who would be the master, not the accomplice, of those petty tyrants. The people of Rome, viewing with a secret pleasure the humiliation of the aristocracy, demanded only bread and public shows, and were supplied with both by the liberal hand of Augustus. The rich and polite Italians enjoyed the present blessings of ease and tranquility, and suffered not the pleasing dream to be interrupted by the memory of their old tumultuous freedom. With its power, the senate had lost its dignity; many of the most noble families were extinct. The republicans of spirit and ability had perished in the field of battle, or in the proscription. The door of the assembly had been designedly left open for a mixed multitude of more than a thousand persons, who reflected disgrace upon their rank instead of deriving honour from it.

The reformation of the senate was one of the first steps in which Augustus laid aside the tryant, and professed himself the father of his country. He was elected censor, and in concert with his faithful Agrippa, he examined the list of the senators, expelled a few members, whose vices or whose obstinacy required a public example, persuaded near two hundred to prevent the shame of an expulsion by a voluntary retreat, created a sufficient number of patrician families, and accepted for himself the honourable title of prince of the senate. But while he thus restored the dignity, he destroyed the independence of the senate. The principles of a free constitution are irrevocably lost when the legislative power is nominated by the executive.

ANALYSIS AND SYNTHESIS.

3. (*a*) Analyse the following passage into clauses, stating the relation of the clauses to each other :—

> Then, Turfe or Scurfe, high or low constable,
> Know, I was once a captain at St. Quintin's,
> And passing cross the ways over the country,
> This morning, betwixt this and Hamstead-heath,
> Was by a crew of clowns robb'd, bobb'd and hurt.
> No sooner had I got my wounds bound up,
> But with much pain I went to the next justice,
> One master Bramble, here at Maribone:
> And here a warrant is, which he hath directed
> For you, one Turfe, if your name be Toby Turfe,
> Who have let fall, they say, the hue and cry;
> And you shall answer it afore the justice.

(*b*) Write an account of the following incident in three sentences, introducing all the facts supplied, and avoiding the use of the word *and* :—

William the Silent was going to the dining-room. He was dressed very plainly. This was according to his usual custom. Gérard presented himself at the doorway. He demanded a passport. The Princess was struck with the man's agitated countenance. She was anxious. She questioned her husband concerning him. Orange was not at all impressed with the appearance of Gérard. He conducted himself at table with cheerfulness. He was usually cheerful. He conversed with the burgomaster. The burgomaster was the only guest present. They talked about the political aspects of Friedland. The company rose from table. It was two o'clock. The Prince led the way. He intended to pass to his private apartments. These were above. The Prince reached the second step of the stair. There was a sunken arch. It was deep in the wall. It was in the shadow of the door. A man emerged from it. It was Gérard. He stood within a foot or two of the Prince. He pointed a pistol at his heart. He discharged it. Three balls entered his body. One passed quite through him. It struck the wall beyond.

PARAPHRASE; HISTORICAL ALLUSIONS.

4. (*a*) Write a prose version of:—

There is delight in singing, tho' none hear
Beside the singer; and there is delight
In praising, tho' the praiser sit alone
And see the praised far off him, far above.
Shakspeare is not our poet, but the world's,
Therefore on him no speech! and brief for thee,
Browning! Since Chaucer was alive and hale,
No man hath walked along our roads with step
So active, so inquiring eye, or tongue
So varied in discourse. But warmer climes
Give brighter plumage, stronger wing; the breeze
Of Alpine heights thou playest with, borne on
Beyond Sorrento and Amalfi, where
The Siren waits thee, singing song for song.

(*b*) Explain the allusions.

[N.B.—*Only* TWO *of the following questions are to be attempted.*]

USES OF WORDS.

5. (*a*) Illustrate by sentences the various uses of the words *head; form.*

(*b*) Show what differences have arisen in the following pairs of words of the same derivation, giving three illustrative sentences in each case, the first to be such that either of the words could be used, and the others such that only one or the other would be appropriate:—*compute*, *count; example*, *sample; fragile*, *frail; secure*, *sure; separate*, *sever.*

PROSODY.

6. (*a*) The following passage is a dialogue in blank verse between Valence and the Duchess. Rewrite it in metrical

form with the proper punctuation, assigning the words to the proper characters.

First has she seen you yes she loves you then one flash of hope burst then succeeded night and all's at darkest now impossible we'll try you are so to speak my subject yet as ever to the death obey me then I must approach her and no first of all get more assurance.

(*b*) Give an account of the metre of the following lines:—

(i) Thro' the shadow of the globe we sweep into the younger day;
Better fifty years of Europe than a cycle of Cathay.

(ii) But now they are moaning on ilka green loaning.
The Flowers of the Forest are a' wede away.

(iii) Near the face of dawn that draws athwart the darkness.
Threading it with colour, like yewberries the yew.

CORRECTION OF SENTENCES.

7. (*a*) Point out the faults in any *six* of the following sentences, and rewrite the passages in correct form:—

(i) Have you any objection to Murray and I going to town to-day?

(ii) Unlike Marlborough, duty, not glory, was the mainspring of his actions.

(iii) The two men were not interested in the same things, and the chief work which each of them had to do was of a very different kind.

(iv) He mistrusted my youth, my commonsense, and my seamanship, and made a point of showing it in a hundred little ways.

(v) Surely nothing very profound in this remark, but received as though it were Solomon's.

(vi) A treaty was drawn up and faithfully carried out between the three, that she was to do her own room if necessary to her happiness.

(vii) He signed a paper which said he would become a Roman Catholic, but this he destroyed, and held the hand that had signed it in the flames until it was burned, without uttering a cry of pain.

(viii) It is only a week since I was there, and nothing could then have been further from my thoughts that this little house would be wrecked by the bombs of assassins.

(ix) Always on the outlook for an opening to get on, it had become an instinct with him to watch the conduct of his immediate superiors for something "that one could lay hold of."

STYLE AND DICTION.

8. Point out the peculiarities of expression in the following passage, and rewrite it in a more natural style:—

> Speech is silver: silence is golden. No utterance more Orphic than this. While, therefore, as highest author, we reverence him whose works continue heroically unwritten, we have also our hopeful word for those who with pen (from wing of goose loud-cackling, or seraph God-commissioned) record the thing that is revealed. . . . Under mask of quaintest irony, we detect here the deep, storm-tost (nigh shipwrecked) soul, thunder-scarred, semi-articulate, but ever climbing hopefully toward the peaceful summits of an Infinite Sorrow. . . . Yes, thou poor forlorn Hosea, with Hebrew fire-flaming soul in thee, for thee also this life of ours has not been without its aspects of heavenliest pity and laughingest mirth. Conceivable enough! Through coarse Thersites cloak, we have revelation of the heart, wild-glowing, world-clasping, that is in him.

EXAMINATION EXERCISES.

A classification of the questions from the London University Matriculation Papers given in the Appendix.

Note (1) that the figures in the second column refer to the numbers assigned to the questions in the papers.

(2) That the questions are grouped so that reference can be made to the chapters concerned.

Criticism and Correction of Sentences; Style, Diction, Reported Speech. See Ch. I.—III.

1.	1 (Sec. A)	Sept., 1902.
2.	2 „	„
3.	2	June, 1903.
4.	5	„
5.	2 (a)	Sept., 1903.
6.	4	„
7.	2 (b)	Jan., 1904.
8.	3 (b), (c)	„
9.	4	June, 1904.
10.	7	„
11.	8	„
12.	5 (b)	Sept., 1904.
13.	6	„
14.	8	„
15.	3	Jan., 1905.
16.	4 (ii)	„
17.	3 (iii)	June, 1905.
18.	4	„
19.	5	„
20.	7 (i)	„
21.	3	Sept., 1905.
22.	4 (ii)	„
23.	5	Jan., 1906.
24.	5	June, 1906.
25.	7 (a)	Sept., 1906.
26.	7	Jan., 1907.

Idioms, Meaning of Words, &c. Figures of Speech. See Ch. IV.

1.	3 (Sec. A)	Sept., 1902.
2.	4 ,,	,,
3.	3	June, 1903.
4.	3	Sept., 1903.
5.	4	Jan., 1904.
6.	5 (a)	Jan., 1905.
7.	6	,,
8.	6	June, 1905.
9.	7	June, 1906.
10.	7 (b)	Sept., 1906.
11.	8	,,
12.	5	Jan., 1907.

Punctuation. See Ch. V.

1.	1	June, 1903.
2.	3 (a)	Jan., 1904.
3.	5 (b)	Jan., 1905.
4.	7 (ii)	June, 1905.
5.	7 (a)	Jan., 1906.

Paraphrasing. See Ch. IX.

1.	4 (Sec. B)	Sept., 1902.
2.	6	June, 1903.
3.	5	Sept., 1903.
4.	5 (b)	Jan., 1904.
5.	6	,,
6.	6	June, 1904.
7.	7	Sept., 1904.
8.	8	Jan., 1905.
9.	8	June, 1905.
10.	8	Sept., 1905.
11.	4	Jan., 1906.
12.	4	June, 1906.
13.	6	,,
14.	4	Sept., 1906.
15.	4	Jan., 1907.

Note: Most of the above contain several passages for paraphrasing.

PRÉCIS. SEE CH. X.

1.	6	Sept., 1903.
2.	7	,,
3.	7	Jan., 1904.
4.	8	,,
5.	2	June, 1904.
6.	2	Sept., 1904.
7.	2	Jan., 1905.
8.	2	June, 1905.
9.	2	Sept., 1905.
10.	2	Jan., 1906.
11.	2	June, 1906.
12.	2	Sept., 1906.
13.	2	Jan., 1907.

ANALYSIS. SEE NOTE IN § 93.

1.	1 (Sec. B)	Sept., 1902.
2.	2 ,,	,,
3.	4 (ii)	June, 1903.
4.	1	Sept., 1903.
5.	2 (a)	Jan., 1904.
6.	3 (a)	June, 1904.
7.	5 (a)	Sept., 1904.
8.	4 (i)	Jan., 1905.
9.	3 (i), (ii)	June, 1905.
10.	4 (i)	Sept., 1905.
11.	3 (a)	Jan., 19 6.
12.	3 (a)	June, 1906.
13.	3	Sept., 1906.
14.	3	Jan., 1907.

Note: Several ESSAY TITLES will also be found in each of these examination papers.

LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY
OF
CALIFORNIA

INDEX.

PAGE
Adjectives and Adverbs (grammatical errors) ... 24
Allegory 35
Americanisms 18
Analysis (of Sentences), hints for 219
—— model solutions ... 221
—— extracts for 223
—— of an Essay 89
—— of a Novel 89
Anti-climax 36
Antithesis 35
Apostrophe (figure of speech) 36
—— (punctuation mark) ... 56
Archaisms 17
Authors, Standard, the reading of... 79
Auxiliaries of Style ... 35
—— hints and cautions as to use of 45

Bad Spelling, how to correct 49
Bathos 36
Biography, the study of ... 76
Books, Reference... ... 108
Book, Quotation 87
Brackets 55
Brevity 14

Capitalisation 56
Cautions and hints as to use of Auxiliaries of Style ... 45
Cedilla 56
Clearness (Style) 13
Climax 36
Coherence and Continuity (Style) 15
Colloquialisms 17

PAGE
Colon 54
Comma 52
Commas, inverted ... 54
Crispness of Style ... 15

Dash 55
Double dash 55
Descriptive Writing ... 80
Diction 9
Diæresis 56

Economics, the study of ... 77-8
English, London University Special Certificate in ... 217
—— London University Matriculation, Regulations in 217
Emphasis 40
Epigram 36
Errors, grammatical ... 20
Errors in taste 17
Essay, analysis of an ... 89
Essays, Model 125
—— Outline 118
—— Outline, brief notes for 118
Essay, practical hints for writing an 110
—— Titles for practice 113, 225
Essay writer's knowledge, range of the 76
Essentials of a good style ... 13
Euphemism 37
Examination Papers (London Matriculation), English ... 227
Exclamation mark ... 55
Exercises—Grammar and Style 29
—— Punctuation... ... 57
—— Paraphrasing ... 136
—— Précis Writing ... 166

PAGE
Exercises, Examination ... 292
Expressions, foreign and pedantic 18
—— hackneyed 18

Faculty of observation, exercise of the 79
Figures of Speech ... 35
Foreign and pedantic expressions 18
Full stop 52

Geography, the study of ... 77
Grammatical errors and defects to be avoided ... 20

Hackneyed expressions ... 18
Hints, practical for writing an essay 111
Hints for Paraphrasing ... 134
—— Précis Writing ... 155
History, the study of ... 76
How to read 86
Hyperbole 37
Hyphen... 56

Idioms 43
—— exercise on 44
Imagination, cultivation of the 81
Indirect, or Reported, Speech 26
Information, methods of acquiring 76
Interrogation (figure of speech) 37
—— note of 55
Inverted Commas ... 54
Irony 37

Knowledge, essay writer's, range of the 76
—— Miscellaneous ... 78

Litotes 37

Manner and Matter ... 12
Matriculation, London University, regulations in English 217
—— hints for preparation (English) 218

PAGE
Meaning of words, primary and secondary 40
Metaphor 39
Methods of acquiring information 76
Metonymy 39
Miscellaneous knowledge ... 78
Model Essays 125
—— Solutions (Paraphrasing) 150
—— —— (Précis Writing)... 165

Natural Science, the study of 77
Notes on Exercises—Paraphrasing 152
—— Précis Writing ... 214
Note-taking during Reading 87
Novel, analysis of a ... 89

Observation, faculty of, exercise of the 79
Onomatopœia 38
Orthography 49
Outline essays 118
—— Paragraph 133

Parellel 38
Paraphrasing ... 134, 218
Personification 38
Poem, notes on a, plan for... 90
Poetry, reading of—the use of 85
Précis Writing ... 155, 218
Precision of Style... ... 14
Prepositions (grammatical errors) 25
Primary meaning of words ... 40
Pronoun, the (grammatical errors) ... 23, 27
Punctuate, how and when to 51
Punctuation, general rules for 51
—— exercises 57

Quotation Book 87

Range of the essay writer's knowledge 76
Read, how to 86
Reading, note-taking during 87
—— necessity for discrimination in 85
—— of Poetry, the use of it 85

PAGE
Reading, suggested course of ... 91
—— as an aid to writing ... 11
Redundancy 19
Reference Books 109
Reformed Spelling, remarks upon 50
Repetition 41
Reported, or Indirect, Speech 26
Rhetorical Classification of Sentences 27
Rhythm... 16

Salient facts of English History and Geography (London Matriculation Syllabus), how to study ... 224
Science, Natural, study of ... 77
Secondary meaning of words 40
Semicolon 54
Sentences, Rhetorical, Classification of 27
—— Grammatical ... 52
Sequence of Tenses 27
Simile 38
Simplicity of Style ... 14 ✓

PAGE
Slang 17
Speech, figures of ... 35
Spelling, bad, how to correct 49
—— Modern English, a chaos 49
—— Reformed, remarks upon 50
Standard Authors, the reading of 79
Style ... ... 13 ✓
—— essentials of a good ... 13 ✓
—— crispness of... ... 15
Suspense, principle of ... 41
Synonyms 41
—— False ... ... 42 ✓

Taste, errors in ... ... 17 ✓
Tautology 19
Tenses, sequence of ... 27
Titles, essay, for practice 112, 225
Thinking faculty, the ... 81 ✓

Verb, the (grammatical errors) 21

Words, primary and secondary meaning of 40

JARROLDS' SCHOOL READERS.

An entirely new Set of Reading Books drawn up in strict accordance with the latest instructions of the Education Department.

Adopted by the London and Educational Committees, also the Army and Navy Schools by order of the Commander-in-Chief in this Country and in India.

THE
HEROIC READERS.

New Style. Coloured Frontispieces.
Fresh Matter. Clear Type. Profusely Illustrated.

BOOK I.	128 pages	- 8d.		BOOK IV.	240 pages	- 1/4
BOOK II.	144 pages	- 10d.		BOOK V.	272 pages	- 1/6
BOOK III.	224 pages	- 1/2		BOOK VI.	272 pages	- 1/6

"The books are eminently calculated to create and foster a love of reading."—*The Schoolmaster.*

"The portraits of Nelson, Florence Nightingale, Franklin, and Wilberforce, which appear on the cover of the volumes, are typical of the instructions within. Boys are seen chivalrous, and girls humbly brave; the great example is set forth, and its lesson of encouragement or warning."—*The Daily Chronicle.*

NEW SUPPLEMENTARY READER.

THE STORY OF

HORATIO, VISCOUNT NELSON,

A CENTENARY SOUVENIR OF NELSON. **4d.** net.

Fully Illustrated with a Map, Two Portraits, a Dozen Woodcuts, including reproductions of Celebrated Pictures depicting the chief incidents in his eventful career.

NOTES AND COMPOSITION EXERCISES

in strict conformity with the "Suggestions for the Consideration of Teachers" are appended.

"A supplementary reader, telling in simple language the story of Nelson's career."—*School World.*

"Well written, and contains a portrait and many illustrations. Notes and other similar matter add to its value as a school book."—*School Manager.*

London: JARROLD & SONS, Educational Publishers,
10 & 11, WARWICK LANE, E.C.

Jarrolds' Educational Books.

SNELGROVE'S OBJECT LESSONS.

Object Lessons in Botany,

From Forest, Field, Wayside, and Garden.

By EDWARD SNELGROVE, B.A.

ADOPTED BY THE LONDON AND OTHER SCHOOL BOARDS.

Part I.,	for Stds.	I. and II.,	33 Lessons,	40	Illustrations	2s. 6d.
„ II.,	„	III. to V.,	100 „	153	„	3s. 6d.
„ III.,	„	VI. & VII.,	50 „	140	„	3s. 6d

"Real Object Lessons, admirable in their aim and skilfully worked out. A boon to those who are choosing the subjects of their lessons from the vegetable kingdom. The specimens are well selected, and readily obtainable. We cordially welcome these excellent Object lessons."—*Schoolmaster.*

"The method is extremely practicable. It is a really excellent and most practicable teacher's handbook." —*School Board Chronicle.*

A COMPLETE COURSE OF NATURAL HISTORY FOR THE JUNIOR STANDARDS.

Object Lessons in Natural History

With an Appendix on the Correlation of Studies with Object Lessons.

By EDWARD SNELGROVE, B.A.,

Author of "Object Lessons in Botany."

46 Lessons. Crown 8vo. Cloth, 3s. 6d.

"An easy and trustworthy introduction to zoology."—*The University Correspondent.*

Jarrold & Sons, Educational Publishers, 10 & 11, Warwick Lane
E.C.

[illegible] [illegible] 1910
8c Smith

Jarrolds' Educational Books.

NEW AND REVISED EDITION. 124TH THOUSAND.

SCHOOL METHOD.

Notes and Hints from Lectures delivered at the Borough Road Training College, London.

By F. J. GLADMAN, B.A., B.Sc.,
Author of "School Work."

With Revisions and Additions
By J. W. JARVIS,
St. Mark's Training College, Chelsea.

Crown 8vo, Cloth, 2s. 6d.

"About the best-known Pupil Teachers' Text Book extant, and not without reason. It is an excellent summary of the principles underlying the theory and practice of teaching."—*The Pupil Teachers' Scholarship Student.*

NEW AND REVISED EDITION OF

SCHOOL WORK.

By F. J. GLADMAN, B.A., B.Sc.,
Author of "School Method."

Thoroughly Revised and brought Up-to-Date
By J. W. JARVIS,
St. Mark's Training College, Chelsea.

In Two Volumes, 4s. each, or in One Volume complete, 7s. 6d.

VOL. I. CONTROL AND TEACHING.
,, II. ORGANIZATION AND PRINCIPLES OF EDUCATION.

Each volume is complete in itself, and can be had separately.

"The two volumes constitute the most complete treatment of the general question of School Management which we have at present. Will prove greatly useful to all teachers, and more especially to those preparing for an examination on the subject of School Management."—*Schoolmaster.*

Jarrold & Sons, Educational Publishers, 10 & 11, Warwick Lane,
E.C.

Jarrolds' Educational Books.

THE DAY-BY-DAY ARITHMETIC.

Scheme A.

By T. B. ELLERY, F.R.G.S.
President (1895-6) *of the N. U. T.*

STANDARD I., 1½d.; cloth, 2½d.

STANDARDS II., III., IV., V., 2d. each; cloth, 3d.

STANDARDS VI., VII., 3d. each; cloth, 4d.

"Thoroughly practical."—SCHOOLMASTER.

"Will take their place as the best in the market."—TEACHERS' AID.

THE EMPIRE ARITHMETIC.

Scheme B.

By J. W. JARVIS,
St. Mark's College, Chelsea.

STANDARDS I., II., III., IV., V., 2d. each; cloth, 3d.

STANDARDS VI. and VII., 3d. each; cloth, 4d.

Teachers' Editions, containing Answers, Hints, Syllabus, and Suggestive Methods, Cloth, 1s. each.

"The plan is well laid, and carried out with great skill and variety."—EDUCATIONAL NEWS.

THE DAY-BY-DAY ARITHMETICAL TEST CARDS.

Scheme A.

By T. B. ELLERY, F.R.G.S.

STANDARDS III., IV., V., VI., VII.

On each card there are four complete and distinct Examination TESTS of FOUR SUMS each. In each packet there are 36 Cards.

The Answers are Guaranteed Correct.

1s. each Packet of 36 *Cards. With Two Copies of Answers.*

THE EMPIRE PERIODICAL TESTS IN ARITHMETIC.

Sixteen Complete Sets of Tests for use throughout the Year.

The Series consists of seven books, each Book containing 1,152 complete Examination Papers.

Each book contains 32 complete Tests repeated 36 times, or sufficient for examining 72 children on 16 different occasions.

STANDARDS I., II., III., IV., V., VI., VII., COMPLETE WITH ANSWERS, 2s. each.

Jarrold & Sons, Educational Publishers, 10 & 11, Warwick Lane,
E.C.

JARROLDS'

Teachers' and Pupil Teachers' Series.

A Hand-Book of Algebra: specially adapted to the requirements of Pupil Teachers and Scholarship Candidates. By HERBERT WILLS. 3s. 6d.

Pupil Teachers' Geography: POLITICAL, PHYSICAL, AND PHYSIOGRAPHICAL. INCLUDING SKETCH MAPS and Diagrams as models for reproduction on examination papers, together with many pronunciations of place-names, and notes historical and etymological. By J. H. YOXALL, M.P. Price 3s. 6d.

Teaching of and Testing in Mental Arithmetic. Illustrated. Crown 8vo, cloth, 2s. 6d.

Appropriate and Varied Occupations for Infants. Important for Infant Class Teachers. 217 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, cloth, 3s.

Occupations and Occupation Games. A Sequel to the above. 243 Illustrations. 3s.

Practical Helps for Infant Teachers. 139 pages. 94 Illustrations. 3s.

Notes of Lessons. FIRST SERIES. For INFANT CLASSES and LOWER STANDARDS. 2s. 6d. Second Edition.
SECOND SERIES. For the UPPER STANDARDS. 3s. 6d.
THE TWO SERIES IN ONE VOLUME. 5s. 6d.

Notes of Lessons on English Grammar. FOR THE USE OF TEACHERS IN ELEMENTARY SCHOOLS. Crown 8vo, cloth, 2s. 6d.

The Handy Book of Object Lessons. By J. WALKER.
FIRST SERIES. Cloth, 2s. 6d. 70 Lessons. 11th Edition.
SECOND SERIES. Cloth, 2s. 6d. 70 Lessons. 6th Edition.
TWO SERIES IN ONE VOLUME. 4s. 6d.

Jarrold & Sons, Educational Publishers 10 & 11, Warwick Lane,
E.C.

Jarrolds' Teachers' and Pupil Teachers' Series.

THE

PUPIL TEACHERS' GEOGRAPHY:

Political, Physical, and Physiographical.

BY

J. H. YOXALL, M.P.,

Secretary of the National Union of Teachers.

A complete Course of Modern Geography; including Sketch-maps and Diagrams as models for reproduction on examination papers; with pronunciations of place-names, and notes historical and etymological.

CROWN 8vo, CLOTH, 3/6.

MATHEMATICS MADE EASY.

BY THE

REV. J. J. RAVEN, D.D., F.S.A.,

Formerly Head Master of the Grammar School, Great Yarmouth.

A Course of Simple Lectures on Euclid and Algebra, shewing how these subjects may be made easy and interesting to young students.

CROWN 8vo, CLOTH, 2/-.

LONDON: JARROLD & SONS, 10 & 11, WARWICK LANE, E.C.

And of all Booksellers.

JARROLDS' COLOURED ILLUSTRATIONS

OF THE

ANIMAL KINGDOM.

The best set of Animal Pictures for Oral Lessons.

Scientifically arranged according to Class, Order, Sub-Order, etc.
12 *Sheets, each* 36 × 29 *in.*

No. 1. The Races of Mankind. Containing representatives of the Caucasian, Mongolian, Malay and Polynesian, American, Ethiopian, and Mixed Races, in native costumes. 38 *Illustrations.*

No. 2. Four-Handed Mammals. Apes, Monkeys, Lemurs, etc. 24 *Illustrations.*

No. 3. Wing-Handed Mammals. Bats, etc., etc.
Insect-Eating Mammals. Moles, Hedgehogs, Potamogale, etc. 19 *Illustrations.*

No. 4. Flesh-Eating Mammals. Cats, Lions, Tigers, etc. 9 *Illustrations.*

No. 5. Flesh-Eating Mammals. Dogs, Foxes, Badgers, Weasels, Otters, etc. 25 *Illustrations.*

No. 6. Flesh-Eating Mammals. Bears, Racoons, Walrus, Seals, etc. 15 *Illustrations.*

No. 7. Imperfectly-Toothed Mammals. Sloths, Anteaters, etc.
Gnawing Mammals. Rats, Hares, Beavers, Porcupines, Squirrels. 24 *Illustrations.*

No. 8. Two-Toed Mammals. Oxen, Antelopes, Goats, Sheep, etc. 20 *Illustrations.*

No. 9. Two-Toed Mammals. Camels, Llamas, Giraffe, Deer, etc. 11 *Illustrations.*

No. 10. Thick-Skinned Mammals. Elephants, Rhinoceros, Hippopotamus, Tapir, Boar, etc. Horses, Zebra, etc. 13 *Illustrations.*

No. 11. Two-Limbed Mammals. Whales, Dolphins, Manattee, etc. 9 *Illustrations.*

No. 12. Pouch-Bearing Mammals. Kangaroos, Opossums, etc.
Mammals having a Single Vent Mullingong or Duckbill, etc. 16 *Illustrations.*

This is a very attractive Series for Wall Decoration, valuable for the study of Natural History, and excellent for Oral Lessons in Infant Schools and the Standards.

Each Group is drawn in a life-like style, with strict regard to Nature, by an Artist specially skilled in that particular branch of the work, and exhibits the principal representatives of an order or class, so arranged as to convey wherever practicable, *an accurate idea of the comparative sizes of the various animals*, and of their habits in their natural state.

"The whole of the work—designing, drawing, colouring, and mounting—is tasteful and pleasing in its effect. It would be difficult, even if it were possible, to have pictures more attractive for the schoolroom walls at the price for which these excellent illustrations canbe obtained."—*Schoolmaster.*

All the Sheets are ready for Sale, and may be had eyeletted at 1/6 *each, or* 16/6 *the set of* 12. *Mounted on Cloth, Roller and Varnished at* 3/6 *each, or* 36/- *the set of* 12.

London: Jarrold & Sons, 10 & 11, Warwick Lane, E.C.

LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY

THIS BOOK IS DUE ON THE LAST DATE
STAMPED BELOW

AN INITIAL FINE OF 25 CENTS WILL BE ASSESSED FOR FAILURE TO RETURN THIS BOOK ON THE DATE DUE. THE PENALTY WILL INCREASE TO 50 CENTS ON THE FOURTH DAY AND TO $1.00 ON THE SEVENTH DAY OVERDUE.

JAN 24 1933

JUL 23 1987

AUTO DISC SEP 03 1987

LD 21-50m-8,'32

GENERAL LIBRARY - U.C. BERKELEY
B000861334

197494
Bogert